



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

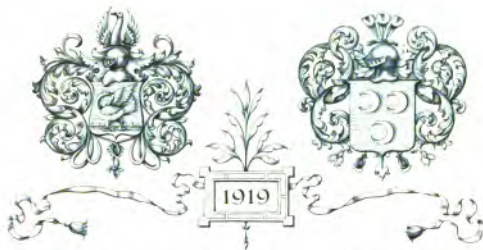
About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

NYPL RESEARCH LIBRARIES



3 3433 08155113 1



GANSEVOORT-LANSING
COLLECTION

*given to the New York Public Library
Astor Lenox and Tilden Foundations*

BY VICTOR HUGO PALTSITS

under the terms of the last will and testament of

CATHERINE GANSEVOORT LANSING

granddaughter of

General Peter Gansevoort, junior

and widow of the

Honorable Abraham Lansing

of Albany, New York

Bullions

BWGD
135 BP



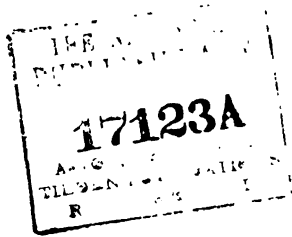
THE FIRST SIX BOOKS
OF
CÆSAR'S COMMENTARIES
ON THE
GALLIC WAR,
ADAPTED TO
BULLIONS' LATIN GRAMMAR;

WITH AN INTRODUCTION, ON THE IDIOMS OF THE LATIN
LANGUAGE; COPIOUS EXPLANATORY NOTES; AND
AN INDEX OF PROPER NAMES, ETC.

~~~~~  
By ~~Rev.~~ PETER BULLIONS, D. D.,  
PROFESSOR OF LANGUAGES IN THE ALBANY ACADEMY; AND AUTHOR  
OF THE SERIES OF GRAMMARS, GREEK, LATIN AND  
ENGLISH, ON THE SAME PLAN.  
~~~~~

NEW-YORK:
PUBLISHED BY PRATT, WOODFORD & Co.
No. 63 WALL STREET.

.....
1845.



Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1845, by
PETER BULLIONS,
in the Clerk's Office of the Southern District of New-York.

PREFACE.

CÆSAR is usually, and with great propriety, among the first books put into the hands of pupils commencing the study of Latin. In adapting a portion of this work, as well as the Latin Reader, to his Latin Grammar, the chief object of the Editor has been to lead the student, in the beginning of his course, to a minute and thorough acquaintance with the principles of the language. The text of Oudendorp has been generally followed. For the sake of convenience, and also because, with many, Cæsar is the first book studied after the Grammar, the Introduction on the Latin Idioms prefixed to the Latin Reader has been prefixed here also. To this as well as to the Grammar reference is constantly made at the foot of the page, for the purpose of explaining and illustrating principles as they occur; and if the pupil will only take the pains to examine these references as he proceeds, he will gradually, and with comparatively little labor, become so familiar with the grammatical structure and idioms of the language that his future progress will be much more rapid and pleasant than it can be without such a course of training.

To the text copious notes have been added, for the purpose of explaining more particularly some constructions of the language,—aiding the pupil in the selection of an appropriate term, or, in giving variety to his expression,—and, in some cases, of assisting him to apprehend more clearly the meaning of the author. These, together with the references to the Introduction and Grammar above specified, contain such and so much assistance as an industrious and intelligent pupil, at this stage of his progress, in preparing his lessons, may be supposed to need from his teacher; so that by a proper use of this work, both the teacher will be relieved in a great measure from that labor, and interruption of other duties which the ren-

dering of this assistance would require, and the pupil will have always at hand the assistance needed. These notes are taken chiefly from Dymock's *Cæsar*, Glasgow edition. A few have been added from other sources.

The Vocabulary or index at the end of the work is abridged from the same author, and contains various and important information respecting the persons and places mentioned in the text, and also respecting many things belonging to the antiquities and polity of the Romans and their method of conducting military operations. In this part several wood cuts have been introduced to aid the pupil in forming correct ideas of some of the engines and operations of war, as they existed in the days of *Cæsar*.

The map of Ancient Gaul has been prepared with special reference to this work, and exhibits the divisions of that country, with the names of nations, tribes, and towns, mentioned by *Cæsar*, as they existed in his time, so far as their position can be ascertained from authentic sources. The modern names of the same places will be found, generally, by consulting the Index.

A correct pronunciation as it regards quantity should be attended to from the beginning. In order to aid the pupil in forming correct habits in this too much neglected part of study, the quantity of the penult syllable has been marked in all words of more than two syllables, except where the penult vowel is followed by two consonants or a double consonant, in which case it is always long; or where the penult vowel is followed by another vowel, in which case it is almost always short; or when the syllable being common, that is, either short or long, there is no danger of the quantity being given wrong. In words of two syllables there is little danger of wrong pronunciation, and if, in words of more than two syllables, the quantity of the penult is correctly given, there is little danger of error elsewhere.

With a view to render the work as full as was deemed necessary, and at the same time to bring the price so low as to make it more generally accessible, only the first six books of the *Commentaries* on the Gallic war have been taken. These contain all that portion of this author usually read in academies and schools, and to have taken more would only have increased the size and the price of the book without any corresponding benefit to the purchaser.

The Editor takes this opportunity to renew his grateful acknowledgements to the many learned men, and instructors of youth, for

PREFACE.

v

the favor with which his humble labors have been received by them, and for the many important suggestions communicated, by which he has been enabled to add essentially to their value and usefulness. A Greek Reader adapted to the Greek Grammar is now preparing, and will be published as speedily as possible.

ALBANY ACADEMY, }
February 26, 1845. }

NOTICE.

In the text, the references to the Grammar generally will be found at the places indicated, in all the editions. Those marked § 140, 1, 1st, 2d, 3d, 4th, will be found in editions previous to the last of 1844, at § 145, Obs. 5, 1st, 2d, 3d, 4th: And those marked § 140, 2, 3, 4, 5, will be found under § 140, Obs. 1, 2d, 3d, 4th, and 5th.

Henry S. Gonsworth
Classical Series
No. 1.

INTRODUCTION.

SENTENCES.

1. A sentence is such an assemblage of words as makes complete sense; as, *Man is mortal*.
2. Sentences are of two kinds, *simple* and *compound*.
3. A simple sentence contains but one subject and one verb; as, *Life is short. Time flies*.
4. A compound sentence contains two or more simple sentences combined; as, *Life, which is short, should be well employed*.
5. In the combining of words to form a sentence, observe carefully the following

General Principles of Syntax.

1. In every sentence there must be a *verb* in the indicative, subjunctive, imperative, or infinitive mood, and a *subject*, expressed or understood.
2. Every adjective, adjective pronoun, or participle, must have a substantive expressed or understood with which it agrees, § 98 and § 146.*
3. Every relative must have an antecedent or word to which it refers, and with which it agrees, § 99.
4. Every nominative has its own verb expressed or understood, of which it is the subject, §§ 100, 101, 102. Or is placed after the substantive verb in the predicate, § 103.
5. Every finite verb; i. e., every verb in the indicative, subjunctive or imperative mood, has its own nominative, expressed or understood, §§ 101, 102, and when the infinitive has a subject it is in the accusative, § 145. The infinitive without a subject does not form a sentence or proposition, § 143.
6. Every oblique case is governed by some word, expressed or understood, in the sentence of which it forms a part.

* The references are to the sections in the Latin Grammar.

Resolution or Analysis.

Every simple sentence consists of two parts, the subject and the predicate, § 94, 6. 7. 8. In analyzing a sentence, it is necessary to distinguish between the *Grammatical* subject and predicate, and the *Logical* subject and predicate.

The *Grammatical subject* is the name or thing spoken of, without, or separated from, all modifying words or clauses, and which stands as the nominative to the verb, or the accusative before the infinitive.

The *Logical subject* is the same word in connection with the qualifying or restricting expressions, which go to make up the full and precise idea of the thing spoken of.

The *Grammatical predicate* is the word or words containing the simple affirmation made respecting the subject.

The *Logical predicate* is the grammatical predicate combined with all those words or expressions that modify or restrict it in any way; thus:

In the sentence, "An inordinate desire of admiration often produces a contemptible levity of deportment;" the Grammatical subject is "*desire*;" the Logical "*An inordinate desire of admiration*." The Grammatical predicate is "*produces*," the Logical, "*produces often a contemptible levity of deportment*."

In Latin and English, the *general* arrangement of a sentence is the same, i. e., the sentence commonly begins with the subject and ends with the predicate. But the order of the words in each of these parts, is usually so different in Latin, from what it is in English, that one of the first difficulties a beginner has to encounter with a Latin sentence, is to know how "to take it in," or to arrange it in the proper order of the English. This is technically called *constructing* or *giving the order*. To assist in this, some advantage may be found by carefully attending to the following

Directions for Beginners.

DIRECT. I. As all the other parts of a sentence depend upon the two leading parts, namely, the subject or NOMINATIVE, and the predicate or VERB; the first thing to be done with every sentence, is to find out these. In order to this,

1. Look for the leading verb, which is always in the present, imperfect, perfect, pluperfect, or future of the indicative, or in the imperative mood,* and usually at or near the end of the sentence.

2. Having found the verb, observe its number and person; this will aid in finding its nominative, which is a noun or pronoun in the same number and person with the verb, commonly before it, and near the beginning of the sentence, though not always so, § 151. R. I. with exceptions.

DIRECT. II. Having thus found the nominative and verb, and ascertained their meaning, the sentence may be resolved from the Latin into the English order, as follows:

1. Take the *Vocative, Exciting, Introductory, or connecting words*, if there are any.

2. The NOMINATIVE.

3. Words *limiting or explaining* it, i. e., words agreeing with it, or governed by it, or by one another, where they are found, till you come to the *verb*.

4. The VERB.

5. Words *limiting or explaining* it, i. e., words which modify it, are governed by it, or depend upon it.

6. Supply everywhere the words *understood*.

7. If the sentence be compound, take the parts of it severally as they depend one upon another, proceeding with each of them as above.

DIRECT. III. In arranging the words for translation, in the subordinate parts of a sentence, observe the following

Rules for construing.

I. An oblique case, or the infinitive mood, is put after the word that governs it.

Exc. The relative and interrogative are usually put before the governing word, unless that be a preposition; if it is, then after it.

II. An adjective, if no other word depend upon it or be coupled with it, is put *before* its substantive; but if another word depend upon it, or be governed by it, it is usually placed after it.

* All the other parts of the verb are generally used in subordinate clauses. So, also, is the pluperfect indicative. In oblique discourse, the leading verb is in the infinitive, § 141. Rule VI.

III. The participle is usually construed after its substantive, or the word with which it agrees.

IV. The relative and its clause, should, if possible, come immediately after the antecedent.

V. When a question is asked, the nominative comes after the verb; (in English between the auxiliary and the verb.) Interrogative words, however, such as *quis*, *quotus*, *quantus*, *uter*, &c., come before the verb.

VI. After a transitive active verb, look for an accusative, and after a preposition, for an accusative or ablative, and arrange the words accordingly.

VII. Words in apposition must be construed as near together as possible.

VIII. Adverbs, adverbial phrases, prepositions with their cases, circumstances of time, place, cause, manner, instrument, &c., should be placed, in general, after the words which they modify. The case absolute commonly before them, and often first in the sentence.

IX. The words of different clauses must not be mixed together, but each clause translated by itself, in its order, according to its connection with, or dependence upon, those to which it is related.

X. Conjunctions should be placed before the last of two words, or sentences connected.

LATIN IDIOMS.*

PARTICULAR DIRECTIONS AND MODELS FOR TRANSLATION.

[The following explanations and directions are intended chiefly for reference. But it will be of great advantage for the pupil to become familiar with them by going through them two or three times, *in course*, simultaneously with his reading lessons.]

1. BEFORE translating, every sentence should be read over till it can be read correctly and with ease, paying special attention to the quantity and pronunciation. The words should then be arranged according to the preceding general directions, and translated as they are arranged, separately or in clusters, as may be found convenient; always remembering to place adjectives and adjective pronouns with their substantives before translating. The sense and grammatical construction being thus ascertained, the translation may then be read over without the Latin, and due attention paid to the English idiom. The whole sentence, whether simple or compound, may then be analyzed as directed § 152, and last of all, every word parsed separately as directed, § 153.

2. In order to arrange and translate with ease, it is necessary to be familiar with, and readily to distinguish the different cases, genders, and numbers of nouns, pronouns, adjectives, and participles, and to translate them correctly and promptly, in these cases and numbers, &c.; and also to distinguish and correctly translate the verb in its various moods, tenses, numbers, persons, &c. This can be acquired only by continual practice and drilling, which should be kept up till the utmost readiness is attained.

3. The English prepositions used in translating the different cases in Latin, for the sake of convenience, may be called signs of those cases; and in translating these, the English *definite* or *indefinite* article is to be used as the sense requires. The signs of the cases are as follows:

Nom. (No sign.)	Acc. (No sign.)
Gen. <i>Of</i> .	Voc. <i>O.</i> or no sign.
Dat. <i>To</i> or <i>for</i> .	Abl. <i>With, from, in, by, &c.</i>

* A *Latin idiom*, strictly speaking, is a mode of speech peculiar to the Latin language. It is here used in a more extended sense, to denote a mode of speech different from the English, or which, if rendered word for word, and with the ordinary signs of cases, moods, tenses, &c., would not make a correct English sentence.

In certain constructions the idiom of the English language requires the oblique cases in Latin to be translated in a manner different from the above. The chief of these constructions are the following :

4. The Genitive.

1. The genitive denoting the place where, R. XXXVI., is translated *at*; as, *Romæ*, "At Rome."

2. Denoting *price*, sometimes *for*; as, *Vendidit pluris*, "He sold it *for more*;" or without a sign; as, *Constitit pluris*, "It cost *more*."

5. The Dative.

1. After a verb of taking away, R. XXIX.; the dative is translated *from*; as, *Eripuit me mortī*, "He rescued me *from death*;" *Eripitur mortī*, "He is rescued *from death*." R. XXXII-III. See § 123, Exp.

2. Denoting the doer after a passive verb, R. XXXIII., it is translated *by*; as, *Vix audior ulli*, "I am scarcely heard *by any one*."

3. Denoting the possessor, R. XV., Obs. 1, it is translated as the genitive; as, *Ei in mentem venit*, "It came into the mind *to him*," i. e., *of him*, or into *his* mind.

4. After verbs signifying "to be present," *at*; as, *Adfuit precibus*, He was present *at prayers*. § 112, R. I.

6. The Ablative.

1. The ablative denoting a property or quality of another substantive, R. VII., is translated *of*; as, *Vir mirā magnitudīne*, "A man *of wonderful size*."

2. The place where, R. XXXVI. Exc., commonly *at*, sometimes *in*.

3. After the comparative degree, § 120, R. XXIV., *than*; as, *Dulcior melle*, "Sweeter *than honey*."

4. Denoting the material of which a thing is made, § 128, Obs. 2, *of*; as, *Factus ebore*, "Made *of ivory*."

5. After *dignus* and words denoting origin; also after *opus* and *usus*, signifying need, *cf*; as, *Dignus honore*, "Worthy *of honor*."

6. Denoting time how long, sometimes *in*; as, *Uno die fecit*, "He did it *in one day*;" sometimes without a sign; as, *Uno die abfuit*, "He was absent *one day*."

7. Time when, *at, on*; as, *Solis occāsu*, "*At the setting* of the sun;" *Idibus Aprilis*, "*On the ides* of April."

8. After verbs of depriving, § 125, *of*; as, *Eum veste spoliāvit*, "He stripped him *of his garment*."

Cases without Signs.

7. When the genitive, dative, or ablative, is governed by an intransitive verb which is translated by a transitive verb in English, (§ 38, Obs. 4.,) or by an adjective denoting likeness, the sign of the case is omitted; as,

- | | |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. Gen. <i>Miserere mei</i> , | Pity me. |
| 2. Dat. <i>Præfuit exercitui</i> , | He commanded the army. |
| 3. " <i>Placuit regi</i> , | It pleased the king. |
| 4. Abl. <i>Utitur fraude</i> , | He uses deceit. |
| 5. " <i>Potius est imperio</i> , | He obtained the government. |
| 6. Dat. <i>Similis patri</i> , | Like his father. |

Obs. But when rendered by an intransitive verb in English, the sign of the case must be used; as,

7. *Insidiantur nobis*, They lie in wait *for us*.

8. When a verb governs two datives, by R. XIX., the dative of the end or design is sometimes rendered without the sign; as,

1. *Est mihi voluptati*, It is to me [for] a pleasure; i. e.,
It is [or brings] a pleasure to me.

9. The ablative absolute, R. LX., (See No. 109,) and frequently time how long, R. XL., are without the sign; as,

1. *Bello finito*, The war being ended.
2. *Sex mensibus abfuit*, He was absent six months.

10. When the ablative is governed by a preposition, the English of that preposition takes the place of the sign of the ablative, and no other will be used; thus,

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. <i>Ab exercitu</i> , From the army. | 4. <i>Cum dignitate</i> , With dignity. |
| 2. <i>Ex urbe</i> , Out of the city. | 5. <i>Pro castris</i> , Before the camp |
| 3. <i>In agro</i> , In the field. | 6. <i>Tenus pube</i> , Up to the middle |

11. In order to specify more particularly, the English idiom sometimes requires the possessive pronouns, *my, thy, his, her, its, our, your, their*, (not expressed in Latin unless contrasted with others,) to be supplied before a noun, and espe-

cially if they refer to the subject of the sentence. The sense will shew when this is to be done and what pronoun is to be used; as,

1. *Filius similis patri,* A son like his father.
2. *Reverere parentes,* Reverence your parents.

12. Nouns in apposition, (§ 97, R. I.,) must be brought as near together as possible, and the sign of the case, when used, prefixed to the first only; as,

1. Nom. *Cicero Orator,* Cicero the orator.
2. Gen. *Ciceronis oratoris,* Of Cicero the orator.
3. Dat. *Ciceroni oratori,* To Cicero the orator,
4. Abl. *Cicerone oratore,* With Cicero the orator.

13. The noun in apposition is sometimes connected with the noun before it by the words *as, being, &c.*; as,

1. *Misit me comitem,* He sent me as a companion.
2. *Hic puer venit,* He came, when [or being] a boy.

Adjectives and Substantives.

14. In translating an adjective or adjective pronoun and a substantive together, the adjective is commonly placed first, and the sign of the case is prefixed to it, and not to the noun, § 98, R. II.; as,

1. Nom. *Altus mons,* A high mountain.
2. Gen. *Alti montis,* Of a high mountain.
3. Dat. *Alto monti,* To [for] a high mountain.
4. Abl. *Alto monte,* With a high mountain.

15. When two or more adjectives, coupled by a conjunction belong to one substantive, they may be placed either before or after it; as,

1. *Jupiter optimus et maximus,* Jupiter the best and greatest; or
Optimus et maximus Jupiter, The best and greatest Jupiter.
2. *Viri sapientis et docti,* Of a man wise and learned; or
Sapientis et docti viri, Of a wise and learned man.

16. The adjective must be placed after its substantive when the former has a negative joined with it, or another word in the sentence governed by it, or dependent upon it. So also *solus*; as,

1. *Dux peritus belli,* A general skilled in war.
2. *Filius similis patri,* A son like his father.
3. *Poeta dignus honore,* A poet worthy of honor.
4. *Homines soli sapient,* Men alone are wise.
5. *Avis tam parum decora,* A bird so little beautiful.
6. *Littore non molli neque arenoso,* With a shore not soft nor sandy.

Henry Gansvoort

17. The adjectives *primus*, *medius*, *ultimus*, *extremus*, *infimus*, *imus*, *summus*, *supremus*, *reliquus*, *ceter*, or *cæterus*, and some others describing a *part* of an object, are translated as substantives, with the sign of the case prefixed, and of before the substantive following, § 98, Obs. 9; as,

- | | |
|------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Mediâ nocte</i> , | <i>In the middle of the night.</i> |
| 2. <i>Ad summum montem</i> , | <i>To the top of the mountain.</i> |

18; When these adjectives (No. 17,) describe the whole and not a part only, they are translated as No. 11.; as,

- | | |
|------------------------|------------------------|
| <i>Summum bonum</i> , | <i>The chief good.</i> |
| <i>Supremus dies</i> , | <i>The last day.</i> |

19. An adjective without a substantive usually has a substantive understood, but obvious from the connexion, § 98, Obs. 5. Masculine adjectives, (if plural,) commonly agree with *homines*, or, if possessives, with *amici*, *cives*, or *militēs*, understood; and neuters, with *factum*, *negotium*, *verbum*, *tempus*, &c.; as,

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. <i>Boni (homines) sunt rari</i> , | <i>Good men are rare,</i> |
| 2. <i>Cæsar misit suos (militēs)</i> , | <i>Cæsar sent his soldiers.</i> |
| 3. <i>Cocles transiit ad suos</i>
<i>(cives)</i> , | <i>Cocles swam over to his fellow-</i>
<i>citizens.</i> |
| 4. <i>Labor vincit omnia (negotia)</i> | <i>Labor overcomes all things.</i> |
| 5. <i>In postêrum (tempus)</i> , | <i>In time to come,—for the future.</i> |
| 6. <i>In eo (loco) ut.</i> | <i>In such a situation that.</i> |

20. Adjectives commonly used without a substantive, (but still belonging to a substantive understood,) may be regarded as substantives. They are such as *mortâles*, *boni*, *mali*, *supëri*, *infëri*, *Græcus*, *Românus*, &c. (See § 98, Obs. 5.); as,

- | | |
|------------------------------------|---|
| 1. <i>Mali odêrunt bonos</i> , | <i>The wicked hate the good.</i> |
| 2. <i>Græcos Români vicêrunt</i> , | <i>The Romans conquered the Greeks.</i> |

21. Adjective words when partitives, or used partitively, take the gender of the noun expressing the whole, and govern it in the genitive plural, (if a collective noun, in the genitive singular,) § 107, RULE X. In this case verbs and adjectives agree with the partitive as if it were a noun; as,

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Aliquis philosophorum</i> | <i>Some one of the philosophers</i> |
| <i>dixit,</i> | <i>said.</i> |
| 2. <i>Una musarum veniet,</i> | <i>One of the muses will come.</i> |
| 3. <i>Multi nobilium juvenum,</i> | <i>Many noble young men.</i> |

22. The comparative degree not followed by an ablative, or the conjunction *quam*, (than) is usually translated by the positive with *too* or *rather* prefixed. For explanation see § 120, Obs. 5.; as,

1. *Iracundior est*, (scil. *æquo*.) He is too (or rather) passionate.
2. *Ægrius ferēbat*, He took it rather ill.
3. *Altius volāvit*, He flew too high.

Obs. In a comparison, *ed* or *tanto* with a comparative in one clause, and *quod* or *quanto* in the other, may be rendered "the;" (See No. 44. 7. 8.) as,

4. *Quod plures, ed feliciōres*, The more the happier.

23. The superlative degree expressing comparison, is usually preceded by the article *the* in English, (§ 25,) as,

1. *Doctissimus Romanōrum*, The most learned of the Romans.
2. *Fortissimus miles in exercitu*, The bravest soldier in the army.

24. When the superlative does not express comparison, but only eminence or distinction, it is translated with the article *a* or *an* prefixed in the singular, and without an article in the plural; or by the positive, with *very*, *eminently*, &c., prefixed, (§ 25,) as,

1. *Homo doctissimus*, A most learned (or a very learned) man.
2. *Homines doctissimi*, Most learned (or very learned) men.

25. *Alius* repeated with a different word in the same clause, renders that clause double, and requires it to be translated as in the following examples:

1. *Alius aliā viā*, One by one way, another by another.
2. *Aliud aliis videtur*, One thing seems good to some, another to others, i. e. Some think one thing, and some another. (See other varieties. § 98. Obs. 11.)

The same usage occurs with words derived from *alius*. See Gr. § 98, Obs. 12.

26. The distributive numeral adjectives are usually translated by the cardinal number indicated, with "each," or "to each," annexed; sometimes by repeating the cardinal thus, "one by one;" "two by two," &c., § 24, 11; as,

1. *Consules binas naves habebant*, The consuls had each two ships, or, had two ships each.
2. *Quā singuli carri ducuntur*, Where wagons could be led one by one.
3. *Tigna bina*, Beams two by two, or in pairs.
4. *Singulis singulas partes distribuit æquales*, He distributed equal parts, one to each.
5. *Singulis mensibus hoc fecit*, This he did every (or each) month.
6. *Plures singuli uxores habent*, They have each many wives.

Pronouns.

27. 1st. The adjective pronoun, *hic, hæc, hoc*, with a noun following, is used as an adjective, and means, in the singular, "*this*,"—in the plural, "*these*."—*Ille, illa, illud*,—*is, ea, id*,—*iste, ista, istud*, with a noun, in the singular, mean "*that*,"—in the plural, "*those*."

2d. Without a noun following they are all used substantively, and mean, in the singular, *he, she, it*; in the plural, *they*; thus,

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| 1. <i>Hic vir</i> , This man. | 4. <i>Hic fecit</i> , He did it. |
| 2. <i>Illa femina</i> , That woman. | 5. <i>Ille venit</i> , She came. |
| 3. <i>Ea urbs</i> , That city. | 6. <i>Ea</i> (Dido) <i>condidit eam</i> , She built it, (Carthage.) |

Obs. In sentences containing an enumeration of particulars, the same pronoun is sometimes used in successive clauses, but they require to be translated differently, (§ 98, Obs. 12.); thus,

- | | | | |
|--------------------|---------------------|------------------|---------------------------|
| 7. <i>Hic</i> , | } "one," "the one." | — <i>hic</i> , | } "another," "the other." |
| 8. <i>Is</i> , | | — <i>is</i> , | |
| 9. <i>Ille</i> , | | — <i>ille</i> , | |
| 10. <i>Alter</i> , | | — <i>alter</i> , | |

When antithesis or contrast is stated, *hic* is translated "this," and refers to the nearer antecedent, *ille*, "that," and refers to the more distant; as,

11. *Hic minor natu est, ille major*, This is the younger, that, the older.

28. *Is, ea, id*, followed by *ut*, or the relative, *qui, quæ, quod*, in the next clause, means "*such*," and implies comparison. The relative after it may be translated, *that I, that thou, that he, that they, &c.*, according as the antecedent requires, or it may be translated *as*, and its verb by the infinitive (§ 31, Obs. 2.); thus,

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| 1. <i>Is homo erat ut, &c.</i> , | He was <i>such</i> a man that, &c. |
| 2. <i>Neque is sum qui terrear</i> , | I am not <i>such that</i> I may be frightened. Or better thus, I am not <i>such a one as</i> to be frightened. |

Obs. The adverb *eò* with *ut* following it means "so far," "to such a degree," "to such a point," "in such a state;" as,

3. *Eò pervēnit ut*,
- "He came *so far*, (i. e. made such progress.) that;"

Possessive Pronouns.

29. The possessive pronoun is equivalent in meaning to the genitive of the substantive pronoun, and may often be so translated; as,

1. *Beneficio suo populi que Romani,* By the kindness of himself and of the Roman people.
2. *Cum mea nemo scripta legat,* Since no one reads the writings of me, fearing to recite them publicly.

30. The possessives, *suus, sua, suum*, in Latin, agrees in gender, number, and case, with the noun denoting the *object possessed*, but in English must be translated by a pronoun denoting the *possessor*; thus,

1. *Pater diligit suos liberos,* A father loves his children.
2. *Parentes diligunt suam sobolem,* Parents love their offspring.
3. *Frater diligit suam sororem,* A brother loves his sister.
4. *Soror diligit suum fratrem,* A sister loves her brother.

Obs. In the first sentence, "*suos*," agrees with "*liberos*," but must be translated "*his*," denoting "*pater*," the possessor. In the second, *suam*, though singular, to agree with *sobolem*, must be translated "*their*," so as to denote the possessors, "*parentes*," &c.

Usage of Sui, Suus;—Ille, Iste, Hic, Is.

31. The reflexive, *sui*, and its possessive, *suus*, generally refer to the subject of the leading verb* in the sentence; *ille, iste, hic, is*, never refer to that subject, but to some other person or thing spoken of; thus,

1. *Cato occidit se,* Cato killed himself.
2. *Pater diligit suos liberos,* A father loves his (own) children.
3. *Parentes diligunt suam sobolem,* Parents love their (own) offspring.
4. *Dicit se valere,* He says that he is well.

Obs. In the second and third sentence, *suos*, "*his*," and *suam*, "*their*," referring to some other person than *pater* or *parentes*, would be made by the genitive of *ille, iste, hic, is*. In the first and fourth, *se* would be made *eum*. For the difference between these words usually translated "*he*," see Gr. § 28, Obs. 3.

* See Gr. § 28, Obs. 3, 1st., with note.

Note. If a second subject and verb be introduced, the reflexive governed by that verb will belong to the new subject, unless the whole clause refer to the words, wishes, or actions, of the first subject; as,

5. *Scipio civitatibus Italiæ reddi- Scipio restored to the States of
dit omnia quæ sua recog- Italy, all the things which they
noscēbant, recognised as their own.*

Usage of Ipse.

32. *Ipse* renders the word with which it is joined emphatic, whether expressed or understood, and is equal to the English, *myself, thyself, himself, themselves, &c.*, annexed to it; sometimes to the word *very* prefixed. With *numbers* it denotes exactness, and sometimes it is used by itself as a reflexive instead of *sui*, § 28, Obs. 3, 2d.; as,

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. <i>Ipse faciam,</i> (i. e. <i>ego ipse</i>), | I will do it <i>myself</i> . |
| 2. <i>Ipse fruëris otio,</i> (i. e. <i>tu ipse</i>), | Thou <i>thyself</i> enjoyest ease. |
| 3. <i>Jaculo cadit ipse,</i> (i. e. <i>ille ipse</i>), | He <i>himself</i> falls by a dart. |
| 4. <i>Cæsar ipse venit,</i> | Cæsar <i>himself</i> came. |
| 5. <i>Tempus ipsum convenit,</i> | The <i>very</i> time was agreed on. |
| 6. <i>Ad ipsas portas,</i> | To the <i>very</i> gates. |
| 7. <i>Decem ipsi dies,</i> | Ten <i>whole</i> days. |
| 8. <i>Precatus est ut ipsum liberaret,</i> | He begged that he would lib-
erate <i>him</i> . |
| 9. <i>Donum ipsi datum,</i> | A present given to <i>him</i> . |

33. When joined with the personal pronouns, used in a reflexive sense, and in an oblique case, it sometimes agrees with them in case, but more commonly with the subject of the verb in the nominative or accusative. It is always, however, to be translated with the oblique case, to which it adds the force of the word *self*, or simply of emphasis; thus,

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. <i>Se ipse interfecit</i> (or <i>se ipsum</i>), | He slew <i>himself</i> . |
| 1. <i>Nosce te ipse</i> (or <i>te ipsum</i>), | Know <i>thyself</i> . |
| 2. <i>Mihi ipse</i> (or <i>ipsi</i>), <i>faveo,</i> | I favor <i>myself</i> . |
| 3. <i>Agam per me ipse,</i> | I will do it <i>myself</i> . |
| 4. <i>Virtus est per se ipsa lauda-
bilis,</i> | Virtue is to be praised for it-
<i>self</i> . |
| 5. <i>Se ipsos omnes naturâ dili-
gunt.</i> | All men naturally love them-
<i>selves</i> . |

RELATIVE AND ANTECEDENT.

General Principle.

34. Every sentence containing a relative and its antecedent, is a compound sentence, of which the relative with its

clause forms one of the parts, and is used further to describe or limit its antecedent word in the other part. That word may be the subject, or belong to the predicate, or to some circumstance connected with either. But to whichever of these it belongs, the relative and its clause must all be translated *together*, and in immediate connexion with its antecedent word. Hence the following

General Rule of Arrangement.

35. The relative with its clause should be placed immediately after, or as near as possible to the antecedent, and, unless unavoidable, another substantive should not come between them; thus,

Latin Arrangement.

1. *Urbi immīnet mons, qui ad Arcadiam procurrit.* Here "*qui*" with its clause, "*ad Arcadiam procurrit*," belongs to, and further describes the antecedent subject, "*mons*." As then the subject with all that belongs to it must be taken before the verb, (Gr. § 152, Direct. 2, 2d, 3d,) the above sentence should be arranged for translation, thus: *Mons qui procurrit ad Arcadiam, immīnet urbi*, A mountain, which extends to Arcadia, hangs over the city.

Or, the English order may be inverted, thus: *Urbi immīnet mons, qui procurrit ad Arcadiam*, Over the city hangs a mountain, which, &c.

But not, *Mons immīnet urbi, qui*, &c., because this arrangement would place "*urbi*" between the antecedent, "*mons*," and the relative, "*qui*," and so lead to a false translation. The following sentence also affords an example:

2. *Proxīme urbem Eurōtas fluvius delabitur, ad cuius ripas Spartāni se exercere solēbant.* Arrange, *Proxīme urbem delabitur*, &c., Close to the city flows; or, *Eurōtas fluvius, ad cuius ripas*, &c.

36. When another noun necessarily comes between the relative and its antecedent, there is more danger of ambiguity in English than in Latin, as the gender and number of the Latin relative will generally direct to the proper antecedent, to which in English we are directed chiefly by the

sense. The following sentence affords an example of this kind: *Ad Byzantium fugit, oppidum naturâ munitum et arte, quod copiâ abundat.*

37. The antecedent in Latin is often understood when the English idiom requires it to be supplied. It is generally understood, and should be supplied in the proper case:

1st. When it is intentionally left indefinite, or is obvious from the gender and number of the relative, and the connexion in which it stands, as in No. 19; as,

1. *Sunt (homines) quos juvat,* There are men whom it delights.
2. *Hic est (id) quod quærimus,* That which we seek is here.
- “ *Hic sunt, (eæ) quæ quærimus* Those things which we seek are here.
3. *(Is) qui cito dat, bis dat,* (He) who gives promptly, gives twice.

Note. In the preceding sentences the antecedent supplied is in parentheses.

2d. The antecedent is usually understood before the relative, when it is expressed after it, and in the same case, (§ 99, Obs. 1, 2d.); as,

4. *(Pars) quæ pars terræna fuit,* The part which was earthy.
5. *(Locus) in quem locum venit,* The place into which he came.
- “ *Apud Actium (locum) qui lo-* At Actium a place which is, &c.
cus est, &c.

Note. 1. When the antecedent word is expressed in the relative clause, as in the examples Nos. 4, and 5, or is repeated, as in the following, No. 6, (§ 99, Obs. 1, 3d.,) it is omitted in translating; as,

6. *Erant omnino duo itinera, qui-* There were only two ways by
bus itineribus domo ex- which they could go from
ire possent, home.

Note. 2. *Quisquis, quidquid, or quicquid,* (and also *quicunque, quæcunque, quodcunque,*) “whoever, whatever,” used as a relative without an antecedent, includes a general or indefinite antecedent, in such case as the construction requires, and is equivalent to *omnis*, or *quivis qui*,—*omne*, or *quidvis quod*; as,

7. *Fortunam quæcunque (i. e. They would hazard whatever*
quamvis fortunam quæ) fortune (i. e. any fortune
accidat experiantur, which) might happen.
8. *Quidquid tetigerat aurum* Whatever (i. e. every thing which)
fiëbat, he had touched became gold.

Note 3. When the antecedent is a proposition, or clause of a sentence, § 99, Exp., the relative is put in the neuter gender, and sometimes has *id* before it referring to the same clause; as,

9. *Servi, quod (or id quod) nunquam ante factum, missi et milites facti sunt;* The slaves, which never had been done before, were set free and made soldiers.

38. In the beginning of a sentence, a relative, with or without *quum*, or other conjunctive term, and referring to some word, clause, or circumstance, in a preceding sentence, usually has the antecedent word repeated, or, if evident, understood; and instead of *who* or *which*, may be rendered *this*, *that*, *these*, *those*, or, *and this*, *and that*, &c., according as the closeness of the connexion may require, (§ 99, Obs. 8.); as,

1. *Quæ urbs quum infestaretur,* And since (or because) this city was infested.
 “ *Qui legati quum missi essent,* When these ambassadors had been sent.
 2. *Quæ contentio cuncta per-* This contention threw all things
 miscuit, into confusion.
 3. *Quibus nunciis acceptis,* These tidings being received.
 4. *Quod quum ille cerneret,* And when he saw this.
 5. *Quo facto,* This being done (or accomplished)
 6. *Quæ dum omnia contemplan-* And while they were contemplat-
 bantur, ing all these things.
 7. *Quod quum impetrasset,* And when he had obtained this.
 8. *A quo consilio quum revocaret.* When he recalled him from this design.
 9. *Quo ictu ille extinctus est,* And by this blow he was killed.

Note. To this construction belongs *quod*, (apparently for *propter* or *ad quod*, § 128,) in the beginning of a sentence, referring to something previously stated, and meaning, “on account of, with respect to, or as to, THIS THING;” as,

10. *Quod diis gratias habeo,* On account of this, (for this thing, wherefor,) I give thanks to the gods.
 11. *Quod diceret se venturum,* As to what (as to that thing which) he said, that he would come.

39. When the antecedent word is not repeated, as in No. 38, the relative, with or without *quum*, or other conjunctive term, may be rendered *he*, *she*, *it*, *they*, or *and he*, *and she*, &c., according as the antecedent word requires, (§ 99, Obs. 8.); as,

1. *Qui quum admitteret*, And when he admitted.
2. *Quæ quum vidisset*, And when she had seen.
3. *Quæ quum visa esset*, When she had been (or was) seen.
4. *Quam quum dare nollet*, And when he would not give it.
5. *Quibus quum occurrisset*, When he had met them.
6. *Qui (quæ; pl. qui, quæ,) respondit*, And he, (she, they) replied.
7. *Qui (or quæ) quum adessent*, And when they were present.
8. *Quem Meleæger interfecit*, And Meleager slew him.
9. *Quam quum duceret*, And when he was leading her.
10. *Ad quem quum venissent*, And when they had come to him.
11. *Quem ut vidit*, As soon as, (or when) he saw him.

40. When the relative in any case is followed by the subjunctive mood, and the two clauses, viz: the antecedent and relative, involve a *comparison*; or the latter expresses the *purpose*, *object*, or *design*, of something expressed by the former, the relative is better translated by the conjunction *that* and the personal pronoun; thus, *that I, that thou, that he, that they, &c.*, as the antecedent word may require, (See Gr. § 141, R. II. and Explanation.);

1. *Missus sum qui te adducërem*, I have been sent *that I* might bring you.
2. *Neque is qui facias id*, You are not such a person *that* you should do that.
3. *Quis est tam lynceus qui, &c.* Who is so sharp sighted *that he*.
4. *Misit legatos qui cognoscèrent*, He sent ambassadors *that they* might find out.
5. *Fruges mandavit quæ disseminaret*, She gave him fruits *that* he might scatter them.

41. In the expressions, *quippe qui, ut qui, utpöte qui*, the relative is better translated by the personal pronoun which represents the antecedent, (§ 141, Obs. 4.); as,

1. *Quippe qui nunquam legërim*, For, (or because) *I* have never read them.

42. After *dignus, indignus, idoneus*, and the like, in the predicate, the relative and subjunctive mood may be rendered by the infinitive, (§ 141, Obs. 2. 1st.); as,

1. *Dignus qui ametur*, Worthy *to be* loved.
2. *Si dignum qui numeretur creaveritis*, If you shall elect a person worthy *to be* reckoned, &c.

43. Sometimes the natural order of the sentence is inverted, so that the relative clause stands first and the antecedent follows it. In translating, the antecedent clause should generally be placed first; as,

1. *Qui bonis non recte utitur, ei bona mala fiunt,* Good things become evil to him who does not use good things well.
2. *Qui cito dat, (is) bis dat,* He gives twice who gives quickly.

Correlative Adjectives.

44. The demonstratives, *tot*, so many, and *totidem*, just so many; *tantus*, as great, so great, as much, so much; *talis*, such; are followed by their relatives, *quot*, *quantus*, *qualis*, signifying *as*, to denote comparison; *as*,

1. *Tot homines quot,* As many men as.
2. *Totidem naves quot,* Just so many ships as
3. *Tantus exercitus quantus,* As great (or so great) an army as.
4. *Talis homo qualis,* Such a man as.

So also the correlative adverbs.

- | | | | |
|------------------|-------------------|---------------|-----------------|
| 5. <i>Toties</i> | — <i>quoties,</i> | As often | — <i>as.</i> |
| 6. <i>Tam</i> | — <i>quam,</i> | So | — <i>as.</i> |
| 7. <i>Eò</i> | — <i>quò</i> | By so much | — <i>as.</i> |
| 8. <i>Tanto</i> | — <i>quanto,</i> | By so much | — <i>as; or</i> |
| | | In proportion | — <i>as.</i> |

45. Instead of the relative in such sentences, the conjunctions *ac*, *atque*, (§ 149, Obs. 6,) *ut*, and the relative *qui*, *quæ*, *quod*, are sometimes used and may generally be translated, “*as*,” or “*that*.”

1. *Honos talis paucis est delātus a c mihi,* Such honor has been bestowed upon few persons, *as* upon me.
2. *Cum totidem navibus at que profectus erat, rediit,* He returned with just as many ships *as* he had departed with.
3. *Nulla est tanta vis quæ non frangi possit,* No power is so great *as* (or, *that* it) cannot be broken.

46. When the relative only is expressed in sentences implying comparison, the *demonstrative* (No. 44,) must be supplied and the sentence translated as above; *as*,

1. *Crocodylus parit (tanta) ova quanta anseres,* The crocodile lays (*as large*) eggs *as* geese lay.
2. *(Tot) millia quot unquam penerè Mycænæ,* *As* many thousands *as* ever came from Mycenæ.

47. Sometimes, as in No. 43, the natural order of the sentence is inverted, so that the relative clause stands first and the antecedent follows it. In translating, the antecedent clause should be placed first; *as*,

- | | | |
|-----------------------------------|---|--|
| 1. <i>Quot homines tot causæ,</i> | } | |
| arrange | | <i>As</i> many causes <i>as</i> there are men. |
| <i>Tot causæ quot homines,</i> | | |

48. The relatives, *quot*, *quoties*, *quantus*, *qualis*, used *interrogatively*, or *in an exclamation*, or *indefinitely*, in the indirect interrogation, and without implying comparison, have no reference to an antecedent term either expressed or understood, and are translated respectively, "how many," "how often," "how great," or "how much," "what," or "of what kind;" as,

1. *Inter. Quot annos habet?* *How many years has he? i. e. how old is he?*
2. *Indef. Nescio quot,* *I know not how many.*
3. *Excl. Cum quantâ gravi-
tâte!* *With how much gravity.*
4. *Indef. Doce quales sint,* *Tell us of what kind they are.*

THE VERB AND ITS SUBJECT.

General Principle.

49. Every finite verb (§ 95, 5,) has its own subject, expressed or understood, in the nominative case.

Obs. The subject of the verb is the person or thing spoken of, and may be a *noun*, a *pronoun*, a *verb in the infinitive mood*, a *clause of a sentence*, or any thing which, however expressed, is the subject of thought or speech. (§ 101, Exp.)

General Rule of Arrangement.

50. The subject and all the words agreeing with it, governed by it, connected with it, or dependent upon it, must be arranged in the order of their connection and dependence, and translated before the verb.

1. *Canis latrat,* *The dog barks.*
2. *Ego scribo,* *I write.*
3. *Ludere est jucundum,* *To play is pleasant.*
4. *Dulce est pro patriâ mori,* *To die for one's country is sweet.*
5. *Totus Græcorum exercitus Aulids convenerat,* *The whole army of the Greeks had assembled at Aulis.*
6. *Vir sapiens qui pauca loquitur,* *The man who speaks little is wise.*

51. When the subject of a verb is the infinitive, either alone or with its subject; or a clause of a sentence, connected by *ut*, *quod*, or other conjunctive term, the English pronoun, *it*, is put with the verb referring to that infinitive or clause following it, and which is its proper subject; as,

1. *Facile est jubere,* It is easy to command.
2. *Nuntiātum est classem devinci,* It was announced that the fleet was conquered.
3. *Semper accidit ut absis,* It always happens that you are absent.
4. *Qui fit ut metuas,* How happens it that you fear.
5. *Nunquam Romānis placuisse imperatōrem a suis militibus interfici,* That it never had pleased the Romans, that a commander should be killed by his own soldiers.

52. The verb must always be translated in its proper tense, and in the same person and number with its nominative. (See paradigms of the verb, §§ 54–70.) But when it has two or more nouns or pronouns in the singular, taken together, or a collective noun expressing many as individuals, as its subject, the verb must be translated in the plural; as,

1. *Et pater et mater venerunt,* Both his father and mother have come.
2. *Turba quoquoversum ruunt,* The crowd rush in every direction.

53. The nominative to a verb in the first or second person, being evident from the termination, is seldom expressed in Latin; but must be supplied in translating; as,

1. *Scribo,* I write.
2. *Legis,* Thou readest.
3. *Scribimus,* We write.
4. *Legitis,* You read.

54. When the verb in the third person has no nominative expressed, it refers to some noun or pronoun evident from the connection; and, both in translating and parsing, the pronoun *ille*, or *is*, in the *nominative* case, and in the *gender* and *number* of the noun or pronoun referred to, must be supplied; as,

1. *(Ille) scribit,* (He) writes.
2. *(Illi) scribunt,* (They) write.

55. When the same word is the subject of several verbs closely connected in the same construction, it is expressed with the first and understood to the rest, both in Latin and English; thus,

1. *Cæsar venit, vidit, et vicit,* Cæsar came, saw, and conquered.
2. *Dicitur Cæsarem venisse,* It is said that Cæsar came, saw, and conquered.

Interrogative Sentences.

56. A question is made in Latin in four different ways, as follows:

1st. By an interrogative pronoun; as, *Quis venit?* "Who comes?" *Quem misit?* "Whom did he send?" *Cujus pecus hoc?* "Whose flock is this?" &c.

2d. By an interrogative adverb; as, *Unde venit?* "Whence came he?" *Cur venit?* "Why did he come?"

3d. By the interrogative particles, *num*, *an*, and the enclitic, *ne*. Thus used these particles have no corresponding English word in the translation; they merely indicate a question; as, *Num venit*, or *an venit*, or *venitne?* "Has he come?" *Num videtur?* "Does it seem?"

4th. By simply placing an interrogation mark at the end of the question; as, *Vis me hoc facere?* "Do you wish me to do this?"

57. The interrogative pronoun or adverb, in all cases, is translated before the verb; as,

- | | |
|-------------------------------|--|
| 1. <i>Quis fecit?</i> | <i>Who did it? or who has done it?</i> |
| 2. <i>Quem misit?</i> | <i>Whom did he send?</i> |
| 3. <i>Quantum constituit?</i> | <i>How much did it cost?</i> |
| 4. <i>Qualis fuit?</i> | <i>What sort of a man was he?</i> |

This is true also of the indirect question, i. e., when the substance of a question is stated but not in the interrogative form; as,

- | | |
|--|---|
| 5. <i>Nescio quantum constituerit,</i> | <i>I know not how much it cost.</i> |
| 6. <i>Docuit quam firma res esset concordia,</i> | <i>He shewed them how firm a thing agreement was.</i> |

Note. When the verb in the direct or indirect question comes under § 103, R. V., the predicate, or nominative *after* the verb, is translated *first*, and the subject or nominative, in the direct question after the verb, as in Ex. 4; but in the indirect, before it, as in Ex. 6. Thus, in Ex. 4, *qualis* is the predicate, and *ille* understood, the subject; in Ex. 6, *res* is the predicate, and *concordia* the subject.

58. In all forms of interrogation not made by an interrogative pronoun, as in No. 57, the nominative or subject is translated *after the verb* in English, in the simple forms, and *after the first auxiliary* in the compound forms; as,

- | | |
|------------------------|--|
| 1. <i>Videme?</i> | <i>Seest thou? or dost thou see?</i> |
| 2. <i>An venisti?</i> | <i>Hast thou come? or have you come?</i> |
| 3. <i>Scribetne?</i> | <i>Will he write?</i> |
| 4. <i>Num ibimus?</i> | <i>Shall we go?</i> |
| 5. <i>Nonne fecit?</i> | <i>Has he not done (it)?</i> |

- | | |
|------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 6. <i>An egisset melius?</i> | Would he have done better? |
| 7. <i>Norne alēmus?</i> | Shall we support? |
| 8. <i>Nonne Dei est?</i> | Does it not belong to God? |
| 9. <i>Iste est frater?</i> | Is that your brother? |

59. When a sentence not interrogative is introduced by *nec* or *neque*, not followed by a corresponding conjunction, (See No. 124,) in a connected clause, the verb will be translated by an auxiliary, and the English nominative will stand after the first auxiliary; as,

- | | |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Neque hoc intelligo,</i> | Neither do I understand this. |
| 2. <i>Nec venisset,</i> | Neither would he have come. |
| 3. <i>Nec adeptus sum,</i> | Nor have I attained. |

The object of the verb.

60. In translating, the object of a transitive verb in the accusative is arranged after the verb, and as near to it as possible. That object may be a *noun*, a *pronoun*, an *infinitive mood*, or a *clause of a sentence*, (§ 116, Exp.); as,

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. <i>Romulus condidit urbem,</i> | Romulus built a city. |
| 2. <i>Vocavit eam Romam,</i> | He called it Rome. |
| 3. <i>Disce dicere vera,</i> | Learn to speak the truth. |
| 4. <i>Obtulit ut captivos redimerent,</i> | He offered that they should redeem the captives. |

61. The interrogative or relative pronoun is always translated *before* the verb that governs it; as,

- | | |
|------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. <i>Quem mittimus?</i> | Whom shall we send? |
| 2. <i>Cui dedisti?</i> | To whom did ye give it? |
| 3. <i>Deus quem colimus,</i> | God whom we worship. |
| 4. <i>Cui omnia debemus,</i> | To whom we owe all things. |

62. When a transitive verb governs two cases, the immediate object in the accusative, according to the natural order, is usually translated first, and after that the remote object in the genitive, § 122; dative, § 123; accusative, § 124; or ablative, § 125; as,

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Arguit me furti,</i> | He accuses me of theft. |
| 2. <i>Comparo Virgilium Homero,</i> | I compare Virgil to Homer. |
| 3. <i>Poscimus te pacem,</i> | We beg peace of thee. |
| 4. <i>Onerat naves auro,</i> | He loads the ships with gold. |

Note. The accusative of the person after verbs of asking, is translated by *of*, or *from*; as,

- | | |
|---|---|
| 5. <i>Pyrrhum auxilium poposcerunt,</i> | They demanded aid of (or from) Pyrrhus. |
|---|---|

63. But when the remote object is a *relative*, or when the immediate object is an *infinitive*, or a clause of a sentence, or a noun further described by other words, the remote object must be translated first; as,

1. *Cui librum dedimus,* To whom we gave the book.
2. *Da mihi fallere,* Give me to deceive.
- “ *Dixit ei confiteor meum peccatum,* He said to him, I confess my fault.
3. *Eum rogaverunt, ut ipsos defenderet,* They entreated him, that he would defend them.
4. *Docuit illos quam firma esset,* He shewed them how firm it was.
5. *Civitatem, antea sollicitam, armis ornat,* He supplies with arms, the city already excited.

64. When a verb, which in the active voice governs two cases, is used in the passive form, that which was the immediate object in the accusative, becomes the subject in the nominative, and the remote object in its own case immediately follows the verb. Thus, the examples No. 62, may be arranged and translated as follows, § 126.

1. *Arguor furti,* I am accused of theft.
2. *Virgilius comparatur Homero,* Virgil is compared to Homer.
3. *Pax poscitur te,* Peace is begged of thee.
4. *Naves onerantur auro,* The ships are loading with gold.

So also the participles.

5. *Accusatus furti,* Accused of theft.
6. *Comparatus Homero,* Compared to Homer,
7. *Onerata auro,* Loaded with gold.
8. *Nudata hominibus,* Stripped of men.
9. *Ereptus morti,* Saved from death

Impersonal Verbs.

65. The impersonal verb has no nominative before it in Latin. It is translated by placing the pronoun *it* before it in English; as, (§ 85, 2.)

1. *Decet,* It becomes.
2. *Constat,* It is evident.
3. *Tonat,* It thunders.
4. *Pugnatur,* It is fought.
5. *Itur,* It is gone.
6. *Curritur,* It is run.

66. Impersonal verbs governing the dative or accusative in Latin, may be translated in a personal form by making the word in the dative or accusative the nominative to the English verb, taking care always to express the same idea, (§ 85, 6, and § 113; thus,

	<i>Impersonally.</i>	<i>Personally.</i>
1. <i>Placet mihi,</i>	It pleases <i>me</i> ;	<i>I</i> am pleased.
2. <i>Licet tibi,</i>	It is permitted to <i>you</i> ;	<i>You</i> are permitted
3. <i>Decet eum,</i>	It becomes <i>him</i> ;	<i>He</i> ought.
4. <i>Pudet nos,</i>	It shames <i>us</i> ;	<i>We</i> are ashamed.
5. <i>Tædet vos,</i>	It wearies <i>you</i> ;	<i>You</i> are wearied.
6. <i>Favetur illis,</i>	Favor is done to <i>them</i> ;	<i>They</i> are favored.
7. <i>Noctetur hosti,</i>	Hurt is done to the <i>enemy</i> ;	The <i>enemy</i> is hurt.
8. <i>Misæret me tui,</i>	It moves <i>me</i> to pity of <i>you</i> ;	<i>I</i> pity <i>you</i> .
9. <i>Pœnitent eos,</i>	It repents <i>them</i> ;	<i>They</i> repent.
10. <i>Pœnitent me pe- casse,</i>	It repents <i>me</i> , i. e.,	<i>I</i> repent of having sinned.

67. When the doer of an action denoted by an impersonal verb, or by a passive verb used impersonally, is expressed by the ablative with *a*, (§ 85, 6,) the verb may be translated personally in the active voice, and the doer, in the ablative, be made its English subject or nominative ; as,

	<i>Impersonally.</i>	<i>Personally.</i>
1. <i>Pugnatur a me,</i>	It is fought by <i>me</i> ;	<i>I</i> fight.
2. <i>Curritur a te,</i>	It is run by <i>thee</i> ;	<i>Thou</i> runnest.
3. <i>Favetur a nobis</i>	It is favored by <i>us</i> ;	<i>We</i> favor.
4. <i>Favetur tibi a nobis,</i>	It is favored to <i>you</i> by <i>us</i> ;	<i>We</i> favor <i>you</i> ; or <i>you</i> are favored by <i>us</i> .

Note. The doer in the ablative with *a*, is frequently understood, (especially when no definite person or thing is intended,) and must be supplied as the context requires ; as,

5. *Ubi perventum est (ab illis,)* When it was come by them, i. e.,
when they came.
6. *Descenditur (ab hominibus,)* Men (or people,) go down.
7. *Conveniebatur (ab hominibus,)* People assembled.

68. Some verbs, not impersonal, are used impersonally, when used before the infinitive of impersonal verbs, (§ 113, Obs. 1.) ; as,

	<i>Impersonally.</i>	<i>Personally.</i>
1. <i>Potest credi tibi,</i>	<i>It</i> can be trusted to <i>you</i> ;	<i>You</i> can be trusted ; 66. 2.
2. <i>Non potest noceri hosti,</i>	<i>It</i> cannot be hurt to the <i>enemy</i> ;	The <i>enemy</i> cannot be hurt ; 66. 7.
3. <i>Ut fieri solet,</i>	As <i>it is wont</i> to be done ; or, As is usual.	

69. Verbs usually impersonal are sometimes used personally, and have their subject in the nominative, (§ 113, Obs. 1.) ; as,

1. *Doleo* I grieve, (Impersonally *Dolet mihi*,) It grieves me,
2. *Candida pax homines decet*, Candid peace becomes men.
3. *Ista gesta mihi nostra hu-* These arms become my shoulders.
mèros decet,

Usage of Videor, "I seem."

70. *Videor*, "I seem," though never impersonal in Latin, is often rendered impersonally in English; and the dative following it, seems properly to come under Rule XXXIII, § 126, to denote the person to whom any thing seems or appears, i. e., by whom it is seen; thus, *Videor tibi esse pauper*, I seem to you, (i. e., I am seen by you,) to be poor. *Videor mihi esse pauper*, I seem to myself, (i. e., I am seen by myself,) to be poor; or, I think that I am poor. So the following:

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. <i>Videor esse liber</i> , | I seem to be free; or, <i>It seems</i> that I am free. |
| 2. <i>Videor mihi esse liber</i> , | I seem to myself to be free; or, <i>It seems</i> to me, (or, I think) that I am free. |
| 3. <i>Vidēris esse</i> , | You seem to be; or, <i>It seems</i> that you are. |
| 4. <i>Vidēris tibi esse</i> , | You seem to yourself to be; or, <i>It seems</i> to you, (i. e., you think) that you are. |
| 5. <i>Vidēris mihi esse</i> , | You seem to me to be; or, <i>It seems</i> to me, (i. e., I think) that you are. |
| 6. <i>Tu, ut vidēris, non scribis</i> , | You, as you seem, (or, as <i>it seems</i>) do not write. |

Obs. The third person singular of *videor* followed by an infinitive, with its subject in the accusative, or by a dependent clause after *ut*, or *quod*, may be said to be used impersonally; though strictly speaking, that infinitive with its accusative, or that clause, is the subject, (See No. 51,); as,

- | | |
|------------------------------------|--|
| 7. <i>Vidētur mihi te valēre</i> , | It appears to me that you are well; strictly rendered, That you are well appears to (or, is seen by) me. |
| 8. <i>Illi vidētur ut valeat</i> , | It appears to him, (or, he thinks) that he, (<i>another person</i>) is well. |
| 9. <i>Vidētur sibi valēre</i> , | It appears to him, (or, he thinks) that he, (<i>himself</i>) is well. He seems to himself to be well. |

Verbs.—Indicative Mood.

71. Verbs in the indicative mood are translated as in the paradigm in the Grammar. Care must be taken, however, to notice when the sense requires the *simple*, or *emphatic*, or *progressive* form.

72. When the perfect tense expresses a past action or event extending to, or connected with the present, in itself or in its consequences, it is used *definitely*, and must be rendered by the auxiliaries, *have*, *hast*, *has*, or *hath*; as,

1. *Regem vidi hodie*, I have seen the king to day.

73. When the perfect tense expresses a past action or event, without reference to the present, it is used *indefinitely*, (Gr. § 44, III.) and cannot be rendered by *have*, *hast*, *has*, or *hath*; as,

1. *Regem vidi nuper*, I saw the king lately.

Subjunctive Mood.

The subjunctive mood is used in two different ways, viz: *subjunctively* and *potentially*. (Gr. § 42, II. and §§ 139–141.)

Subjunctive used subjunctively.

74. This mood is used subjunctively, but for the most part translated as the indicative, when it expresses what is actual and certain though not directly asserted as such. This it does,

1st. When it is subjoined to some adverb, conjunction, or indefinite term in a dependent clause, for the purpose of stating the existence of a thing, (without directly asserting it,) as something supposed, taken for granted, or connected with the direct assertion, as a cause, condition, or modifying circumstance, (§ 140, Obs. 4.); as,

1. *Ea cum ita sint discēdam*, Since these things are so, I will depart.
2. *Si madeat*, If it is wet.
3. *Quum Cæsar rediret*; When Cæsar returned—was returning.
4. *Ita perterritus est ut mori- rētur*, He was so frightened that he died.
5. *Gratūlor tibi quod redieris*, I am glad that you have returned.

6. *Si imperitavērint*, If they have commanded.
 7. *Si reliquissem iniqui* If I had left him, &c.
dicērent,
 8. *Quum Cæsar profectus* When Cæsar had departed.
esset,

Obs. In the first of the above examples the direct assertion, is *discēdam*, "I will depart." The dependent clause, *ea cum ita sint*, "since these things are so," expresses the existence of certain things referred to without directly asserting it, but taking it for granted as a thing admitted or supposed, but still affecting in some way the event directly asserted. This holds good of all the other examples above.

The dependent clause connected by *ut*, or *ubi*, "when;" *dum*, "whilst;" *priusquam*, "before;" *postquam*, "after;" and other conjunctions, (§ 140, *Obs.* 2 and 3.); and also by *quum* or *cum*, "when," (*Obs.* 4.) sometimes take the indicative mood.

2d. The subjunctive mood is used subjunctively, as above, after an interrogative word used indefinitely, in a dependent clause, or in what is called the *indirect* question, i. e., an expression containing the substance of a question without the form. All interrogative words may be used in this way, (See § 140, 5.); thus,

9. *Nescio quis sit—quid* I know not *who he is—what is doing.*
fiat,
 10. *Doce me ubi sint dīi*, Tell me *where the gods are.*
 11. *Nescio uter scribēret*, I know not *which of the two wrote.*
 12. *Nescio quid scriptum* I know not *what was written.*
esset,
 12. *Scio cui, (a quo) scrip-* I know *to whom (by whom) it was*
tum esset, *written.*
 13. *An scis quis hoc fecērit?* Do you know *who has done this?*
 14. *An scis a quo hoc fac-* Do you know *by whom this has*
tum fuērit? *been done?*
 15. *Nemo sciēbat quīs hęc fec-* None knew *who had done these*
cisset, *things.*
 16. *Percunctātus quid vellet*, Having enquired *what he wished.*

Note. The direct question requires the indicative; as, *Quis fecit?* "Who *did* it?" The indirect requires the subjunctive; as, *Nescio quis fecērit*, "I know not who *did* it."

75. This mood is used subjunctively, and usually translated as the indicative in a relative clause, after an indefinite general expression, (§ 141, R. I.) a negation, or a ques-

tion implying a negation, and also after the relative in oblique narration, (§ 141, R. VI.); as,

1. *Est qui dicat*, There is one who *says*.
2. *Nullus est qui neget*, There is no one who *denies*.
3. *Quis est qui hoc faciat?* Who is there that *does* this?
4. *Antonius inquit, artem esse eorum rerum quæ sciantur*, Antonius says that art belongs to those things which *are* known.

The Subjunctive used Potentially.

76. The subjunctive mood is used *potentially*; 1st, in interrogative sentences; and 2d, to express a thing not as actual and certain, but contingent and hypothetical, (Gr. § 42, II. 2, and Obs. 3.) Thus used it is much less definite with respect to time, and is translated with some variety; as follows:

1. *Present*, by *may, can, shall, will, could, would, should*.
2. *Imperfect*, by *might, could, would, or should*.
3. *Perfect*, by *may have, can have, must have, &c.*
4. *Pluperfect*, by *might have, could have, would have, should have*, and denoting futurity, *should*.

The most usual renderings of each tense are the following:

77. *Present*. The present subjunctive used potentially expresses present liberty, power, will, or obligation, usually expressed by the English auxiliaries, *may, can, shall, will, could, would, should*. (§ 45, 1.)

1. *Licet eas*, You *may* go.
2. *An sic intelligat?* Can he so *understand* it?
3. *Men' moveat cimex Panti-
lius?* Shall (or *should*) the insect Panti-
lius *discompose* me?
4. *Quis istos ferat?* Who *could* bear those men?
5. *Si hic sis, aliter sentias*, If you were here you *would think* otherwise.

Imperatively.

6. *Sic eat*, Thus *let* her (or him) *go*.
7. *Eāmus*, *Let* us *go*.
8. *Pugnētur*, (Impersonally,) *Let* it *be fought*.
9. *Dii faciant*, *May* the gods *grant*.

78. *Imperfect*. The imperfect subjunctive used potentially, is preceded by a past tense, and expresses *past* liberty, power, will, or duty, but still in its use expresses time very indefinitely. It is usually rendered by the English

auxiliaries, *might, could, would, should*, sometimes *had, would have, should have*; as,

1. *Legebat ut disceret,* He read that he *might learn*.
2. *Quid facerem?* What *could I do?*
3. *Iret si juberet,* He *would go* if you *should order* it.
4. *Cur veniret,* Why *should he come*.
5. *Rogaverunt ut veniret,* They entreated that he *would come*.
6. *Si quis diceret, nunquam,* If any one *had said* it, I *would not have thought* it.

Note. After verbs denoting to hinder, forbid, and the like, *quo minus* with the subjunctive, may be rendered by *from* and the present participle, (§ 45, II. 3.); thus,

7. *Impedivit quo minus iret,* He hindered him *from going*

Obs. An action or state which would, or would not exist, or have existed, in a case supposed, but the contrary of which is implied, is expressed in Latin by the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive, without an antecedent verb or conjunction, (§ 139, 2.); as,

8. *Scrībērem, si necesse es-* I *would write*, if it were necessary.
8. *Scrīpsissem, si necesse* I *would have written*, had it been necessary.

79. *Perfect.* The perfect subjunctive properly expresses what is supposed to be past, but of which there exists uncertainty. Thus used it is commonly rendered by the auxiliaries *may have, can have, &c.* It is also used sometimes in a present and sometimes in a future sense, with much variety of meaning, according to its connection, (§ 45, III.); as,

1. *Fortasse erravērim,* Perhaps I *may have erred*.
2. *Etsi non scrīpsērit,* Though he *cannot have written*.
3. *Ut sic dixērim,* That I *may so speak*.
4. *Citius credidērim,* I *would sooner believe*.
5. *Facile dixērim,* I *could easily tell*.
6. *Quasi affuērim,* As if I *had been present*.

80. *Pluperfect.* The pluperfect (§ 45, IV.) is usually rendered by the auxiliaries, *might have, could have, would have, should have*, as in the paradigm of the verb. But when an action is related as having been future at a certain past time, it is expressed in Latin in the pluperfect subjunctive, and translated *should*; as,

1. *Quodcunque jussisset me* I said that I would do whatsoever
factūrum dixi, he *should order*.

2. *Promisiſti te ſcripturum, ſi* You promiſed that thou would
rogaviſſem, write, if I ſhould deſire it.
 3. *Dum convaleuiſſet,* Until he ſhould get well.

81. The pluperfect ſubjunctive active, with *quum*, in verbs not deponent, is uſed inſtead of a paſt participle active, (§ 49, 8,) and may be rendered by the compound perfect participle in Engliſh; as,

1. *Cæſar, quum hæc dixiſſet* Cæſar having ſaid theſe things;
 (literally, Cæſar, when he
 had ſaid theſe things.)

82. When the ſubjunctive has a relative for its ſubject, and the relative and antecedent clause involve a comparison, they may be rendered as in No. 40, or the ſenſe will be expreſſed if we render the relative by *as*, and the ſubjunctive by the infinitive; thus,

1. *Quis tam eſſet amens qui ſem-* Who would be ſo fooliſh *as to live*
per vivèret, always.
 2. *Neque tu iſ es qui nescias,* You are not ſuch a one *as not to*
know.

83. When the relative and ſubjunctive follow ſuch adjectives as *dignus, indignus, idoneus*, (§ 141, Obs. 2.) and the like; or when they expreſs the end or deſign of ſomething expreſſed in the antecedent clause, their meaning will be expreſſed as in No. 40, or by the infinitive alone, or preceded by the phrase “in order to;” thus,

1. *Dignum qui ſecundus ab Ro-* Worthy to be ranked next after
mulo numeretur, Romulus.
 2. *Legatos miſerunt qui eum a c-* They ſent legates to accuſe (or, in
cuſarent, order to accuſe) him.
 3. *Virgas iis dedit quibus* He gave them rods to drive, (in
agerent, order to drive; or, ſo that with
 theſe they might drive.)

84. The ſubjunctive with, or without *ut*, after verbs ſignifying to *bid, forbid, tell, allow, hinder, command*, and the like, (§ 140, 1, 3d, and Obs. 5,) may be rendered by the Engliſh infinitive preceded by the ſubject of the verb in the objective caſe; as,

1. *Precor venias,* I pray that you may come; i. e.,
 I pray you to come.
 2. *Dic veniat,* Tell her to come.
 3. *Sine eat,* Permit him to go.
 4. *Non patieris ut eant,* You will not ſuffer them to go.
 5. *Non patieris ut vescuſmur,* You do not ſuffer us to eat.

85. When several verbs in the same mood and tense, have the same nominative, and are connected in the same construction, the *auxiliary* and "to," the sign of the infinitive, in the translation is used with the first only, and understood to the rest; as,

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. <i>Et vidisset et audivisset,</i> | He might have both seen and heard. |
| 2. <i>Et visus et auditus esset,</i> | He might have been both seen and heard. |
| 3. <i>Cupimus et vidēre et audire,</i> | We wish both to see and hear. |

The Infinitive Mood.

86. When the infinitive is without a subject, it is to be considered as a verbal noun, (§ 144,) and translated as in the paradigm of the verb; as,

- | | |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Volo scribere,</i> | I wish to write. |
| 2. <i>Dicitur didicisse,</i> | He is said to have learned |
| 3. <i>Dicitur itūrus esse,</i> | He is said to be about to go. |
| 4. <i>Dicitur itūrus fuisse,</i> | He is said to have been about to go. |

87. When the verbs *possum*, *volo*, *nolo*, *malo*, in the indicative or subjunctive, are translated by the English auxiliaries, *can*, *will*, *will not*, *will rather*, and sometimes, in the past tense, by *could*, *would*, &c., the infinitive following is translated without *to* before it; as,

- | | |
|---|--------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Potest fieri,</i> | It can be done. |
| 2. <i>Volo ire,</i> | I will go. |
| 3. <i>Nolo facere,</i> | I will not do it. |
| 4. <i>Malo facere,</i> | I will rather do it. |
| 5. <i>Ut se volucrem facere vellet,</i> | That he would make her a bird. |
| 6. <i>Nihil jam defendi potuit,</i> | Nothing could now be defended. |
| 7. <i>Hoc facere non potuit,</i> | He could not do this. |
| 8. <i>Nolite timere,</i> | Do not fear. |

88. The present is generally translated as the perfect without "to," after the imperfect, perfect and pluperfect tenses of *possum*, *volo*, *nolo*, *malo*, when translated *could*, *would*, *would not*, *would rather*; and with "to" after the same tenses of *debeo*, and *oportet*, translated *ought*; as,

- | | |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Melius fieri non potuit,</i> | It could not have been done better. |
| 2. <i>Volui dicere,</i> | I would have said. |
| 3. <i>Sumere arma noluit,</i> | He would not have taken arms. |
| 4. <i>Maluit augere,</i> | He would rather have increased. |
| 5. <i>Quam potuisset edere,</i> | Than he could have caused. |
| 6. <i>Debui mihi ignoscere,</i> | You ought to have pardoned me. |
| 7. <i>Dividi oportuit.</i> | It ought to have been divided. |

Note. A strictly literal translation of most of the above sentences would not express the precise idea intended; thus, in the third sentence, "He would not have taken arms," and "He was not willing to take arms," manifestly do not mean the same thing.

89. After verbs denoting to *see, hear, feel*, and the like, the present infinitive is often translated by the English present participle; as,

- | | |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Audvi eum dicere,</i> | I heard him <i>saying</i> . |
| 2. <i>Surgere videt lunam,</i> | He sees the moon <i>rising</i> . |
| 3. <i>Terram tremere sensit,</i> | He felt the earth <i>trembling</i> . |

Obs. So also when the infinitive alone, or as part of a clause, is the subject of another verb; as,

- | | |
|--|--|
| 4. <i>Morari periculōsum est,</i> | Delaying <i>is dangerous</i> . |
| 5. <i>Morari periculōsum (esse) arbitrantur,</i> | They think that <i>delaying is dangerous</i> . |

The Infinitive with a subject.

90. The infinitive with its subject in the accusative, though but seldom, is sometimes translated in the same form in English; as,

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. <i>Cupio te venire,</i> | I wish <i>you to come</i> . |
| 2. <i>Quos discordare novē-</i>
<i>rat,</i> | <i>Whom he had known to differ.</i> |
| 3. <i>Hoc optimum esse iudicavit,</i> | He decided <i>this to be</i> the best. |
| 4. <i>Eum vocari iussit,</i> | He ordered <i>him to be</i> called. |

91. The infinitive with a subject, usually is, and always may be, translated by the English indicative or potential, according to the sense intended. When so rendered, its subject must always be translated in the nominative; and this, if not a relative, is usually preceded by the conjunction *that*, (§ 145.); as,

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. <i>Cupio te venire,</i> | I wish <i>that you would come</i> . |
| 2. <i>Dicit me scribere,</i> | He says <i>that I write</i> . |
| 3. <i>Eos ivisse putabat,</i> | He thought <i>that they had gone</i> . |
| 4. <i>Quem nunquam risisse ferunt,</i> | <i>Who they say never laughed.</i> |
| 5. <i>Rogavit quid faciendum</i>
<i>(esse) putaret,</i> | He asked <i>what he thought ought to be done</i> . |

92. Both the Latin and the English infinitive, by their tenses, represent an act, &c., as present, past or future, *at the time of the governing verb*. Hence, when the one is translated by the other; that is, the Latin infinitive by the English infinitive, (Nos. 86 and 90,) any tense of the one

will be correctly translated by the same tense in the other, (except as in No. 88,) no matter what be the tense of the governing verb; as,

- | | | | | |
|----------------------------|---|----------------|------------------|------------------------|
| 1. Pres. <i>Dictur,</i> | } | Pres. | Past. | Future. |
| 2. Past, <i>Dicebatur,</i> | | <i>habere;</i> | <i>habuisse;</i> | <i>habiturus esse.</i> |
| 3. Fut. <i>Dicetur,</i> | | | | |
-
- | | | |
|-------------------------|---|--|
| 1. Pres. He is said | } | to have; to have had; to be about to have. |
| 2. Past, He was said | | |
| 3. Fut. He will be said | | |

93. But when the Latin infinitive, with its subject, is translated by the English *indicative* or *potential*, the tense used in these moods, must be that which will correctly express the time of the act expressed by the Latin infinitive as estimated, not from the time of the governing verb, as in Latin, but as estimated from the present. That is, events present at the same time, or past at the same time, will be expressed in English by the same tense; an event represented in Latin as prior to the present time, (perfect infinitive after the present tense,) will be expressed by the English imperfect or perfect indefinite; and an event represented in Latin as prior to a past event, (perfect infinitive after a past tense,) will be expressed by the English pluperfect: thus:

1. Pres. *Dicunt eum venire,* They say that he is coming, or comes.
2. Past, *Dixerunt eum venire,* They said that he came.
3. Pres. *Dicunt eum venisse,* They say that he came.
4. Past, *Dixerunt eum venisse,* They said that he had come.
5. Past, *Ceperunt suspicari illam venire,* They began to suspect that she came.

Note. The infinitive after the future does not follow this analogy, but is always translated in its own tense; as,

- | | | |
|---|-----------------|-----------------------|
| Pres. | Perf. | Future. |
| 6. <i>Dicent eum venire,</i> | <i>venisse,</i> | <i>venturum esse.</i> |
| They will say that he comes, has come, will come. | | |

94. 1. Present, past, and future time, are variously expressed as follows:

- 1st. *Present time* is expressed by the *present tense*, and sometimes by the *perfect definite*.
- 2d. *Past time* is expressed by the *imperfect*, *perfect definite* and *pluperfect*.—by the *perfect participle*,—the *present infinitive after a past tense*,—the *present tense used to express a past event*, § 44, I, 3,—and by the *pre-*

sent participle, agreeing with the subject of the governing verb in any of these tenses, § 49, 5.

3d. Future time is expressed by the *future*, and *future perfect*.

2. The infinitive of deponent verbs, is translated in the same manner as the infinitive active in the following examples in Nos. 95 to 100.

3. After verbs denoting to *promise, request, advise, command*, and the like, implying a reference to something future, the present infinitive, with its subject, is usually translated as the future, by *should*, or *would*, (See No. 100, 1, 2, 3, 7, 8, 9,); as, *Jussit, eos per castra duci*, He ordered that they *should be led* through the camp.

4. The Latin words for "*he said*," "*saying*," or the like, introducing an oblique narration, are often omitted, and the infinitive takes the form of translation corresponding to the *time* expressed by the word to be supplied.

From these principles are deduced the following directions for translating the infinitive with a subject.

Present Infinitive after Present or Future time.

95. DIRECT. I. When the preceding verb is in the *present*, the *perfect* used definitely, or *future tense*, the present infinitive is translated as the present; as,

Active Voice.

- | | |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Dico eum laudare,</i> | I say that he <i>praises</i> . |
| 2. <i>Dixi eum laudare,</i> | I have said that he <i>praises</i> . |
| 3. <i>Dicam eum laudare,</i> | I will say that he <i>praises</i> . |

Passive Voice.

- | | |
|------------------------------|---|
| 4. <i>Dico eum laudari,</i> | I say that he <i>is praised</i> . |
| 5. <i>Dixi eum laudari,</i> | I have said that he <i>is praised</i> . |
| 6. <i>Dicam eum laudari,</i> | I will say that he <i>is praised</i> . |

Present Infinitive after Past time.

96. DIRECT. II. When the preceding verb is in the *imperfect, perfect indefinite, or pluperfect*, or in the *present infinitive after a past tense*, the present infinitive is translated as the *imperfect, or perfect indefinite*; as,

Present Infinitive Active.

1. *Dicebam eum laudāre*, I said that he *praised*.
2. *Dixi eum laudāre*, I said that he *praised*.
3. *Dixēram eum laudāre*, I had said that he *praised*.
4. *Cœpi dicere eum laudāre*, I began to say that he *praised*.

Present Infinitive Passive.

5. *Dicebam eum laudāri*, I said that he *was praised*.
6. *Dixi eum laudāri*, I said that he *was praised*.
7. *Dixēram eum laudāri*, I had said that he *was praised*.
8. *Cœpi dicere eum laudāri*, I began to say that he *was praised*.

Exc. I. When the present infinitive expresses that which is always true, it must be translated in the *present*, after any tense, § 44, I. 1; as

9. *Doctus erat deum guber.* He had been taught that God *gov-*
nāre mundum, *erns* the world.

Exc. II. When the present infinitive expresses an act subsequent to the time of the governing verb, it is translated after any tense, by the potential with *should; would*; as,

- | | | | |
|---------------------|------------------|----------------|-------------------------------|
| 10. <i>Jubet</i> | } <i>te ire,</i> | He orders | } that you <i>should go</i> . |
| 11. <i>Jussit</i> | | He ordered | |
| 12. <i>Jussērat</i> | | He had ordered | |

Perfect Infinitive after Present or Future time.

97. DIRECT. III. When the preceding verb is in the *present*, *perfect definite*, or *future tense*, the perfect infinitive is translated as the imperfect or perfect indefinite; as,

Active Voice.

1. *Dico eum laudavisse*, I say that he *praised*.
2. *Dixi eum laudavisse*, I have said that he *praised*.
3. *Dicam eum laudavisse*, I will say that he *praised*.

Passive Voice.

4. *Dico eum laudātum esse*, I say that he *was praised*.
5. *Dixi eum laudātum esse*, I have said that he *was praised*.
6. *Dicameum laudātum esse*, I will say that he *was praised*.
7. *Dico eum laudātum fu-* I say that he *has been praised*.
isse,
8. *Dixi eum laudātum fu-* I have said that he *has been praised*.
isse,
9. *Dicam eum laudātum fu-* I will say that he *has been praised*.
isse,

Perfect Infinitive after Past Tenses.

98. DIRECT. IV. When the preceding verb is in the *imperfect*, *perfect indefinite*, or *pluperfect*, or in the *present infinitive after a past tense*, the perfect infinitive is translated as the pluperfect; as,

Active Voice

1. *Dicebam eum laudavisse*, I said that he *had praised*.
2. *Dixi eum laudavisse*, I said that he *had praised*.
3. *Dixeram eum laudavisse*, I had said that he *had praised*.
4. *Cepi dicere eum laudavisse*, I began to say that he *had praised*.

Passive Voice.

5. *Dicebam eum laudatum esse*, I said that he *had been praised*.
6. *Dixi eum laudatum esse*, I said that he *had been praised*.
7. *Dixeram eum laudatum esse*, I had said that he *had been praised*.
8. *Cepi dicere eum laudatum esse*, I began to say that he *had been praised*.
9. *Dicebam eum laudatum fuisse*, I said that he *had been praised*.
10. *Dixi eum laudatum fuisse*, I said that he *had been praised*.
11. *Dixeram eum laudatum fuisse*, I had said that he *had been praised*.
12. *Cepi dicere eum laudatum fuisse*, I began to say that he *had been praised*.

Future Infinitive after the Present Tense.

99. When the preceding verb is in the *present*, or *perfect definite*, or *future tense*, the future infinitive with *esse*, is translated as the future indicative; and with *fuisse* by *would have*, or *should have*, in the pluperfect potential in a future sense, and *fore*, for *futurum esse*, by *will be*.

Active Voice.

1. *Dico eum laudaturum esse*, I say that he *will praise*.
2. *Dixi eum laudaturum esse*, I have said that he *will praise*.
3. *Dicam eum laudaturum esse*, I will say that he *will praise*.
4. *Dico eum laudaturum fuisse*, I say that he *would have praised*.
5. *Dixi eum laudaturum fuisse*, I have said that he *would have praised*.
6. *Dicam eum laudaturum fuisse*, I will say that he *would have praised*.

Passive Voice.

7. *Dico eum laudatum iri,* I say that he *will be praised*.
 8. *Dixi eum laudatum iri,* I have said that he *will be praised*.
 9. *Dicam eum laudatum iri,* I will say that he *will be praised*.

Future Infinitive after Past Tenses.

100. DIRECT. VI. When the preceding verb is of the *imperfect*, *perfect indefinite*, or *pluperfect*, the future of the infinitive with *esse*, is rendered by *would* or *should*; and with *fuisse*, by *would have*, and *should have*; and *fore* for *futurum esse* after any past tense, by *would be*; as,

Active Voice.

1. *Dicebam eum laudatum esse,* I said that he *would praise*.
 2. *Dixi eum laudatum, &c.* I said that he *would praise*.
 3. *Dixeram eum laudatum* I had said that he *would praise*.
 4. *Dicebam eum laudatum fuisse,* I said that he *would have praised*.
 5. *Dixi eum laudatum, &c.* I said that he *would have praised*.
 6. *Dixeram eum laudatum fuisse,* I had said that he *would have praised*.

Passive Voice.

7. *Dicebam eum laudatum iri,* I said that he *would be praised*.
 8. *Dixi eum laudatum iri,* I said that he *would be praised*.
 9. *Dixeram eum laudatum iri,* I had said that he *would be praised*.
 10. *Dicebam (dixi) eum fore tutum,* I said that he *would be safe*.

Usage of Fore.

Obs. *Fore* is used for *futurum esse*, and, with a subject after present tenses means "*will be*," after past tenses "*would be*." Both of them when followed by a subjunctive with *ut* (§ 145, *Obs.* 6,) after a present tense, may be translated by the future indicative of that verb; and after a past tense, by the imperfect potential; as,

11. *Credo eum fore tutum,* I believe that he *will be safe*.
 12. *Credēbam, or credidi, (credideram) eum fore tutum,* I believed, (had believed) that he *would be safe*.
 13. *Credo fore (or futurum esse) ut discas,* I believe that you *will learn*.
 14. *Credēbam or credidi (credideram) fore (or futurum esse) ut disceres,* I believed, (had believed) that you *would learn*.

Participles.

101. Participles are usually translated after their nouns, as in the paradigms of the verb; thus,

- | | | |
|---------------------|----------------------------|---|
| 1. Present active, | <i>Homo carens fraude,</i> | A man wanting guile. |
| 2. Future active, | <i>Homo scripturus,</i> | A man about to write. |
| 3. Perfect passive, | <i>Vita bene acta,</i> | A life well spent. |
| 4. —————, | <i>Cæsar coactus,</i> | Cæsar being (or having been) compelled. |
| 5. (Deponent,) | <i>Cæsar regressus,</i> | Cæsar having returned |
| 6. Future passive, | <i>Mala vitanda,</i> | Evils to be avoided,
i. e., which ought to be avoided. |

Exc. But when a participle is used as an adjective, (§ 49, 3,) it is translated, like the adjective, before its substantive; as,

7. *Tigrin ostendit mansue-* He exhibited a tamed tiger.
factam,
8. *In ferventibus arenis* Standing on the burning sands.
insistens,

Future Participle Active.

102. When the Future participle active is used to express a *purpose, end, or design* of another action, (§ 146, Obs. 3,) it is rendered by "to," or the phrase "in order to," instead of "about to;" as,

1. *Pergit consulturus ora-* He goes to consult (or, in order to
cûla, *consult*) the oracle.

Obs. The present participle is also sometimes used in this sense; as,

2. *Venerunt postulantes ci-* They came to (or, in order to) ask
bum, food.

Perfect Participle Passive.

103. As the Latin verb has no perfect participle in the active sense, (except in deponent verbs,) its place is usually supplied by the perfect participle passive in the case absolute, (§ 146, Obs. 8,); thus, "Cæsar having consulted his friends," rendered into Latin, will be, *Cæsar a mīcis consultis*, literally, "Cæsar, his friends being consulted. Hence,

104. When the action expressed passively by the perfect participle in the case absolute, or agreeing with the object of a verb, is something done by the subject of the leading

verb in the sentence, the participle is rendered more in accordance with English idiom, by the compound perfect active participle in English, agreeing with the subject of the verb, and followed by its noun in the objective case, (§ 49, 8, and § 146, Obs. 8.); thus,

1. *Cæsar, his dictis, profectus est*, translated in the Latin idiom, *Cæsar, these things being said*, departed. English idiom, *Cæsar, having said these things*, departed.
2. *Opère peracto, ludemus*, Latin idiom, *Our work being finished*, we will play. English idiom, *Having finished our work*, we will play.
3. *Pythiam ad se vocatum pecuniâ instruxit*, Latin idiom, He supplied with money Pythias being called to him. English idiom, *Having called Pythias to him*, he supplied him with money.

105. The perfect participle of deponent verbs having an active signification, accords with the English idiom, and is best translated literally; as,

1. *Nactus naviculum*, *Having found* a boat.
2. *Cohortatus exercitum*, *Having exhorted* the army.

106. When the perfect participle of deponent or common verbs, expresses an act nearly or entirely contemporaneous with the leading verb, it may be translated by the English present participle in *ing*, (§ 48, 5, Note.); as,

1. *Rex hoc factus miratus* The king, *admiring* this act, dismissed the youth.
2. *Columba delapsa refert sagittam*, The dove *falling* brings back the arrow.

The Future Participle Passive.

107. After verbs signifying *to give, to deliver, to agree or bargain for, to have, to receive, to undertake*, and the like, the participle in *dus* generally denotes *design* or *purpose*, and is rendered simply as in the paradigm, or with the phrase "in order to," prefixed, (§ 146, Obs. 4.); as,

1. *Testamentum tibi tradit legerendum*, He delivers his will to you *to (or in order to) be read*.
2. *Attribuit nos trucidandos* He has given us over to Cethegus *(in order) to be slain*.

108. The participle in *dus*, especially when agreeing with the subject of a sentence or clause, generally denotes *propriety, necessity, or obligation*, and is rendered variously, as

the tense of the accompanying verb and the connection require, (§ 146, Obs. 5.); the following are examples :

1. *Legātus mittendus est*, An ambassador *must* (or *should*)
be sent.
2. *Legātus mittendus erat* or *fuit*, An ambassador *had to be sent*.
3. *Legātus mittendus erit*, An ambassador *will have to be sent*.
4. *Legātum mittendum esse*, That an ambassador *should be sent*.
5. *mittendum fuisse*, *mittendum fuisse* ought to (or
should) *have been sent*.
6. *Dissimulanda loquitur*, He speaks things that *ought to be*
concealed.
7. *Dissimulanda loquebatur*, He spoke things which *ought to*
have been concealed.
8. *Quæ dissimulanda erunt*, Which *will have to be concealed*.
9. *Dic, quid statuendum sit*, Say, what is to be (or *must be*)
thought.

Ablative Absolute.

109. When a participle stands with a substantive in the ablative absolute, R. LX., the substantive is translated without a sign, No. 9, and after it the participle, as in the paradigm of the verb ; as,

1. *Romūlo regnante*, Romulus *reigning*.
2. *Hac oratione habitā*, This oration *being delivered*.
3. *Cæsare ventūro*, Cæsar (being) *about to come*.
4. *Præceptis tradendis*, Rules *being to be delivered*.
5. *Bello orto*, War *having arisen*.

Note. The future participles, Ex. 3, 4, are seldom used in the case absolute.

110. When two nouns,—a pronoun and a noun,—a noun or a pronoun and an adjective, are used in the ablative without a participle, (§ 146, Obs. 10,) they are translated in the nominative without a sign, and the English participle “*being*,” inserted between them ; as,

1. *Adolescentūlo duce*, A young man *being leader*.
2. *Mario consule*, Marius *being consul*.
3. *Me suasore*, I *being the adviser*.
4. *Annibālī vivo*, Hannibal *being alive*.
5. *Se invito*, He *being unwilling*.

Gerunds and Gerundives.

111. The gerund, being a verbal noun, is translated in

the same manner as other nouns of the same case, and at the same time may govern the case of its own verb, § 147; as,

- | | |
|---|-----------------------------------|
| 1. N. <i>Petendum pacem,</i> | Seeking peace. |
| 2. G. <i>Petendi pacem,</i> | Of seeking peace. |
| 3. D. <i>Utendo libris,</i> | To (or for) using books |
| 4. Ac. <i>Obliviscendum injuriarum,</i> | Forgetting injuries. |
| 5. Abl. <i>Parendo magistratui,</i> | By obeying the magistrate. |
| 6. Abl. <i>Petendo pacem,</i> | With, from, in, by seeking peace. |

112. Of verbs that govern the accusative, instead of the gerund in the oblique cases, the Latins commonly used the participle in *dus*, in the sense of the gerund, and agreeing with its object in gender, number and case; the case being governed by the same word that would have governed the gerund. When thus used it is called a *gerundive*. (§ 147, R. LXII.)

Gerunds.

Gerundives.

- | | |
|------------------------------------|---|
| 1. <i>Ars librum legendi,</i> | 5. <i>Ars libri legendi,</i>
The art of reading a book. |
| 2. <i>Utile vulnera curando,</i> | 6. <i>Utile vulneribus curandis,</i>
Useful for healing wounds. |
| 3. <i>Ad litteras scribendum,</i> | 7. <i>Ad litteras scribendas,</i>
For writing a letter. |
| 4. <i>De captivos commutand o,</i> | 8. <i>De captivis commutandis,</i>
Respecting exchanging captives. |

113. When the gerund is the subject of the verb *est*, and governs the dative, it implies necessity, and is variously translated into the English idiom, as the tense of the verb requires, (§ 147,); as,

Latin Idiom.

English Idiom.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. <i>Legendum est mihi,</i>
Reading is to me; i. e., | I must read; I ought to read;
I should read. |
| 2. <i>Legendum erat (fuit) mihi.</i>
Reading was to me; | I had to read; I ought to have
read; I should have read. |
| 3. <i>Legendum fuerat mihi,</i>
Reading had been to me; | I had been obliged to read. |
| 4. <i>Legendum erit mihi,</i>
Reading will be to me; | I will have to read; It will be
necessary for me to read. |
| 5. <i>Dicit legendum esse mihi,</i>
He says that reading is to me; | He says that I must read—
ought to read—should read. |
| 6. <i>Dicit legendum fuisse mihi,</i>
He says that reading was to me; | He says that I had to read—
ought to—or should—have
read. |

Obs. The dative is frequently omitted, and generally when it denotes persons or things, in a general or indefinite

sense. In such cases, *homīni*, *homīnibus*, *nobis*, or the like, must be supplied ; as,

7. *Vivendum est recte* (*scil. hominib.*) Living honestly, is viz : to men ;
i. e., men ought to live honestly.
8. *Dicit vivendum esse recte*, (*scil. homini*,) He says that living honestly is,
viz: to a man; i. e. a man
ought to live honestly.

Supines.

114. The Supines are rendered without variation, as in the paradigm, and under the rules, (§ 148,) ; as,

1. *Abiit deambulatum*, He has gone to walk.
2. *Facile dictum*, Easy to tell, or to be told.

Passive Voice.

115. The passive voice, in the indicative mood, is translated as in the paradigms. The subjunctive mood is subject to all the variety of construction and translation used in the active voice, Nos. 74-84, acting on the verb *to be*, which as an auxiliary with the perfect participle, makes up the passive form of the verb in English.

In the compound tenses, (§ 53, 3,) when two or more verbs in a sentence are in the same tense, and have the same nominative, or are in the same construction, the verb *sum* is commonly expressed with the last and understood to the rest, as in the following Ex. 1. But when the nominative is changed, the verb "to be" should be repeated as in Ex. 2.

1. *Nisus a Minōe victus et occisus* Nisus was conquered and killed
est, by Minos.
2. *Tres naves captæ, decem demersæ, duo millia hostium* Three ships were taken, ten sunk;
capta, tredēcim millia occisa two thousand of the enemy were
sunt. taken, thirteen thousand killed.

Passive Voice in a Middle Sense.

116. The Latin passive voice is often used to represent its subject, not as acted upon by another, but as acting on itself, or for itself, or intransitively, by its own impulse ; and so corresponds in sense to the middle voice in Greek. Thus used, it is best translated by the active voice followed by the reflexive pronoun as an object, or by an intransitive

verb expressing the idea intended, (§ 41, Obs. 3.) The following are examples.

1. *Paludibus abditi sunt*, They concealed themselves in the marshes.
2. *Cum omnes in omni genere scelerum volutentur*, Since all give themselves up to every kind of wickedness.
3. *Fertur in hostes*, Rushes against the enemy.
4. *Volutati super poma*, Rolling themselves over the apples.
5. *Cingitur armis*, Girds himself with his armor.
6. *Sternuntur tumulo*, Throw themselves on the grave.
7. *Gallus victus occultatur*, The cock, when conquered, hides himself.

117. The verb *sum* governing the genitive by R. XII., § 108, may generally be translated by the phrase "belongs to," "is the part," "is the property," &c. See explanation under Rule; as,

1. *Est regis*, It belongs to the king.
2. *Pecus est Melibæi*, The flock belongs to Melibæus.
3. *Prudentia est senectutis*, Prudence is the characteristic of old age.

118. The verb *sum*, (also *desum*.) in the third person, governing the dative by § 112, Rule II., may generally be translated by the corresponding tenses of the verb "to have," with the Latin dative for its subject, and the Latin subject for its object; as,

	<i>Latin Idiom.</i>	<i>English Idiom.</i>
1. <i>Liber est mihi</i> ,	A book is to me,	I have a book.
2. <i>Liber erat mihi</i> ,	A book was to me,	I had a book.
3. <i>Liber fuit mihi</i> ,	A book was (or has been) to me,	I had, or have had a book.
4. <i>Liber fuerat mihi</i> ,	A book had been to me,	I had had a book.
5. <i>Liber erit mihi</i> ,	A book will be to me,	I will have a book.
6. <i>Liber sunt mihi</i> ,	Books are to me,	I have books.
7. <i>Est mihi</i> ,	It is to me,	I have it.
8. <i>Liber deest mihi</i> ,	A book is not to me,	I have not a book.

119. When a compound verb, rendered by the simple verb and a preposition, is followed by two cases, the simple verb with the immediate object (always in the accusative,) is usually translated first, and then the preposition with the remote object.

1. *Flumen copias transduxit*, He led his forces across the river.
2. *Circumdare mœnia opido*, To build walls around the city.
3. *Caput dejecit saxo*, He threw the head down from the rock.

120. An adverb, adverbial phrase, or clause expressing some circumstance in translating, may often be arranged in different situations in a sentence, due regard being paid to the sense and harmony of the whole; thus, *Magna debemus suscipere dum vires suppētunt*, may be arranged variously for translating, as follows:

1. *Debemus suscipere magna, dum vires suppētunt*; or,
2. *Dum vires suppētunt*, debemus suscipere magna; or,
3. *Debemus, dum vires suppētunt*, suscipere magna.

121. The negative conjunction *ne*, is variously rendered *lest*, *lest that*, *that-not*, *not*; and after verbs signifying to *fear*, *forbid*, and the like, it is translated *that*, while *ut* in the same situation, means *that not*.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. <i>Ne quis eat,</i> | <i>Lest (or that not) any one may go.</i> |
| 2. <i>Orat ne se perdat,</i> | She entreats <i>that</i> he would <i>not</i> destroy her. |
| 3. <i>Egi ne interesset,</i> | I managed <i>that</i> I should <i>not</i> be present. |
| 4. <i>Dum ne veniat,</i> | Provided he do <i>not</i> come. |
| 5. <i>Respondit ne cogitata quidem latent.</i> | He replied <i>that not</i> even the thoughts are concealed. |
| 6. <i>Vereor ne cadas,</i> | I am afraid <i>that</i> you may fall. |
| 7. <i>Timui ut veniret,</i> | I feared <i>that</i> he would <i>not</i> come. |

Note 1. But when the fear expressed, refers to such things as we wish, *ne* means *that-not*; as, *Paves ne ducas illam*, You are afraid *that* you do *not* get her to wife.

Ne, after a command implying a negative, or prohibition, is often omitted; as, *cave titūbes*, take care *that* you do *not* stumble.

Note 2. *Ne quidem*, (always separate,) is an emphatic negative, and has the emphatic word between; as, *ne hoc quidem*, not even *this*; *ne tum quidem*, not even *then*.

122. When a verb is translated into English by the aid of an auxiliary, an adverb, or clause modifying it, will often have to be placed *between* the auxiliary and the verb, (Eng. Gr. § 74.); as,

1. *Dixit ne ob hoc alios con-temnāmus,* He said that we should not *on this account* despise others.

123. Some prepositions are variously translated according to the meaning of the words, or the case with which they are connected; thus,

1. *In* followed by an accusative, means *to, into, towards, for, against*. &c., (§ 136, R. L.)
2. *In*, followed by the ablative, means *in, upon, among, in, in the case of*, (§ 136, R. L.)
3. *Inter*, referring to two, means *between*; to more than two, *among*.
4. *Sub* means *under, at the foot of, close up to*.
5. *Præ* means *before, in comparison of*;—sometimes, *more than*.

124. When the following conjunctions, adjectives, and adverbial particles, are placed, one before each of two successive words or clauses, the first is commonly translated differently from the second, and usually in the following manner, (§149, Obs. 5.)

1. <i>Et</i>	— <i>et</i> ,	Both	— and.
2. <i>Que</i>	— <i>que</i> ,	Both	— and.
3. <i>Aut. vel,</i>	{ — <i>aut, vel,</i> }	Either	— or.
<i>sive,</i>			
4. <i>Nec</i>	— <i>nec.</i>	Neither	— nor.
5. <i>Neque</i>	— <i>neque,</i>		
6. <i>Sive, seu</i>	— <i>sive, seu,</i>	Whether	— or.
7. <i>Tum</i>	— <i>tum.</i>	{ Not only	— but also.
		{ Both	— and.
8. <i>Cum</i> or <i>quum</i>	— <i>tum,</i>	{ Not only	— but also.
		{ Both	— and.
9. <i>Jam</i>	— <i>jam,</i>	{ Now	— then.
10. <i>Nunc</i>	— <i>nunc,</i>	{ At one time	— at another.
		{ Not only	— but also.
11. <i>Simul</i>	— <i>simul,</i>	{ No sooner	— than.
		{ As soon as	— instantly.
12. <i>Modo, alias</i>	— <i>modo, alias,</i>	{ At one time	— at another
		{ Sometimes	— sometimes.

Corresponding Conjunctive Terms.

13. <i>Ne</i>	— <i>an,</i>	Whether	— or.
14. <i>Utrum</i>	— <i>an,</i>	Whether	— or.
15. <i>Ita, sic, tam, adeo</i>	— <i>ut,</i>	So	— that; so — as.
16. <i>Talis, tantus</i>	— <i>ut,</i>	Such, so great	— that.
17. <i>Is, ejusmodi</i>	— <i>ut,</i>	Such, of such a kind	— that.
18. <i>Simul</i>	— <i>ac, or atque,</i>	As soon	— as.
19. <i>Tamdiu</i>	— <i>quamdiu,</i>	As long	— as.
20. <i>Ut</i>	— <i>sic,</i>	As	— so.

Ne is frequently omitted with the first word or clause, and must be supplied when *an* stands with the second; as,

21. *Rectè an perpèram,* (Whether) right or wrong.

General Rules for Accentuation.

1. Words of two syllables have the accent on the first or penult; as, *pă'-ter*, *mă'-sa*, *au'-rum*.

2. Words of more than two syllables, when the penult is long, have the accent on the penult; when the penult is short, they have the accent on the antepenult; as, *a-mă'-cus*, *dom'-i-nus*.

3. When the enclitics, *que*, *ve*, *ne*, are added to a word the two words are considered as one, and it is accented accordingly; as, *pă'-ter*, *pă-ter'-que*; *dom'-i-nus*, *dom-i-nus'-ve*.

General Rules for the Quantity of Syllables.

1. A vowel before another vowel, is short; as, *via*, *Dĕus*.

2. A vowel before two consonants, or a double consonant, is long by position; as, *arma*, *fallo*, *axis*.

3. A vowel before a mute and a liquid, (*l*, *r*), is common, *i. e.* either long or short; as, *volūcris*, or *volūcris*.

4. A diphthong is always long; as, *aurum*, *Căsar*.

Note. In this work when the quantity of the penult, in words of more than two syllables, is determined by any of these rules, it is not marked, otherwise it is marked.

Explanation of References.

The references at the foot of each page, to which a section mark (§) is prefixed, are to the sections and their subdivisions in the Grammar, and are intended chiefly to explain the construction.

In those references which have no section mark prefixed, the first number directs to the same number in the preceding Introduction, and the second, to the example under that number. Thus for example, in p. 53, § 38, 8; the number 38 refers to Introduction 38, (p. 22,) which shows how the relative in the beginning of a sentence is to be translated; and the number 8 refers to example 8, *A quo consilio*, &c., showing that the relative *quā* is here to be translated "this," and *Quā de causā*, "for this cause." These references are intended to explain particular phrases and idioms, and to give an example of the mode of translating them.

The references made by figures are to the notes on the text, commencing p. 207, where it will be observed that all the notes belonging to a page are contained in one paragraph, at the beginning of which is the number of the page to which the notes refer.

N. B. In the text the reference letter stands *after*, and the reference figure stands *before* the word or words to which they respectively belong.

C. JULII CÆSARIS COMMENTARII

DE BELLŌ GALLICO.

BOOK I.

GENERAL ARGUMENT.

I. General description of Gaul—Chap. 1. II. The war with the Helvetii—Chap. 2-29. III. War with Ariovistus—Chap. 30-54.

1. GALLIA est omnis divisa in partes tres, ¹quarum ^a unam incolunt Belgæ, aliam Aquitani, tertiam, ²qui ipsorum lingua Celtae, ^b nostrâ Galli, ^b appellantur. Hi omnes linguâ, ^c institutis, ^c legibus ⁴inter se ^d differunt. ^eGallos ab Aquitanis Garumna flumen, a Belgis Matrona et Sequana dividit. ^fHorum ^a omnium fortissimi sunt Belgæ, propterea quod a ^e cultu atque humanitate Provinciæ longissimè absunt, ⁷ minimèque ad eos mercatores sæpe comitant, atque ea, quæ ad effeminandos ^e animos pertinent, important; proximique sunt Germanis, ^f qui trans Rhenum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt: quâ ⁸ de causâ Helvetii quoque reliquos Gallos virtute ^c præcedunt, quod ferè quotidianis præliis ^b cum Germanis contendunt, cum aut suis ¹ finibus ⁹ eos prohibent, aut ⁹ ipsi in ¹⁰ eorum finibus bellum gerunt. ¹¹ Eorum una pars, quam Gallos ^k obtinere dictum est, initium capit a flumine Rhodano; continetur Garumna flumen, ^h Oceano, finibus Belgarum. ¹² et Helvetiis flumen

Belgæ ¹ ab extrēmis Galliæ finibus oriuntur; pertinent ad inferiorem partem fluminis Rheni; ² spectant in septentriones et orientem solem. Aquitania a Garumnâ flumine ad Pyrenæos montes, et eam partem Oceani, quæ est ³ ad Hispaniam, pertinet; spectat inter occāsum solis et septentriones.

2. Apud Helvetios longè nobilissimus et ditissimus fuit Orgetorix. Is, Marco Messalâ et Marco Pisōne ⁴ Consulibus, ⁵ regni cupiditate ⁶ inductus, conjurationem nobilitatis fecit, et ⁷ civitati ⁸ persuasit, ut de finibus suis cum omnibus copiis exirent: ⁹ perfacile ¹⁰ esse cū virtute omnibus præstarent, ¹¹ totius Galliæ imperio ¹² potiri. Id hoc facilius eis ¹³ persuasit, quod undique loci ¹⁴ naturâ ¹⁵ Helvetii continentur: unâ ex parte flumine Rheno, ¹⁶ latissimo ¹⁷ atque altissimo, qui agrum Helvetium a Germanis dividit: alterâ ex parte, monte ¹⁸ Jurâ altissimo, ¹⁹ qui est inter Sequanos et Helvetios; tertiâ, lacu Lemanno, ²⁰ et flumine ²¹ Rhodâno, qui Provinciam nostram ab Helvetiis dividit. His rebus fiebat, ²² ut et minùs latè vagarentur, ²³ et minùs facilè finitimis ²⁴ bellum inferre possent: ²⁵ quâ de causâ homines bellandi ²⁶ cupidi magno dolore ²⁷ afficiebantur. ²⁸ Pro multitudine autem hominum, et pro gloriâ ²⁹ belli atque fortitudinis, angustos se fines habere ³⁰ arbitrabantur, ³¹ qui in longitudinem millia ³² passuum ducenta et quadraginta, in latitudinem centum et octoginta patēbant.

3. ³³ His rebus ³⁴ adducti, et auctoritate Orgetorigis permoti, constituērunt ³⁵ ea, quæ ad ³⁶ proficiscendum ³⁷ pertinent, ³⁸ comparare; ³⁹ jumentorum et ⁴⁰ carrorum quàm maximum ⁴¹ numerum cōmovere; ⁴² sementes quàm maximas ⁴³ faceret; ⁴⁴ cum proxi-

mis civitatibus pacem et amicitiam confirmare. Ad eas res conficiendas ^a biennium sibi satis esse ^b duxerunt; ¹ in tertium annum profectiōnem lege confirmant. Ad eas res conficiendas ^a Orgetōrix deligitur. Is sibi ^c legatiōnem ad civitates suscepit. In eo itinere persuadet Castico, ^d Catamantalēdis filio, ^e Sequāno, cujus patey regnum in Sequānis multos annos ^f obtinuērat, et a senātu Popūli Romāni amicus ^g appellatus erat, ut regnum in civitate suā ^h occupāret, ^h quod pater ante habuērat; itemque Dumnorīgi ^d Æduo, fratri ^c Divitiāci, qui eo tempore ⁱ ^h principātum in civitate obtinēbat, ^k ac maxīmē plebi ^l acceptus erat, ut idem ^m conarētur ^h persuādet, eique ^c filiam suam in matrimonium dat. ⁴ Perfacile ⁿ factu ^o esse, ^b illis ^d probat, conāta ^m perficere, propterea quod ipse suæ civitatis imperium obtenturus esset: non esse dubium, quin ^p ^q totius Galliæ plurimum Helvetii possent: se ^q suis copiis ^r suoque exercitū illis ^c regna conciliatūrum, confirmat. Hac oratiōne adducti, ⁶ inter se fidem et iurandum dant, et, regno occupāto, per tres potentissimos ac firmissimos ⁷ populos totius Galliæ ^s sese ^q potiri posse ⁸ sperant.

4. ⁹ Ea res ut est Helvetiis ^t per ¹⁰ indicium enunciata, moribus ^r suis Orgetōrigem ex ¹¹ vinculis causam dicere coegerunt: ¹² damnātum pœnam ^u sequi oportēbat, ut igni cremarētur. Die ⁱ constitutā causæ dictionis, Orgetōrix ad iudicium omnem suam ¹³ familiam, ¹⁴ ad hominū ^v millia decem, undique coēgit; et omnes clientes, obæratosque suos, quorū magnū numērū habēbat, eōdem conduxit: per eos, ne causam diceret, ^x se eripuit. Cū civitas, ob eam

^a § 112, 7.^b 94, 3.^c § 123, R.^d 63.^e § 97, R.^f § 131, R. XLI.^g § 103, R. V.^h § 140, 1, 3d.ⁱ § 131, R. XL.^k § 44, II. 2.^l § 111, R. •^m 19, 4.ⁿ § 98, Obs. 6.^o 114, 2.^p § 140, 3.^q § 145, R. LVIII.^r § 129, R.^s § 121, R. XXVI.

Exc. 2.

^t § 126, R. III^u § 113, Exc. III.^v § 140, 1. 4th.^w § 24, 5.^x § 140, 1, 2d.

rem incitāta, armis jus suum exsequi conarētur,^a multitudinemque hominum ex agris¹ magistrātus cogērent,² Orgetōrix mortuus est: neque abest suspicio, ut^c Helvetii arbitrantur, ²quin^b ipse sibi^d mortem consciverit.

5. Post ejus mortem nihilo minus Helvetii id, quod constituerant, facere conantur, ut e finibus suis exeant.^e Ubi jam se^f ad eam rem paratos^g esse arbitrat^h sunt, oppida sua omnia, numero³ ad duodēcim, vicos ad quadringentos, reliqua privata aedificia incendunt; frumentum omne, praeter quod^b secum portaturi erant, comburunt; ut, domumⁱ reditiōnis spe^k sublata, paratiōres ad omnia pericula subeunda^l essent:^m ⁴trium mensium molitaⁿ cibaria sibi^d quemque domoⁱ efferre jubent. Persuadent Rauracis,^d et Tulingis, et Latobrigis, finitimis, uti, eodem⁶ usi consilio,ⁿ oppidis suis vicisque exustis,^o una cum iis profisciscantur:⁷ Boiosque, qui trans Rhenum incoluerant, et in agrum Noricum transierant Noreiamque oppugnarent, receptos^o ad se, socios^p sibi^d adsciscunt.

6. Erant omnino itinera duo, quibus itineribus^q domo exire possent:^r unum^r per Sequanos, angustum et difficile, inter montem Juram et flumen Rhodanum,⁸ vix qua singuli^s carri ducerentur; ^tmons autem altissimus impendebat, ut facile perpauci prohibere possent:^u alterum per⁹ Provinciam nostram, multo facilius atque expeditius¹⁰ propterea quod Helvetiorum inter fines, et Allobrogum, qui nuper pacati erant, Rhodanus fluit, isque nonnullis locis^v ¹¹vado transitur. Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est, proximunque Helvetiorum finibus,^w Genēva. Ex eo oppido pons ad

^a § 140, Obs. 4. &

^b 37, 2.

^c 37, 6.

^d § 44, II. 2.

^e § 130, 4.

^f 19, Sup. iter.

^g § 140, 3.

^h § 146, LX. & 109.

ⁱ 26, 2.

^j § 140, Obs. 1.

^k 112, 3.

^l § 141, Obs. 7, &

^m § 123, R.

ⁿ § 140, 1, 2d.

^o § 139, 2.

^p § 140, 1, 3d.

^q § 121, R. XXVI.

^r § 140, 1, 1st.

^s § 145, R. LVIII.

^t 104, 1, & 2.

^u § 136, Obs. 5.

^v § 103, Obs. 2.

^w § 97, xp.

^x § 111, R.

Helvetios pertinet. Allobrogibus sese vel persuasuros,^a quod nondum ¹ bono animo ^b in Populum Romanum viderentur,^c existimabant; vel vi coacturos,^a ut per suos fines eos ire paterentur.^d Omnibus rebus ad profectiōnem comparatis,^e ² diem dicunt, quā die ^f ad ripam Rhodāni omnes conveniant:^g is dies erat ³ ante diem quintum Kalendas Aprilis, ⁴ Lucio Pisōne, Aulo Gabinio Consulibus.^h

7. Cæsari ⁱ cū id nuntiātum esset,^k eos per Provinciam nostram iter facere conāri, matūrat ⁵ ab urbe proficisci, et, quā maxīmis^l potest itineribus, in ⁶ Galliam ulteriōrem contendit, et ad Genēvam pervēnit: ⁷ Provinciæ ^m toti quā maxīmum^l militum numērum impērat (erat omnino in Galliā ulteriōre legio una); pontem, qui erat ⁸ ad Genēvam, jubet rescindi.ⁿ Ubi de ejus adventu Helvetii ⁹ certiores facti sunt,^o legātos ad eum mittunt, nobilissimos civitatis,^p cujus legatiōnis Nameius et Verudoctius priācipem locum obtinēbant,^q qui dicērent,^r ¹⁰ "sibi ^q esse ^r in animo, sine ullo maleficio iter per Provinciam facere, propterea quod aliud iter habērent ^c nullum: rogāre,^s ut ejus ¹¹ voluntāte id sibi facere liceat."^t Cæsar, quod memoriā tenēbat, Lucium Cassium Consulem occisum, exercitumque ejus ab Helvetiis pulsum, et ¹² sub jugum missum, ¹³ concedendum ^u non putābat: neque homīnes inimico animo,^b datā facultāte per Provinciam itinēris faciundi,^v fēperatūros ab injuriā et maleficio existimābat.^w Tamen, ut spatium intercedere posset,^d dum milites, quos imperavērat, convenirent, legātis respondit, "diem se ad deliberandum sumtūrum; si quid vellent,^x ¹⁴ ante diem Idus Aprilis reverterentur."^y

^a 100, 1.^b § 106, R. VII.^c § 141, Obs. 7.^d § 140, 1, 2d.^e 104, 1.^f § 131, R. XL.^g § 141, R. II.^h 110, 2.ⁱ § 126, R. III.^k 51, 2.^l § 134, Obs. 6, 3d.^m § 123, R. & 5, 1.ⁿ 90, 4.^o § 107, R. X. Exp.^p § 102, R. I.^q § 112, R. II.^r 51, 5.^s § 4, 4.^t § 140, 1, 3d.^u 113, Obs. & 8.^v 112, 1.^w § 141, Obs. 8.^x § 140, 2.^y 78, 3.

8. Interea eâ legiōne, quam secum habēbat, militibusque, qui ex Provinciâ convenērant, a lacu Lemanno, ¹ qui in flumen Rhodānum influit, ² ad montem Juram, qui fines Sequanōrum ab Helvetiis dividit, ³ millia ^a passuum decem novem murum, in altitudinem pedum ^b sedēcim, fossamque perducit. Eo opēre perfecto, ^c præsidia dispōnit, ^d castella commūnit, quo facilius, si ^e se invito transire conarentur, ^d prohibēre possit. Ubi ea dies, quam constituerat cum legātis, venit, et legāti ad eum revertērunt, ⁶ negat, se ^f more ^g et exemplo ^h Popūli Romāni posse iter ulli ^b per Provinciam dare; et, si vim ⁱ facere conentur, ^d prohibitūrum ^k ostendit. Helvetii, eâ spe ^l dejecti, ⁷ navibus ^g junctis ratibusque ^g compluribus factis, alii vadis ^g Rhodāni, ⁸ quā minīma altitudo fluminis erat, nonnunquam interdiu, sæpius noctu, si ⁹ perumpere possent, ^d conāti, opēris munitiōne ^g et militum concursu ^m et telis repulsi, hoc conātu ⁿ destitērunt.

9. Relinquebātur una per Sequānos via, quā, ^g Sequānis ^o invitis, propter angustias ire non potērant. His ^h cū suā ^p sponte persuadere non possent, ^q legātos ad Dumnorīgem Æduum mittunt, ut eo ¹⁰ deprecātore ^o a Sequānis impetrarent. ^r Dumnōrix ¹¹ gratiā ^g et largitiōne apud Sequānos plurimum potērat, et Helvetiis ^g erat amīcus, quōd ex eā civitate Orgetorīgis filiam, ¹² in matrimonium duxerat; et, cupiditate ^g regni adductus, ¹³ novis rebus ⁱ studēbat, et quā plurimas ⁿ civitates suo sibi ^v beneficio habere obstrictas volebat. Itaque rem suscipit, et a Sequānis impetrat, ut per fines suos ire Helvetios patiantur; obsidesque uti inter sese

^a § 131, R. XLII. &
§ 24, 5.

^b § 106, R. VI.
^c 104, 1, & 109.

^d § 140, 2.

^e § 140, 1.

^f § 145, R. LVIII.

^g § 129, R.

^h § 123, R.

ⁱ § 15, 12.

^k § 47, Note 1. and
100, 1, and 94, 2.

^l § 136, R. LII.

^m § 149, R.

ⁿ § 136, Obs. 5, (ab.)

^o 110, 5.

^p 30, 2.

^q § 140, Obs. 4.

^r § 140, 1, 3d.

^s § 111, R.

^t § 112, R. V.

^u § 134, Obs. 6, 3d.

^v § 126, R. III.

dent, perficit: ¹ Sequāni, ² ne itinēre Helvetios prohibeant; ^a Helvetii, ut sine maleficio et injuriā transeant.^a

10. ^a Cæsāri renunciātur ^b Helvetiis ^c esse in animo, per agrum Sequanōrum et Æduōrum iter in Santōnum fines facere, qui non longè a Tolosatium finibus absunt, quæ civitas est in Provinciā. Id si fieret, ^d ^e intelligēbat magno cum Provinciæ periculō futurum, ^e ut homīnes bellicōsos, Popūli Romāni inimīcos, ^f locis ^g patentibus maximēque frumentariis finitimos habēret. ^h Ob eas causas ei munitiōni, ⁱ quam fecerat, Titum Labiēnum legātum præsēcit: ipse in Italiam magnis itineribus contendit, duasque ibi legiōnes conscribit, et tres, quæ circum Aquileiam hiemābant, ex hibernis edūcit; et, quā ^j proximum iter in ulteriōrem Galliam per Alpes erat, cum his quinque legionibus ire contendit. Ibi Centrōnes, et Graiocēli, et Caturīges, locis superioribus occupatis, ^k itinēre ^l exercitum prohibere conantur. Compluribus his preliis pulsus, ^k ab Ocēlo, ^m quod est citeriōris Provinciæ extrēmum, in fines Vocontiōrum ulteriōris Provinciæ die septimo ⁿ pervēnit; inde in Allobrogum fines: ab Allobrogibus in Segusiānos exercitum ducit. Hi sunt extra Provinciam trans Rhodānum primi.ⁿ

11. Helvetii jam per angustias et fines Sequanōrum suas copias transduxerant, et in Æduōrum fines pervenerant, eorumque agros populabantur. Ædūi, cū, se ^o suāque ^p ab iis defendere non possent, ^q legātos ad Cæsārem mittunt ^r rogātum ^r auxilium: “ita se ^s omni tempore ^m de Popūlo Romāno meritos esse, ut pæne in conspectu exercitūs nostri agri vastāri, libēri eōrum in servitūtem abdūci, oppida ex-

^a § 140, 1, 2d.

^b 51, 2.

^c § 112, R. II.

^d § 140, 2.

^e § 47, Note 1.

^f § 97, R.

^g § 111, R.

^h 100, Obs. 14.

ⁱ § 123, R.

^j 104, 2.

^k § 136, Obs. 5, (in.)

^l § 131, R. XL.

^m 19, (populi.)

ⁿ 31.

^o 19, (negotia.)

^p § 140, Obs. 4.

^q 114, 1.

^r § 145, R. LVIII. &

94, 4.

pugnari non debuērunt." ^a Eōdem tempore Ædui Ambarri, ¹ necessarii ^b et consanguinei Æduōrum, Cæsārem certiōrem faciunt, sese, ^c depopulatis agris, ^d non facile ab oppidis vim hostium prohibere: item Allobrōges, qui trans Rhodānum vicos possessionesque habebant, fugā se ad Cæsārem recipiunt, et demonstrant, ² sibi ^e prāter agri solum nihil ^c esse reliqui. ^f Quibus ^g rebus ^h adductus Cæsar, non expectandum ^c sibi ⁱ statuit, dum, omnibus fortūnis ^d sociōrum consumtis, in Santōnos Helvetii pervenirent.

12. ³ Flumen ^k est Arar, quod per fines Æduōrum et Sequanōrum in Rhodānum influit, ⁴ incredibīli lenitāte, ^h ita ut oculis, ^b ⁵ in atram partem fluat, ¹ iudicari non possit. ^a ⁶ Id Helvetii ratibus ^h ac lintribus ^h junctis transibant. Ubi per exploratōres Cæsar certior ^m factus est, tres jam copiārum partes ⁿ Helvetios ^c id flumen ⁿ transduxisse, ^o quartam verō partem ^c citra flumen Arārim reliquam ^m esse; ⁷ de tertiā vigiliā cum legionibus tribus e castris profectus, ad eam partem pervēnit, quæ nondum flumen ^p transierat. Eos ⁸ impeditos et inopinantes aggressus, magnam eōrum partem concidit: reliqui fugæ ⁴ sese mandarunt atque ⁹ in proximās sylvas abdidērunt. Is pagus appellabatur Tigurinus: ^k nam omnis civitas Helvetia in quatuor pagos divisa est. Hic pagus unus, cū domo ^r exisset, ^s patrum nostrōrum memoriā, ¹ Lucium Cassium Consulem interfecerat, et ejus exercitum sub jugum miserat. Ita, sive ^u casu, ^h sive consilio Deōrum immortalium, quæ ^v pars civitatis Helvetiæ insignem calamitatem Popūlo ^q Romāno intulerat, ea ¹⁰ princeps ^w pœnas persolvit. Quā ⁸ in re Cæsar non solum publicas, sed etiam

^a § 140, 1, 1st.

^b § 97, R.

^c § 145, R. LVIII.

^d 109, 2.

^e § 112, R. II.

^f § 106, R. VI.

^g 38.

^h § 129, R.

ⁱ § 147, & 113.

^k § 103, R. V.

¹ § 140, 5.

^m § 103, Obs. 2.

ⁿ 119, 1.

^o 98, 2.

^p § 136, R. LII.

^q § 123, R.

^r § 130, 4.

^s § 140, Obs. 4.

^t § 136, Obs. 5, (in.)

^u 124, 6.

^v 43, & 37, 2d. 4.

^w § 98, Obs. 10.

privātas injurias ultus est, quòd ejus socēri Lucii Pisōnis^a avum, Lucium Pisōnem legātum,^a Tigurīni eòdem prēlio,^b quo^b Cassium, ¹ interfecērānt.

13. Hoc prēlio facto, reliquas copias Helvetiōrum ut^aconsequi posset,^c pontem in Arāre faciendum^d curat atque ita exercitum transducit. Helvetii, repentinò ejus adventu^e commōti, cūm id, quod ipsi diēbus^f viginti ægerrimè confecerānt, ut flumen transirent,^g uno illum die^f fecisse intelligērent,^h legātos ad eum mittunt: cujusⁱ legatiōnis Divico princeps fuit, qui bello^b Cassiāno dux Helvetiōrum fuērat. Is^h ita cum Cæsare agit: “ Si pacem Popūlus Romānus cum Helvetiis faceret,^k in eam partem itūros^l atque ibi futūros^l Helvetios,^m ubi eos Cæsar constituissetⁿ atque esseⁿ voluisset: ^o sin bello^o persēqui perseverāret,^k reminiscerētur^o et^ovetēris incommōdi^p Popūli Romāni et pristinæ virtutis^p Helvetiōrum. Quòd improvīsò unum pagum adortus esset,^q cūm ii, qui flumen transissent,^q suis^q auxilium ferre non possent,^h ne ob eam rem aut suæ magno opère virtūti^qtribuēret^o aut^r ipsos despiceret: se^m ita a patrīb^{us} majoribusque suis didicisse, ut magis virtūte,^o quàm dolo^o aut insidiis, niterentur.^t ^uQuare ne committeret,^o ut is locus, ubi constitūtus nomen caperet,^t aut^r memoriam prodēret.”

14. His Cæsar ita respondit: “ Eo sibi^u minus^m dubitatiōnis^v dari, quòd eas res, quas legāti Helvetii commemorāssent,^s memoriā tenēret: ^w atque eo^x gravius ferre, quo^x minùs merīto^o Popūli Romāni accidissent; ¹⁰qui^v si alicujus

^a § 97, R.ⁱ 38.^r § 149, R.^b § 136, Obs. 5, (in.).^k § 140, 2.^s § 120, Obs. 1.^c § 140, 1, 2d.^l § 47, 4, Note 1.^t § 140, 1, 3d.^d 108, 4.^m § 145, R. LVIII.^u § 126, R. III.^e § 129, R.ⁿ 90.^v § 106, R. VIII.^f § 131, R. XLI.^o § 140, 1, 3d, & Obs. 5.^w § 140, 6.^g § 141, Obs. 8.^p § 108, R. XIV. & 7, 1.^x 22, 4, or 44, 7.^h § 140, Obs. 4.^q § 123, R. & 19.^y 39.

injuriae sibi ^a conscius fuisset, ^b ¹ non fuisse ^c difficile ^d cavere, ^e sed eo deceptum, ^f quod neque commissum a se intelligeret, ^g quare timeret; ^h neque sine causa ⁱ timendum ^j putaret. ^k Quod si veteris contumeliae ^l oblivisci vellet; ^m num ⁿ etiam recentium injuriarum, quod eo ^o invito iter per Provinciam per vim tentassent, ^p quod Aeduos, quod Ambarros, quod Allobroges vexassent, ^q memoriam deponere posse? Quod sua victoria tam insolenter gloriarentur, ^r quodque tam diu se impune tulisse injurias admirarentur, ^s eodem ^t pertinere: ^u consuēsse enim Deos ^v immortales, quo gravius homines ex commutatione rerum doleant, ^w quos pro scelere eorum ulcisci velint, ^x his ^y ^z secundiōres interdum res et diuturniorem impunitatem concedere. ^{aa} ^{ab} Cum ea ita sint, ^{ac} tamen, si obsides ab iis sibi ^{ad} dentur, ^{ae} uti ea, quae polliceantur, ^{af} facturos intelligat, ^{ag} et si Aeduis ^{ah} de injuriis, quas ipsis ^{ai} sociisque eorum intulerint, ^{aj} item si Allobrogibus ^{ak} satisfaciant, ^{al} sese ^{am} cum iis pacem esse facturum.” Divico respondit: “Ita Helvetios a majoribus ^{an} suis institutos esse, uti obsides accipere, non dare, consuērint: ^{ao} ejus rei Populum Romanum ^{ap} esse ^{aq} testem.” Hoc responso dato, discessit.

15. Postero die ^a castra ex eo loco movent: idem facit Cæsar; equitatumque omnem, ad numerum quatuor millium, quem ex omni Provincia et Aeduis atque eorum sociis coactum ^b habebat, praemittit, qui videant, ^c quas in partes hostes iter faciant. ^d Qui, ^e ^f ^g ^h ⁱ ^j ^k ^l ^m ⁿ ^o ^p ^q ^r ^s ^t ^u ^v ^w ^x ^y ^z ^{aa} ^{ab} ^{ac} ^{ad} ^{ae} ^{af} ^{ag} ^{ah} ^{ai} ^{aj} ^{ak} ^{al} ^{am} ^{an} ^{ao} ^{ap} ^{aq} ^{ar} ^{as} ^{at} ^{au} ^{av} ^{aw} ^{ax} ^{ay} ^{az} ^{ba} ^{bb} ^{bc} ^{bd} ^{be} ^{bf} ^{bg} ^{bh} ^{bi} ^{bj} ^{bk} ^{bl} ^{bm} ^{bn} ^{bo} ^{bp} ^{bq} ^{br} ^{bs} ^{bt} ^{bu} ^{bv} ^{bw} ^{bx} ^{by} ^{bz} ^{ca} ^{cb} ^{cc} ^{cd} ^{ce} ^{cf} ^{cg} ^{ch} ^{ci} ^{cj} ^{ck} ^{cl} ^{cm} ^{cn} ^{co} ^{cp} ^{cq} ^{cr} ^{cs} ^{ct} ^{cu} ^{cv} ^{cw} ^{cx} ^{cy} ^{cz} ^{da} ^{db} ^{dc} ^{dd} ^{de} ^{df} ^{dg} ^{dh} ^{di} ^{dj} ^{dk} ^{dl} ^{dm} ^{dn} ^{do} ^{dp} ^{dq} ^{dr} ^{ds} ^{dt} ^{du} ^{dv} ^{dw} ^{dx} ^{dy} ^{dz} ^{ea} ^{eb} ^{ec} ^{ed} ^{ee} ^{ef} ^{eg} ^{eh} ^{ei} ^{ej} ^{ek} ^{el} ^{em} ^{en} ^{eo} ^{ep} ^{eq} ^{er} ^{es} ^{et} ^{eu} ^{ev} ^{ew} ^{ex} ^{ey} ^{ez} ^{fa} ^{fb} ^{fc} ^{fd} ^{fe} ^{ff} ^{fg} ^{fh} ^{fi} ^{fj} ^{fk} ^{fl} ^{fm} ^{fn} ^{fo} ^{fp} ^{fq} ^{fr} ^{fs} ^{ft} ^{fu} ^{fv} ^{fw} ^{fx} ^{fy} ^{fz} ^{ga} ^{gb} ^{gc} ^{gd} ^{ge} ^{gf} ^{gg} ^{gh} ^{gi} ^{gj} ^{gk} ^{gl} ^{gm} ^{gn} ^{go} ^{gp} ^{gq} ^{gr} ^{gs} ^{gt} ^{gu} ^{gv} ^{gw} ^{gx} ^{gy} ^{gz} ^{ha} ^{hb} ^{hc} ^{hd} ^{he} ^{hf} ^{hg} ^{hh} ^{hi} ^{hj} ^{hk} ^{hl} ^{hm} ^{hn} ^{ho} ^{hp} ^{hq} ^{hr} ^{hs} ^{ht} ^{hu} ^{hv} ^{hw} ^{hx} ^{hy} ^{hz} ^{ia} ^{ib} ^{ic} ^{id} ^{ie} ^{if} ^{ig} ^{ih} ⁱⁱ ^{ij} ^{ik} ^{il} ^{im} ⁱⁿ ^{io} ^{ip} ^{iq} ^{ir} ^{is} ^{it} ^{iu} ^{iv} ^{iw} ^{ix} ^{iy} ^{iz} ^{ja} ^{jb} ^{jc} ^{jd} ^{je} ^{jf} ^{jj} ^{jk} ^{jl} ^{jm} ^{jn} ^{jo} ^{jp} ^{jq} ^{jr} ^{js} ^{jt} ^{ju} ^{jv} ^{jw} ^{jx} ^{ky} ^{kz} ^{la} ^{lb} ^{lc} ^{ld} ^{le} ^{lf} ^{lg} ^{lh} ^{li} ^{lj} ^{lk} ^{ll} ^{lm} ^{ln} ^{lo} ^{lp} ^{lq} ^{lr} ^{ls} ^{lt} ^{lu} ^{lv} ^{lw} ^{lx} ^{ly} ^{lz} ^{ma} ^{mb} ^{mc} ^{md} ^{me} ^{mf} ^{mg} ^{mh} ^{mi} ^{mj} ^{mk} ^{ml} ^{mm} ^{mn} ^{mo} ^{mp} ^{mq} ^{mr} ^{ms} ^{mt} ^{mu} ^{mv} ^{mw} ^{mx} ^{my} ^{mz} ^{na} ^{nb} ^{nc} nd ^{ne} ^{nf} ^{ng} ^{nh} ⁿⁱ ^{nj} ^{nk} ^{nl} ^{nm} ⁿⁿ ^{no} ^{np} ^{nq} ^{nr} ^{ns} ^{nt} ^{nu} ^{nv} ^{nw} ^{nx} ^{ny} ^{nz} ^{oa} ^{ob} ^{oc} ^{od} ^{oe} ^{of} ^{og} ^{oh} ^{oi} ^{oj} ^{ok} ^{ol} ^{om} ^{on} ^{oo} ^{op} ^{oq} ^{or} ^{os} ^{ot} ^{ou} ^{ov} ^{ow} ^{ox} ^{oy} ^{oz} ^{pa} ^{pb} ^{pc} ^{pd} ^{pe} ^{pf} ^{pg} ^{ph} ^{pi} ^{pj} ^{pk} ^{pl} ^{pm} ^{pn} ^{po} ^{pp} ^{pq} ^{pr} ^{ps} ^{pt} ^{pu} ^{pv} ^{pw} ^{px} ^{py} ^{pz} ^{qa} ^{qb} ^{qc} ^{qd} ^{qe} ^{qf} ^{qg} ^{qh} ^{qi} ^{qj} ^{qk} ^{ql} ^{qm} ^{qn} ^{qo} ^{qp} ^{qq} ^{qr} ^{qs} ^{qt} ^{qu} ^{qv} ^{qw} ^{qx} ^{qy} ^{qz} ^{ra} ^{rb} ^{rc} rd ^{re} ^{rf} ^{rg} ^{rh} ^{ri} ^{rj} ^{rk} ^{rl} ^{rm} ^{rn} ^{ro} ^{rp} ^{rq} ^{rr} ^{rs} ^{rt} ^{ru} ^{rv} ^{rw} ^{rx} ^{ry} ^{rz} ^{sa} ^{sb} ^{sc} ^{sd} ^{se} ^{sf} ^{sg} ^{sh} ^{si} ^{sj} ^{sk} ^{sl} sm ^{sn} ^{so} ^{sp} ^{sq} ^{sr} ^{ss} st ^{su} ^{sv} ^{sw} ^{sx} ^{sy} ^{sz} ^{ta} ^{tb} ^{tc} ^{td} ^{te} ^{tf} ^{tg} th ^{ti} ^{tj} ^{tk} ^{tl} tm ^{tn} ^{to} ^{tp} ^{tq} ^{tr} ^{ts} ^{tu} ^{tv} ^{tw} ^{tx} ^{ty} ^{tz} ^{ua} ^{ub} ^{uc} ^{ud} ^{ue} ^{uf} ^{ug} ^{uh} ^{ui} ^{uj} ^{uk} ^{ul} ^{um} ^{un} ^{uo} ^{up} ^{uq} ^{ur} ^{us} ^{ut} ^{uu} ^{uv} ^{uw} ^{ux} ^{uy} ^{uz} ^{va} ^{vb} ^{vc} ^{vd} ^{ve} ^{vf} ^{vg} ^{vh} ^{vi} ^{vj} ^{vk} ^{vl} ^{vm} ^{vn} ^{vo} ^{vp} ^{vq} ^{vr} ^{vs} ^{vt} ^{vu} ^{vv} ^{vw} ^{vx} ^{vy} ^{vz} ^{wa} ^{wb} ^{wc} ^{wd} ^{we} ^{wf} ^{wg} ^{wh} ^{wi} ^{wj} ^{wk} ^{wl} ^{wm} ^{wn} ^{wo} ^{wp} ^{wq} ^{wr} ^{ws} ^{wt} ^{wu} ^{wv} ^{ww} ^{wx} ^{wy} ^{wz} ^{xa} ^{xb} ^{xc} ^{xd} ^{xe} ^{xf} ^{xg} ^{xh} ^{xi} ^{xj} ^{xk} ^{xl} ^{xm} ^{xn} ^{xo} ^{xp} ^{xq} ^{xr} ^{xs} ^{xt} ^{xu} ^{xv} ^{xw} ^{xx} ^{xy} ^{xz} ^{ya} ^{yb} ^{yc} ^{yd} ^{ye} ^{yf} ^{yg} ^{yh} ^{yi} ^{yj} ^{yk} ^{yl} ^{ym} ^{yn} ^{yo} ^{yp} ^{yq} ^{yr} ^{ys} ^{yt} ^{yu} ^{yv} ^{yw} ^{yx} ^{yy} ^{yz} ^{za} ^{zb} ^{zc} ^{zd} ^{ze} ^{zf} ^{zg} ^{zh} ^{zi} ^{zj} ^{zk} ^{zl} ^{zm} ^{zn} ^{zo} ^{zp} ^{zq} ^{zr} ^{zs} ^{zt} ^{zu} ^{zv} ^{zw} ^{zx} ^{zy} ^{zz}

^a § 111, R.^k 110, 5.^o § 140, 1, 2d.^b § 140, 2.^l § 145, R. LVIII.^t § 112, R. III.^c § 51, 5.^m § 140, 1.^u § 126, Obs. 2.^d § 98, Obs. 6.ⁿ § 141, Obs. 8.^v § 131, R. XL.^e § 47, 6.^o § 123, R.^w § 146, R. LIX.^f § 140, 6.^p § 144, R. LVII.^x § 141, R. II.^g 113, 8, (sibi.)^q § 140, Obs. 4, &^y § 140, 5.^h § 108, R. XIV. &

74, 1.

^z 39. 5.

7, 1.

^r § 126. R. III.^{aa} 22, 3.ⁱ 56, 3.

insecūti, aliēno loco cum equitātu Helvetiōrum praelium committunt; et pauci de nostris cadunt. Quo praelio sublāti Helvetii, quod quingentis^a equitibus tantam multitudinem equitum propulserant, audaciūsub sistere, nonnunquam ex¹ novissīmo agmīne praelio^a nostros^b lacessere, cōeperunt. Cæsar suos^b a praelio continēbat, ac² satis habēbat in præsēntia hostem rapinis,^c pabulationibus,^c populationibusque, prohibere. Ita dies^d circiter quindēcim iter fecerunt, uti inter novissimum hostium agmen et³ nostrum primum^e non amplius^d quinis^f aut senis millibus^g passuum interesset.

16. Intērim quotidie Cæsar Æduos^h frumentum,^h quod essentⁱ publicē polliciti, flagitare:^k nam propter⁶ frigōra, quōd Gallia⁷ sub septentrionibus, ut ante dictum est, posita est, non modō frumenta in agris matūra non erant, sed ne pabūli quidem^l satis magna copia suppetēbat: eo autem⁸ frumento,^m quod flumīne^a Arāre navibus^a sūbvexerat, propterea uti minūsub potērat, quōd iter ab Arāre Helvetii avertērant, a quibus discedere nolēbat. Diem ex die ducere^k Ædui;⁹ confēri,ⁿ comportāri, adesse dicere.^k Ubi¹⁰ se diutiūsub duci^o intellexit, et diem instāre,^o quo die^p frumentum militibus metiri oportēret;⁴ convocātis eōrum principibus, quorum magnam copiam in castris habēbat, in his Divitiāco^r et Lisco,¹¹ quī summo magistrātū^p præerat (quem Vergobretum appellant Ædui, qui creātur annuus,^l et vitæ necisque in suos habet potestātem,) graviter eos accūsāt, quōd, cūm neque emi,^u neque ex agris sumi posset,^v tam necessario tempore, tam propinquis hostibus, ab iis non sublevētur;^w præsertim cūm magnā ex parte eōrum precī-

^a § 129, R.^b 19, (*militibus*.)^c § 136, Obs. 5, (*ab*.)^d § 131, R. XLI.^e 19, (*agmen*.)^f § 24, 11, & 26, 1.^g § 120, R.^h § 124, R.ⁱ § 141, Obs. 8.^k § 144, Obs. 6.^l 121, Note 2.^m § 121, R. XXVI.ⁿ § 144, R. LVII.^o 96, 6.^p 37, Note 1, 6.^q § 113, Exc. III.^r § 97, R.^s § 112, R. I.^t § 98, Obs. 10.^u 87.^v § 140, Obs. 4.^w § 141, Obs. 7.

bus^a adductus bellum suscepērit:^b multo^c etiam gravius, quòd sit destitūtus,^d queritur.

17. Tum demum Liscus, oratiōne^a Cæsāris adductus, quod^e antea¹ tacuerat, propōnit: "Esse nonnullos, quorum auctoritas apud plebem² plurimum valeat;^d qui³ privati plus possint, quam ipsi magistrātus. Hos seditiōsā atque imprōbā oratiōne^a multitudīnem deterrere, ne frumentum confērant,^f quod pręstare debeant.^g Si jam principātum Gallię obtinere non possint,^h Gallōrum, quā Romanōrum imperia perferre, satiūs esse; neque dubitare debere, quin, si Helvetios superaverint^h Romāni, unā cum reliquā Galliā Æduisⁱ libertātem sint ereptūri.^k Ab iisdem nostra consilia, quęque in castris gerantur,^l hostibus^m enūciari: hos a se coerceri non posse. Quin etiam, quòd⁴ necessariū rem coactus Cæsāriⁱ enūciarit,^l intelligere sese, quanto id cum periculō fecerit,ⁿ et ob eam causam, quā diu potuerit,^l tacuisse."

18. Cæsar hac oratiōne^a Lisci Dumnorīgem, Divitiāci fratrem,^o ⁵designāri sentiēbat: sed, quòd⁶ pluribus^p pręsentibus eas res jactari nolēbat, celeriter concilium dimittit, Liscum retinet: quærit ex⁷ solo ea, quę in conventu dixerat. Dicit liberiūs atque audaciūs. Eādē secretō ab aliis quærit; repērit esse vera. "Ipsū esse Dumnorīgem, summā audaciā,^q magnā apud plebem propter liberalitatem gratiā,^q cupidum rerum^r novarum: complures annos^s portoria, reliquaque omnia Æduōrum vectigalia, parvo pretio^s redempta^t habere, propterea quòd, illo licente,^s contra liceri audeat^t

^a § 129, R.

^b § 140, 2.

^c § 97, R.

^d § 140, Obs. 4, & 74.

^e § 123, R.

^f § 146, R. I.X. & 9

^g § 132, Obs. 6.

^h § 45, 1, & § 140, 3.

ⁱ § 107, R. VII. & 6, 1

^j § 141, Obs. 7.

^k § 140, 6.

^l § 107, R. IX.

^m 37, 2.

ⁿ § 126, R. III.

^o § 131, R. XLI.

^p § 140, 1, 3d, & 77.

^q § 140, 5, & 74, 2d.

^r § 146, Obs. 1

^s § 141, Obs. 8.

nemo. His rebus^a et suam rem familiārem auxisse,^b et^c facultates ad largiendum magnas comparasse :^b magnum numerum equitatus suo sumtu^c semper alere^d et circum se habere :^d neque solum domi,^e sed etiam apud finitimas civitates largiter posse : atque hujus potentiae causā matrem in Biturigibus, homini^f illic nobilissimo,^g ac potentissimo, ^h collocasse :^b ipsum ex Helvetiis uxorem habere :^d sororem ex matre et propinquas suas nuptum^h in alias civitates collocasse :^b favere et ⁱ cupere Helvetiisⁱ propter eam affinitatem : odisse etiam suo nomine^a Cæsārem et Romānos, quod eorum adventu^a potentia ejus diminuta,^k et Divitiācus frater in antiquum locum gratiae atque honoris sit restitutus.^k ^lSi quid accadat^l Romānis,^m summam in spem per Helvetios regni obtinendiⁿ venire ; imperio^o Populi Romāni non modò de regno, sed etiam de eā, quam habeat,^k gratiā desperare.^d Reperiēbat etiam ^p inquirendo^p Cæsar, quod praelium equestre adversum paucis ante diēbus^q esset factum, initium ejus fugae factum a Dumnorige atque ejus equitibus^r (nam ^s equitatu,^r quem auxilio^s Cæsāri^s Ædui miserant, Dumnorix praeerat), “ eorum fugā reliquum esse equitatum perterritum.”

19. Quibus^t rebus cognitīs, cū ad has suspiciōnes^u certissimae res accedērent,^u quod per fines Sequanōrum Helvetios transduxisset,^k quod obsides inter eos dando curasset,^k quod ea omnia non modò^v injussu suo^v et civitatis, sed etiam inscientibus ipsis fecisset,^k quod a magistrātu Æduōrum accusarētur : satis esse causae^w arbitrābatur, quare in eum aut ipse animadverteret,^x aut civitatem animadvertere juberet.^x

^a § 129, R.ⁱ § 112, R. V.^r § 112, R. I.^b 98, 2, & 94, 1, 2d.^k § 140, 6.^s § 114, R.^c § 133, R.^l § 140, 2.^t 38, 3.^d 96, 2, & 94, 1, 2d.^m § 112, R. IV.^u § 140, Obs. 4.^e § 130, 4.ⁿ 112, 5.^v 29, 1.^f § 123, R.^o § 136, Obs. 5. (*sub*)^w § 135, R. XLVI.^g 24, 1.^p § 147, Obs. 5.^x § 140, 5.^h § 148, Obs. 2.^q § 131, R. XL.

His omnibus rebus ^a unum repugnabat, quodd Divitiāci fratris summum in Populum Romānum studium, summam in se ¹ voluntātem, egregiam fidem, justitiam, temperantiam cognoverat: nam, ne ^b ejus supplicio ^c Divitiāci animum offenderet, ^d verebatur. Itaque priusquam quicquam conarētur, ^e Divitiācum ad se vocari ^f jubet, et, quotidianis interpretibus remōtis, per Caium Valerium Procillum, principem Galliæ provinciæ, familiārem ^g suum, cui ^h summam omnium rerum fidem habebat, cum eo colloquitur: simul ² commonefacit, quæ ipso præsente in concilio Gallorum de Dumnorige sint ¹ dicta, et ³ ostendit, quæ separatim quisque de eo apud se dixerit, ⁱ petit atque hortatur, ut sine ejus offensione animi vel ^k ipse de eo, ⁴ causā cognitā, statuatur, ¹ vel civitatem statuere jubeat. ¹

20. Divitiācus multis cum lacrymis, Cæsārem complexus, obsecrare cœpit, ⁵ ne quid gravius ^m in fratrem statuēret: ¹ scire se, illa esse vera, nec quenquam ex eo plus, quā se, doloris ⁿ capere, propterea quodd, cū ⁶ ipse gratiā plurimum domi atque in reliquā Galliā, ⁷ ille minimum propter adolescentiam posset, per se crevisset; quibus ^o opibus ^p ac nervis, non solum ad minuendam ^q gratiam, sed pæne ad perniciem suam uteretur: sese tamen et amōre ^r fraterno et existimatiōne vulgi commoveri. Quodd si quid ⁷ ei ^r a Cæsāre gravius ^m accidisset, ^s cū ⁶ ipse cum locum amicitiae apud eum tenēret, neminem existimatūrum, ^t non suā voluntate factum; quā ex re futurum, ^u uti totius Galliæ animi a se averterentur. Hæc cū pluribus verbis flens a Cæsāre petēret, ^v Cæsar ejus dextram prendit; consolātus

^a § 112, R. V.

^b § 140, Obs. 6.

^c § 129, R.

^d § 140, 1.

^e § 140, 4.

^f 90, 4.

^g § 97, R.

^h § 123, R.

ⁱ § 140, 5.

^k 124, 3.

^l § 140, 1, 3d

^m 22.

ⁿ § 106, R. VIII.

^o 38.

^p § 121, R. XX. VI.

^q 112, 7.

^r § 112, R. IV.

^s § 140, 2, & 80, 2.

^t 100. 2.

^u 51.

^v 74, 1st, 2.

rogat, finem orandi faciat: ^a tanti ^b ejus apud se gratiam esse ostendit, uti et reipublicæ injuriam et suum dolorem ejus voluntati ac precibus condonet. ^c Dumnorigem ad se vocat; fratrem ¹ adhabet; quæ in eo reprehendat, ^d ostendit; quæ ipse intelligat, ^d quæ civitas queratur, ^d proponit; monet, ut in reliquum tempus omnes suspiciones vitet; ^e præterita ^f se ² Divitiaco ⁶ fratri condonare dicit. Dumnorigi ⁵ ³ custodes ponit, ut, quæ agat, ^d quibuscum loquatur, ^d scire possit. ^h

21. Eodem die ab exploratoribus certior factus, hostes sub monte ⁴ consedissee ¹ millia ^k passuum ab ipsius castris octo; qualis esset ^d natura montis et qualis in circuitu ascensus, qui cognoscere, ¹ misit. Renunciatum est, ⁶ facilem esse. ^m De tertia ⁶ vigilia Titum Labienum, ⁷ legatum pro ⁸ prætore, cum duabus legionibus, ⁹ et iis ducibus, qui iter cognoverant, summum jugum montis ascendere jubet; quid sui consilii sit, ^d ostendit. Ipse de quarta vigilia eodem itinere, quo hostes ierant, ad eos contendit, equitatumque omnem ante se mittit. Publius Considius, qui rei militaris ⁿ peritissimus habebatur, et in exercitu Lucii Sullæ, et postea ¹⁰ in Marci Crassi fuerat, cum exploratoribus præmittitur.

22. ¹¹ Prima luce, ^o cum summus ^p mons a Tito Labieno teneretur, ^d ¹² ipse ab hostium castris non longius mille et quingentis passibus abesset, ^q neque, ut postea ex captivis compertit, aut ipsius adventus, aut Labieni, cognitus esset; ^r Considius, ¹³ equo ^r admissio, ad eum accurrit: dicit, monstem, quem a Labieno occupari voluerit, ab hostibus teneri; ^s id se a Gallicis armis ^t atque insignibus cognovisse. ^u Cæ-

^a § 140, 1, 3d, &
Obs. 5.

^b § 106, R. VII. or
§ 152, R. XXVIII.

^c § 140, 1, 1st.

^d § 140, 5, & 74, 9.

^e § 140, 1, 3d.

^f 19.

^g § 123, R.

^h § 140, 1, 2d.

ⁱ 98, 2.

^k § 132, R. XLII.

^l § 141, R. II. Obs.

2, 4th.

^m 96, 6.

ⁿ § 107, R. IX

^o § 131, R. XL.

^p § 98, Obs. 9, & 17, 2.

^q § 140, Obs. 4.

^r § 146, R. LX.

^s 96, 6, & 94, 1, 2d.

^t § 129, Obs. 2.

^u 98, 2, & 94, 1, 2d.

sar suas copias in proximum collem subducit,^a aciem instruit.^a Labiēnus, ut erat ei^b praeceptum^c a Cæsare ne praelium committeret,^d nisi ipsius copiae prope hostium castra^e visae essent,^f ut undique uno tempore in hostes impetus fieret,^g monte occupato nostros expectabat praelioque abstinēbat. ¹ Multo denique die per exploratores Cæsar cognovit, et montem a suis tenēri,^h et Helvetios castra movisse,ⁱ et Considium, timore perterritum, quod non vidisset,^j pro viso sibi renunciāsse.^k Eo die, ²quo^k consuērat intervallo, hostes sequitur, et millia passuum tria, ab eorum castris castra ponit.

23. Postridie ejus diei,^l quod omnino biduum supererat, cum ⁴exercitu frumentum metiri oporteret,^m et quod a Bibracte, oppido Æduorum longè maximo et copiosissimo, non amplius millibusⁿ passuum octodēcim aberat, ⁵rei^o frumentariae prospiciendum^p existimavit, iter ab Helvetiis avertit, ac Bibracte^q ire contendit. Ea res per fugitivos Lucii Æmilii, ⁶decurionis equitum Gallorum, hostibus^r nunciatur. Helvetii, seu,^r quod timore perterritos Romanos ⁷discedere a se existimarent,^s eo magis, quod pridie, superioribus locis occupatis,^t praelium non commovissent;^u sive eo, quod re^t frumentaria intercludi posse ⁸confiderent;^v commutato^u consilio atque itinere converso,^u nostros a novissimo agmine insēqui ac lacessere cœperunt.

24. Postquam id ⁹animum advertit, copias suas Cæsar in proximum collem subducit,^a equitatumque, ¹⁰qui sustineret^v hostium impetum, misit. Ipse interim in colle medio^w

^a § 44, I. 3.

^b § 126, R. III.

^c 51.

^d § 140, 1, 3d, & 121, 3.

^e § 136, Obs. 5. (*ad.*)

^f § 141, Obs. 8.

^g § 140, 1, 2d.

^h 96, 6.

ⁱ 98, 2.

^j 37, 2d, 4, & Note 1.

^k § 135, R. XLVI.

^l § 140, Obs. 4. &

^m § 113, Exc. III.

ⁿ § 120, R. & 6, 3.

^o § 112, R. V.

^p 113.

^q § 130, 2.

^r 124, 6.

^s § 140, Obs. 2.

^t § 136, Obs. 5, (*ab.*)

^u 104, 1.

^v § 141, Obs. 2, 4th

^w § 98, Obs. 9, & 17

triplicem aciem instruxit legiōnum quatuor veteranārum, ita, uti supra se in summo jugo duas legiōnes, quas in ¹Galliā citeriōre proximē conscripsērat, et omnia auxilia collocāret; ac totum montem hominibus ^a ²complēri,^b et interea sarcīnas in unum locum conferri,^b et ³eum ab his, qui in superioriōre acie constitērant, muniri^b jussit. Helvetii, cum omnibus suis carris secūti, impedimenta in unum locum contulērunt: ipsi, ⁴confertissimā acie,^c rejecto ^dnostro equitātu, phalange factā,^d ^esub primam nostram aciem successērunt.

25. Cæsar, primum ⁶suo, deinde omnium ex conspectu remōtis ^dequis, ut, æquāto omnium ⁷pericūlo, spem fugæ tollēret, cohortātus suos, prælium commisit. Milītes, e loco superioriōre pilis missis,^d facilē hostium phalangem perfregērunt. Eā disjectā,^e gladiis^f destrectis in eos impētum fecērunt. Gallis^g magno ad pugnam erat ^himpedimento,^g quōd, pluribus eōrum ⁸scutis^e uno ictu pilōrum transfixis et colligātis, cū ferrum se inflexisset,ⁱ neque evellēre, neque, sinistrā impeditā,^e satis ⁹commōdē pugnāre poterant; multi ut, diu jactāto brachiō, præoptārent ^kscutum manu^l emittēre, et ¹⁰nudo corpore^f pugnāre. Tandem vulneribus defessi, et ¹¹pedem referre, et quōd mons suberat circiter mille passuum, eō se recipēre cōpērunt. Capto monte^e et succedentibus nostris,^e Boii et Tulingi, qui homīnum millibus^f circiter quindēcim ¹²agmen hostium claudēbant, et novissimis^g præsidio erant, ex itinēre nostros latēre^m aperto aggressi, circumvenēre: et id conspicāti Helvetii, qui in montem sese recepērant, rursus instāre et prælium redintegrāre cōpērunt. Romāni conversa signa ¹³bipartitō intulērunt: prima, ac secunda acies, ut victis ac summōtis resistēret; ⁿtertia, ut venientes excipēret.ⁿ

^a § 126, R. V.^b 94, 3.^c § 129, R.^d 104, 1.^e 109.^f § 129, R.^g § 114, R. & 8, 1.^h 51, 1.ⁱ § 140, Obs. 4.^k § 140, 1, 1st. (*ita.*)^l § 136, R. LII.^m § 136, Obs. 5, (*ab*)ⁿ § 140, 1, 2d.

26. Ita ¹ ancipiti praelio ^a diu atque acriter pugnatum est.^b Diutius cum nostrorum impetus sustinere non possent,^c ² alteri ^d se, ut cœperant, in montem receperunt; alteri ^d ad impedimenta et carros suos se contulerunt. Nam hoc toto praelio,^e cum ab ³ hora septimâ ad vespèrum pugnatum sit,^e ⁴ aversum hostem videre nemo potuit. ⁵ Ad multam noctem etiam ad impedimenta pugnatum est, propterea quòd pro vallo carros objecerant, et e loco superiore in nostros ^f venientes tela conjiciebant,^g et nonnulli, inter carros rotasque, ⁶ matras ac tragulas subiciebant ^g nostrosque vulnerabant.^g Diu cum esset pugnatum, impedimentis ^h castrisque nostri potiti sunt. Ibi Orgetorigis filia, atque unus e filiis ⁱ captus est. Ex eo praelio circiter millia hominum centum et triginta superfuèrunt, eaque totâ nocte ^e continenter ierunt: nullam partem ^e noctis itinere intermisso, in fines Lingonum die quarto ^k pervenerunt, cum, et ^l propter vulnera militum, et propter sepulturam occisorum,^f nostri, triduum ^e morati, eos sequi non potuissent.^c Cæsar ad Lingonas literas nunciosque misit, ne eos frumento, neve aliâ re juvarent: ^m ⁷ qui si juvissent,ⁿ ⁸ se eodem loco, quo Helvetios, habiturum. Ipse, triduo intermisso, cum omnibus copiis eos sequi cœpit.

27. Helvetii omnium rerum inopiâ adducti, legatos de deditiōe ad eum miserunt. ⁹ Qui,^o cum eum in itinere convenissent,^c seque ad pedes projecissent, suppliciterque locuti flentes pacem petissent, atque eos ^p in eo loco, quo tum essent,^q suum adventum expectare ^r jussisset, paruerunt. Eò postquam Cæsar pervenit, obsides, arma, servos, qui ad eos perfugissent,^s poposcit. Dum ea conquiruntur, et conferun-

^a § 129, R.

^b 65, 5.

^c § 140, Obs. 4.

^d 27, Obs. 10.

^e § 131, R. XLI. &

Exp.

^f 19, (milites.)

^g § 44, II, 2.

^h § 121, R. XXVI.

ⁱ § 107, Obs. 8.

^k § 131, R. XL.

^l 124, 1.

^m § 140, 1, 3d.

ⁿ § 140, 2.

^o 39, 5.

^p § 145, R. LVIII.

^q § 141, Obs. 8.

^r 94, 3.

^s § 141, R. I.

tur, nocte intermissâ, circiter hominum millia sex ejus pagi, qui Verbigēnus.^a appellatur sive timore perterriti, ne, armis traditis, supplicio afficerentur,^b sive spe salutis inducti, quod, in tantâ multitudīne dedititiōrum, suam fugam^c aut ¹ occultari,^d aut ² omnino ignorari posse existimarent,^e ³ primâ^f nocte ex castris Helvetiōrum egressi, ad Rhenum finesque Germanōrum contendērunt.

28. Quod^g ubi Cæsar rescit, ⁴ quorum per fines ierant, his,^h uti conquirerentⁱ et reducerent, si sibi purgati^d esse vellent,^k imperavit: reductos^l in hostium numēro^s habuit: reliquos omnes, obsidibus, armis, perfugis traditis, in deditiōnem accēpit. Helvetios, Tulingos, Latobrigos in fines suos, unde erant profecti, reverti^m jussit; et quod, omnibus fructibus amissis, domiⁿ nihil erat, quo famem tolerarent,^o Allobrogibus^p imperavit, ut iis^p frumenti copiam facerent:ⁱ ⁶ ipsos^c oppida vicosque, quos incendērant, restituere jussit. Id eâ maxime ratiōne^u fecit, quod noluit, eum locum,^c unde Helvetii discesserant, ⁷ vacare;^m ne propter bonitatem agrorum Germāni, qui trans Rhenum incolunt, e suis finibus in Helvetiōrum fines transirent,^b et finitimi^a Galliæ provinciæ^r Allobrogibusque essent. ⁸ Boios, petentibus Æduis,^h quod egregiâ virtute^s erant cogniti, ut in finibus suis collocarent,ⁱ concessit: quibus^h illi agros dederunt, quosque postea in parem juris libertatisque conditionem, atque^t ipsi erant, receperunt.

29. In castris Helvetiōrum ⁹ tabulæ repertæ sunt, ¹⁰ litēris Græcis confectæ et ad Cæsarem relatæ, quibus^u in tabulis nominatim ¹¹ ratio confecta erat, qui numērus domo exisset^v

^a § 103, R. V.

^b 63.

^p § 123, R.

^b § 140, 1.

ⁱ § 140, 1, 3d.

^e § 129, R.

^c § 145, R. LVIII.

^k § 140, 2.

^r § 111, R.

^d 87, 6.

^l 19, (eos.)

^s § 106, R. VII.

^o § 141, Obs. 7.

^m 94, 3.

^t § 149, Obs. 6.

^f 17, 1.

ⁿ § 130, 4.

^u 37. Note 1. 6.

^g 38, 4.

^o § 141, R. I.

^v § 140, 5.

eōrum, qui arma ferre possent:^a et item separātim puēr senes, mulieresque. Quarum^b omnium rerum summa erat. ¹capitum Helvetiōrum millia^c ducenta et sexaginta tria, Tulingōrum millia triginta sex, Latobrigōrum quatuordēcim, Rauracōrum viginti tria, Boiōrum triginta duo: ex his, qui arma ferre possent,^a ad millia nonaginta duo. Summa omnium^d fuērunt ad millia trecenta et sexaginta octo. Eōrum, qui domum rediērunt, ²censu^e habito, ut Cæsar imperavērat, repertus est numērus millium centum et decem.

30. Bello^e Helvetiōrum confecto, totius fere Galliæ legāti, principes civitātum, ad Cæsārem³gratulātum^f convenērunt: intelligēre sese,^g tametsi, ⁴pro veteribus Helvetiōrum injuriis Popūli Romāni, ab iis pœnas bello repetisset,^h tamen eam remⁱ non minūs ex usu terræ Galliæ, quàm Popūli Romāni accidisse: propterea quòd eo consilio, florentissimis rebus, domos suas Helvetii reliquissent, uti toti Galliæ¹ bellum inferrent,^k imperiōque potirentur,^k locumque domicilio¹ ex magnâ copiâ deligērent,^k quem ex omni Galliâ opportunissimum ac fructuosissimum judicāssent,^a reliquasque civitātes stipendiarias habērent.” Petiērunt, “ut sibi^m concilium totius Galliæ in diem certam indicēre, idque Cæsāris voluntāte facēre, liceret:ⁿ sese^o habēre quasdam res, quas ex commūni consensu ab eo petere vellent.^o Eā re permissā, diem concilio¹ constituērunt, et jurejurando, ⁵ne^p quis enuntiāre,^o nisi quibus^q commūni consilio mandātum esset, inter se sanxērunt.

31. Eo concilio dimisso, iidem principes civitātum, qui antè fuērunt ad Cæsārem, revertērunt, petieruntque, uti sibi secrēto de suā^r omniumque salutē cum eo agere liceret.^a

^a § 141, Obs. 3.

^b 38.

^c § 24, 5.

^d 19.

^e 109, 2.

^f 114,

^g § 145, R. LVIII.

^h § 140, 3.

ⁱ § 123, R.

^k § 140, 1. 2d.

¹ § 114, R. &

Obs. 4, (sibi.)

^m § 113, R.

ⁿ § 140, 1. 3d.

^o § 141, Obs. 8.

^p 121.

^q § 126, R. III.

^r 29, 1.

Eâ re impetrâtâ,^a sese^b omnes fientes Cæsari^c ad pedes projecērunt:^d non minùs se^d id contendere et laborare, ne ea, quæ dixissent,^e enunciarentur,^f quàm uti ea, quæ vellent,^g impetrarent,^f propterea quòd, si enunciâtum esset,^g summum in cruciâtum se ventûros vidērent.^h Locûtus est pro his Divitiâcus Æduus:ⁱ "Galliæ totius factiões^d esse duas:² harum alterius principâtum tenere Æduos,^d alterius Arvernos. ³Hi cùm tantopere de potentâtu inter se multos annos contendērent,^k factum esse^l uti ab Arvernīs Sequanisq̃ue Germâni mercēde arcesserentur.^m ⁴Horum primò circiter millia^d quindēcim Rhenumⁿ transisse: posteaquam agros, et cultum, et^o copias Gallōrum homīnes feri ac barbāri ad-amassent,^h transductos plures:^d nunc esse in Galliâ ad centum et viginti millium numērum: cum his Æduos^d eorumque clientes semel atque itērum armis contendisse;^o magnam calamitatem pulsos accepisse,^o omnem nobilitatem, omnem senātum, omnem equitatum amisisse.^o Quibus^p prœliis calamitatibusque fractos, qui et suâ virtute, et Populi Români hospitio atque amicitia, plurimum antè in Galliâ potuissent,^h coactos esse Sequānis obsides dare, nobilissimos civitatis,^q et jurejurando civitatem obstringere, sese neque obsides repetitûros,^r neque auxilium a Populo Romāno imploratûros,^r ⁶neque recusatûros,^r quo minùs perpetuo sub illōrum ditiōne atque imperio essent."⁷ Unum se esse ex omni civitate Æduōrum, qui adduci^t non potuērit,^h ut juraret,^u aut liberos suos obsides daret.^u Ob eam rem se^d ex civitate profugisse,^o et Romam^v ad senātum venisse, auxilium^w postulâtum, quòd solus neque jurejurando^x neque

^a 109.	ⁱ 94, 4.	^r 100, 2.
^b 31, 1.	^k § 140, Obs. 4.	^s § 140, 3.
^c § 110, Obs. 1, & 2.	^l 51, 4.	^t 87.
^d § 145, R. LVIII.	^m § 140, 1, 4th.	^u § 140, 1, 3d
^e § 141, Obs. 8.	ⁿ § 136, R. LII.	^v § 130, 2.
^f § 140, 1, 2d.	^o 98, 2.	^w 114, 1.
^g § 140, 2.	^p 38, 9.	^x § 129, R.
^h § 140, 6.	^q § 107, R. X. & Exp.	

obsidibus^a teneretur.^b Sed pejùs victoribus Sequānis,^c quàm Æduis^c victis, accidisse:^d propterea quòd Ariovistus, rex Germanòrum, in eòrum finibus consedisset,^b tertiamque partem agri Sequāni, qui esset^e optimus totius Galliæ, occupavisset,^b et nunc de alterâ parte tertiâ Sequānos decedere juberet;^b propterea quòd, paucis mensibus^f antè, Harüdum millia hominum viginti quatuor ad eum venissent;^b ¹ quibus^g locus ac sedes pararentur.^g ² Futurum^h esse paucis annis^f uti omnes ex Galliæ finibus pellerentur,ⁱ atque omnes Germāni Rhenum transirent:ⁱ ³ neque enim conferendum^k esse Gallicum cum Germanòrum agro, neque hanc consuetudinem victus cum illâ comparandam.^k Ariovistum autem, ⁴ ut semel Gallòrum copias prælio vicèrit,^e quod prælium^l factum sit^b ad Magetobriam, superbè et crudeliter imperare, obsides nobilissimi cujusque liberos poscere, ⁵ et in eos omnia exempla cruciatusque edere, si qua res non ad nutum aut ad voluntatem ejus facta sit:^m hominem esse barbàrum, iracundum, temerarium: non posse ejus imperiaⁿ diutius sustineri. ⁶ Nisi si quid in Cæsare Populòque Romāno sit auxilii,^o omnibus Gallis^p idem esse faciendum, quod Helvetii fecerint,^e ⁷ ut domo emigrent,ⁱ aliud domicilium, alias sedes, remòtas a Germānis, petant,ⁱ fortunamque, quæcumque accīdat,^e experiantur.ⁱ “Hæc si enunciāta Ariovisto sint,^m non dubitare, quin de omnibus obsidibus, qui apud eum sint,^e gravissimum supplicium sumat.^q Cæsarem vel auctoritatē^a suā^r atque exercitùs, vel recenti victoriâ, vel nomīne Popūli Romāni deterrere posse, ne major multitudo Germanòrum Rhenum transducātur,^r Galliamque omnem ab Ariovisti injuriâ posse defendere.”

^a § 129, R.^b § 140, 6, & 74.^c § 113, R. &^d 98, 2.^e § 141, Obs. 7.^f § 131, R. XL.^g § 126, R. III.^h 51, 5.ⁱ § 140, 1, 4th.^k 108.^l 37, Note 1, 6.^m § 140, 2, & 74, 1st.ⁿ § 145, R. LVIII.^o § 106, R. VIII.^p § 147, R. LXI.^q § 140, 3.^r 29, 1.^s § 140, 1.

32. Hâc oratiōne ab Divitiāco ¹habîtâ, omnes, qui adērunt, magno fletu auxilium a Cæsāre petēre cōpērunt. Animadvertit Cæsar, unos ^a ex omnibus Sequānos ^b nihil eārū rerum facēre, ^c quas cetēri facērent; ^d sed tristes, capite ^e demisso, terram intuēri. Ejus rei causa quæ esset, ^f mirātus, ^g ex ipsis quæsivit. Nihil Sequāni respondēre, ^h sed in eādē tristitiâ taciti ⁱ permanēre. Cū ab iis sæpius quæreret, ^k neque ullam omnino vocem ^l exprimēre posset, ^k idē Divitiācus Æduus respondit: ^m “Hoc esse miseriores gravioresque fortunam Sequanōrum, ⁿ præ ^o reliquōrum, quod soli ne in occulto quidem queri, neque auxilium implorāre auderent, ^p absentisque Ariovisti crudelitatem, velut si coram adesset ^q horrerent: ^r propterea quod reliquis ^s tamen ^t fugæ facultas darētur; Sequānis ^u vero, qui intra fines suos Ariovistum recepissent, ^v quorum oppida omnia in potestate ejus essent, ^w omnes cruciātus essent perferendi.”

33. His rebus cognitis, Cæsar Gallōrum animos verbis ^x confirmāvit, pollicitusque est, ^y sibi ^z eam rem curæ futuram: magnam se habēre spem, et beneficio ^{aa} suo et auctoritate adductum Ariovistum finem injuriis facturum. ^{ab} Hâc oratiōne habîtâ, concilium dimisit; et ^{ac} secundum ea multæ res eum hortabantur, quare sibi ^{ad} eam rem ^{ae} cogitandam ^{af} et suscipiendam putāret; ^{ag} in primis quod ^{ah} Æduos, fratres consanguineosque sæpenumero ab Senātu appellatos, in servitute atque in ditione vidēbat Germanōrum tenēri, ^{ai} eorumque obsides esse apud Ariovistum ac Sequānos intelligēbat: quod ^{aj} in tanto imperio Populi Romāni turpissimum ^{ak} sibi ^{al}

^a 16, 4.^b § 145, R. LVIII.^c 96, 2.^d § 141, Obs. 8.^e § 129, R.^f § 140, 5.^g 106, 1.^h § 144, Obs. 6.ⁱ § 98, Obs. 10.^k § 140, Obs. 4.^l § 136, Obs. 6.^m § 140, 2.ⁿ § 126, R. III. & 19.^o § 126, R. XXXIII.

& Obs. 3.

^p 108.^q § 114, R. & 8.^r 100, 2.^s § 140, Obs. 2.^t 37, Note 3.^u § 103, Obs. 2.^v § 111, R.

et reipublicæ esse arbitrabatur. Paulatim autem Germānos consuescere Rhenum transire, et in Galliam magnam eorum multitudinem venire, Populo Romāno periculōsum vidēbat: neque sibi^a homīnes feros ac barbāros temperatūros^b existimābat, quin, cū omnem Galliam occupāssent,^c ut ante Cimbri Teutonīque fecissent,^d in Provinciam exirent,^e atque inde in Italiam contendērent;^f præsertim cū Sequānos a Provinciā nostrā Rhodānus dividēret.^g Quibus^h rebusⁱ quāⁱ maturimē^l occurrēdum putābat.^m Ipse autem Ariovistus tantos sibi spiritus, tantam arrogantiam sumsērat, ut ferendus non vidētur.ⁿ

34. Quamobrem^o placuit ei, ut ad Ariovistum legātos mitteret,^l qui ab eo postulārent,^m uti aliquem locum medium utriusque colloquio dicēret:ⁿ velle sese de reipublicā^o et summis utriusque rebus cum eo agere. Ei legatōni^p Ariovistus respondit: ^qSi quid ipsi^p a Cæsāre opus esset, sese ad eum ventūrum fuisse;^q si quid^r ille se^r velit, illum^s ad se venire oportere. Præterea se neque sine exercitū in eas partes Galliæ venire audere, quas Cæsar possidēret;^t neque exercitū^u sine magno commeātu atque emolimento in unum locum contrahere posse: sibi autem mirum vidēri,^v quid in suā Galliā, quam bello vicisset,^v aut Cæsāri,^w aut omnino Populo Romāno^x negotii^y esset."

35. His responsis ad Cæsārem relātis, iterum ad eum Cæsar legātos cum his mandātis mittit: "Quoniam tanto suo^y Populique Romāni beneficio affectus (cū in consulātu suo rex atque amicus a Senātu appellātus esset), hanc sibi

^a § 140, Note.^b 100, 1.^c § 140, Obs. 4.^d § 141, Obs. 8.^e § 140, 3.^f § 140, Obs. 3.^g 38.^h § 147, & 113, (sibi)ⁱ § 134, Obs. 6, 3d.^k § 140, 1, 1st. 70.^l § 140, 1, 4th.^m § 141, R. II. Obs.ⁿ 2, 4th.^o § 140, 1, 3d.^p 63.^q § 111.^r 100, 5.^s § 136, Obs. 5. (α.)^t § 113, Exc. III.^u § 140, 6.^v 70, & Obs.^w § 141, Obs. 7.^x § 112, R. II.^y § 107, R. VIII.^z 29, 1.^{aa} § 112, R. IV.

Populōque Romāno ¹gratiam referret,^a ut in colloquium venire invitātus gravarētur,^b ²neque^c de commūni re ³dicendum sibi^d et cognoscendum putāret;^b hęc^e esse, quę ab eo postulāret:^f primū, ne ⁴quam hominū multitudīnem ampliū trans Rhenum in Galliam transduceret:^g deinde obsides, quos haberet^f ab Ēduis, redderet,^h Sequanisque permittēret,ⁱ ut, quos illi haberent,^f voluntāte ejus reddere illis liceret;^j neve Ēduos ⁵inuriā lacessēret,^k neve his sociisve eōrum bellum inferret:^l si id ita fecisset,^h sibi ¹Populōque Romāno perpetuam gratiam^e atque amicitiam cum eo futuram:^k si non impetrāret,^h sese^e (quoniam Marco Messālā, Marco Pisōne Consulibus, Senātus censuisset,^a uti quicumque Galliam provinciam¹ obtinēret,^m ⁶quod commōdoⁿ reipublicę facere posset,^f Ēduos ceterosque amicos Populī Romāni defendēret),^l sese Ēduōrum injurias non neglectūrum.”^k

36. Ad hęc Ariovistus respondit: “Jus esse belli, ut, qui^o vicisset,^m iis,^p quos vicissent,^f quemadmodum vellent,^a imperārent:^q ⁷item Populū Romānum^e victis^p non ad alterius pręscriptum, sed ad suum arbitrium, imperāre consueſse.” Si ipse Popūlo Romāno non pręscribēret,^h quemadmodum suo^r jure uterētur;^q non ⁸oportere sese a Popūlo Romāno in suo jure impediri. Ēduos^e sibi,^q quoniam belli fortunam tentāssent^a et armis congressi ac superāti essent,^a stipendiarios esse factos. Magnam Cæsārem^e injuriam facere, qui suo adventu vectigalia sibi deteriōra faceret.” Ēduis^r se obsides redditūrum non esse, neque iis,^r neque eōrum sociis^r injuriā bellum illatūrum, si in eo manērent,^h quod convenisset,^f stipendiumque quotannis pendērent: si

^a § 140, 6.^b § 140, 2.^p § 112, R. V.^b § 140, 1.ⁱ § 112, R. II.^q § 140, 5.^c § 93, 1.^k § 100, 2.^r 98, 6.^d § 147, & 113, 5.^l § 97, R.^s 31, Note.^e § 145, R. LVIII.^m § 141, R. I.^t § 111, R.^f § 141, R. VI.ⁿ § 129, R.^u § 141, R. III.^g § 140, 1, 3d.^o 37, 3^v § 123, R.

id non fecissent,¹ longè iis^a fratrum nomen Populi Romani abfuturum. ²Quod^b sibi Cæsar denunciaret, se Æduorum injurias non neglecturum; neminem^c secum sine sua^d perniciæ contendisse.^e Cùm vellet,^f congregeretur;^g intellecturum, quid invicti Germani, exercitatissimi in armis, qui^h inter annos quatuordecim tectum non subissent,ⁱ ⁴virtute possent.”ⁱ

37. Hæc eodem tempore Cæsari^k mandata referebantur, et legati ab Æduis et a Treviris veniebant: ⁵Ædui^l questum,^m quod Harudes, qui nuper in Galliam transportati essent,ⁿ fines eorum popularentur,^h sese rē obsidibus quidem datis pacem Ariovisti redimere potuisse: ⁶Treviri^l autem, pagos centum Suevorum ad ripas Rheni consedissee, qui Rhenum transire conarentur;^h iis^a præesse Nasuam et Cimmerium fratres: Quibus^a rebus Cæsar vehementer commotus, maturandum^c sibi^o existimavit, ⁷ne, si nova manus Suevorum cum veteribus copiis Ariovisti sese conjunxisset,^p minus facile resisti posset.^q Itaque ⁸re frumentaria, quam^r celerrimè potuit, comparata,^s magnis itineribus ad Ariovistum contendit.

38. Cùm ⁹tridui viam^v processisset,^f nuntiatum est ei,^h Ariovistum^c cum suis omnibus copiis ad occupandum^t Vesontionem, quod est oppidum maximum Sequanorum,¹⁰ contendere,^u triduique viam^v a suis finibus processisse.^e Id ne accideret,^a magno opere sibi^o præcavendum^c Cæsar existimabat: namque omnium rerum, quæ ad bellum usui^w erant,¹¹ summa erat in eo oppido facultas; idque naturâ loci sic muniebatur, ut magnam ¹²ad ducendum bellum daret^x fac-

^a § 112, R. I.

^b 38, Note. 11.

^c § 145, R. LVIII.

^d 31, Note.

^e 98, 2.

^f § 140, Obs. 4.

^g § 140, 6.

^h § 141, Obs. 7.

ⁱ § 140, 5.

^k § 126, R. III.

^l § 101, Obs. 4.

^m § 148, 1.

ⁿ 38.

^o 113.

^p § 140, 2.

^q § 140, 1, 2d.

^r § 134, Obs. 6, 3d.

^s § 104, 1.

^t 112, 7.

^u 96, 2.

^v § 132, R. XLII.

^w § 114, R. & Obs. 4.

^x § 140, 1, 1st.

ultatē, propterea quòd flumen Dubis ¹ ut circino circumductum, pæne tótum oppidum cingit: reliquum ² spatium, quod est ³ non amplius pedum ⁴ sexcentòrum, quà flumen intermittit, mons ⁵ continet magnà altitudīne, ⁶ ita ut radices ejus montis ex utrâque parte ripæ fluminis contingant.^c ⁴ Hunc ^d murus circumdatus arcem ^d efficit et cum oppido conjungit. Huc Cæsar magnis nocturnis diurnisque itineribus contendit, ^e occupatōque oppido, ibi præsidium collocat.^e

39. Dum paucos dies ad Vesontiōnem, rei frumentariæ commeatûsque causâ, moratur, ⁵ ex percunctatiōne nostrorum vocibusque Gallorum ac mercatorum, qui ingenti magnitudīne ^b corporum Germānos, incredibīli virtute ^b atque exercitatiōne in armis esse prædicābant, ^f sæpenumero sese, ⁴ cum eis congressos, ^b ne ⁶ vultum quidem atque aciem oculorum ferre potuisse, ^h tantus subito timor omnem exercitum occupavit, ut non mediocriter omnium mentēs animosque perturbāret.^c Hic ⁱ primū ortus est a ⁷ Tribūnis militum, præfectis reliquisque, qui, ex urbe amicitiae causâ Cæsarem secuti, non magnum in re militari usum habebant: ⁸ quorum ⁴ alius, ¹ aliâ ^m causâ illatâ, quam ⁵ sibi ⁿ ad proficiscendum necessariam esse dicērent, ^o petebant, ut ejus voluntate discedere liceret: ^p nonnulli, pudore adducti, ut timoris suspiciōnem vitarent, ^q remanēbant. Hi neque ⁹ vultum fingere, neque interdum lacrymas tenere poterant: abditi in tabernaculis, aut suum ^r fatum querebantur, ^f aut cum familiaribus suis ^r commūne pericūlum miserabantur.^f Vulgò totis castris testamenta obsignabantur.^f Horum vocibus ac timore paulatim etiam ii, ⁸ qui magnum in castris usum habebant, milites ⁸ centurionesque, quique equitatu præerant, pertur-

^a § 106, R. VI. Obs.
3. (*spatio*.)

^b § 106, R. VII. & 6, 1.

^c § 140, 1, 1st.

^d § 116, Obs. 1.

^e § 44, I, 3.

^f § 44, II. 1.

⁵ § 145, R. LVIII.

^h 98, 2.

ⁱ 19, (*timor*.)

^k § 107, R. X.

^l § 102, Obs. 5.

^m 25, 1, and

§ 98, Obs. 11.

ⁿ § 111, R.

^o § 141, Obs. 7.

^p § 140, 1, 3d.

^q § 140, 1, 2d.

^r 30, 2.

^s § 97, R.

babantur. ¹ Qui ^a se ex his minùs timídos existimāri ^b volēbant, non se hostem verēri, ^c sed angustias itinēris et magnitudinē silvārum, quæ intercedērent ^d inter ipsos atque Ariovistum, aut rem frumentariam, ut ^e satis commōdē supportāri posset, timēre ^c dicēbant. Nonnulli etiam Cæsāri renunciābant, cū castra movēri ac signa ferri jussisset, ^f non fore ^g dicto audientes milītes, nec propter timōrem ^higna latūros.

40. Hæc cū animadvertisset, ⁱ convocāto ^k consilio, omniumque ordinū ad id consilium adhibītis ^l centurionibus, vehementer eos incusāvit; "primū, quōd, aut quam in partem, aut quo consilio ducerentur, ^m ⁿ sibi ^o quærendum aut cogitandum putārent. ^p Ariovistum, se ^q consule, cupidissimē Popūli Romāni amicitiam appetisse; ^r cur hunc tam temere quisquam ab officio discessūrum judicāret? ^s ^t Sibi ^u quidem persuadēri, cognitis suis ^v postulātis atque æquitāte conditionū perspectā, eum neque suam, ^w neque Popūli Romāni gratiam repudiātūrum. Quōd si, furōre atque amentia impulsus, bellum intulisset, ^x quid tandem vererentur? ^y aut cur de ^z suā virtūte, aut de ipsius diligentia, desperārent? ^{aa} Factum ejus hostis pericūlum patrum nostrōrum memoriā, cū, Cimbris et Teutōnis a Caio Mario pulsus, non minōrem laudem exercitus, quā ipse imperātor, meritus videbātur; ^{ab} factum etiam nuper in Italiā ^{ac} servili tumultu, quos ^{ad} tamen aliquid ^{ae} usus ac disciplina, quam a nobis accepissent, sublevārent. ^{af} Ex quo judicāri posset, ^{ag} quantum habēret ^{ah} in se boni constantia; propterea quōd, quos ^{ai} aliquamdiu inermos sine causā timuissent, hos postea armātos

^a 37, (ii.)

^b 94, 3.

^c 96, 1.

^d § 140, 6.

^e 121, 7, and

^f § 140, Obs. 6.

^g 80, 1.

^h 104, 1.

ⁱ § 140, 5.

^j 113.

^k 110, 2.

^l 98, 2.

^m § 126, R. III.

ⁿ § 29, 1.

^o § 140, 2.

^p § 141, Obs. 5. 1st.

^q § 99, Obs. 2.

^r § 116, Obs. 3.

^s 43.

ac victōres superāssent. Denique hos^a esse eosdem, quibus-
cum sæpenumēro Helvetii congressi, non solū in ¹suis, sed
etiam in illōrum finibus, plerumque superārint,^b qui tamen
pares esse nostro exercitū^c non potuerint. Si ²quos adver-
sum prælium et fuga Gallōrum commovēret,^d hos, si quæ-
rērent,^d reperire posse, diuturnitate belli defatigātis Gallis,^e
Ariovistum,^a cū multos menses^f castris se ac paludibus
tenuisset, ³neque sui potestatem fecisset, desperantes jam
de pugnā et dispersos subitō adortum, magis ⁴ratione^e et
consilio, quā virtute,^e vicisse. Cui^h rationiⁱ contra homi-
nēs barbāres atque imperitos locus fuisset, hāc, ne ipsum^a
quidem sperāre, nostros exercitus^a capi posse. ⁵Qui^k suum^l
timōrem in rei frumentariæ simulatiōnem angustiasque itin-
erum conferrent,^b facere arroganter, cū aut de officio im-
peratōris desperāre, aut præscribere viderentur.^m Hæc sibi^a
esse curæ; ⁿfrumentum Sequanos,^a Leucos, Lingōnas sub-
ministrāre;^o jamque esse in agris frumenta matūra: de
itinere ipsos^a brevi tempore judicatūros.^p ⁶Quod^q non
fore dicto audientes milites,^a neque^r signa latūri dicantur,^b
nihil^r se eā re commovēri: ⁷scire enim, quibuscumque ex-
ercitus dicto audiens non fuērit,^b aut, malè re^e gestā, fortū-
nam defuisse; aut, aliquo facinore^e comperto, avaritiam
esse conjunctam. Snam innocentiam perpetuā vitā, felici-
tatem Helvetiōrum bello, esse perspectam.^s ⁸Itaque se,^a
quod in longiorem diem collatūrus esset,^t repræsentatūrum,^p
et proximā nocte de quartā vigiliā castra motūrum, ut quā-
m primū intelligere posset,^u utrūm^v apud eos pudor atque
officium, an timor valeret.^w Quod si præterea nemo sequatur,^x

^a § 145, R. LVIII.^b § 140, 6.^c § 111, R.^d § 140, 2.^e 109, 2.^f § 131, R. XLI.^g § 129, R.^h 38.ⁱ § 110, R. XV.^k 37, (eos.)^l 30, 2.^m § 140, Obs. 4.ⁿ § 114, R.^o 94, 3. & 96, Exc. II.^p 100, 2.^q 38, Note. 11.^r § 116, Obs. 3.^s 98, 6.^t § 79, 8.^u § 140, 1, 2d.^v 124, 14.^w § 140, 5.^x § 140, 2, & 77 5.^y § 39, 1.

tamen se cum solâ decimâ legiōne itūrum, de quâ non dubitāret;^a sibi que eam ¹prætoriam cohortem ^bfutūram." Huic legiōni^c Cæsar et indulserat præcipuè, et propter virtutem ²confidēbat maxime.

41. Hâc oratiōne habîtâ, mirum in modum conversæ^d sunt omnium mentes, summâque alacritas et cupiditas belli gerendi^e innâta^d est, ³princepsque ^fdecima legio, per tribunos^e militum, ei gratias egit, quòd de se optimū iudiciū fecisset;^f seque esse ad bellum gerendum paratissimam confirmāvit. Deinde reliquæ legiōnes, per tribunos^e militum et primorum ordinum centuriōnes, ⁴egērunt, uti Cæsari^h satisfacērent: ⁱse neque unquam dubitāsse,^k neque timuisse, neque de summâ belli suū ¹iudiciū, sed imperatoris^m esse, existimavisse.^k Eōrum ⁵satisfactiōne acceptâ, et itinēre ⁶exquisito per Divitiācum,^q quòd ex aliis eiⁿ maximam fidem habēbat, ut millium amplius quinquaginta circuitu locis apertis exercitū ducēret,¹ de quartâ vigiliâ, ut dixērat, profectus est. Septimo die, cū iter non intermitteret,^o ab exploratoribus⁵ certior factus est, Ariovisti copias a nostris^p millibus^q passuum quatuor et viginti abesse.

42. Cognito Cæsaris adventu, Ariovistus legatos ad eum mittit: ⁷quod^r antea de colloquio postulāset,^s id per se fieri licēre, quoniam propius accessisset: ^aseque id sine periculo facere posse existimāre. Non respuit conditionem Cæsar: jamque eum ad sanitatem reverti arbitrabatur, cū id, quod antea petenti denegāset,^t ultro polliceretur;^o magnamque in spem veniebat, pro suis¹ tantis Populique Romani in eum beneficiis, cognitis suis¹ postulatis, ⁶fore,ⁿ uti pertinaciâ de-

^a § 141, Obs. 7.

^b § 114, Obs. 2.

^c § 112, R. V.

^d § 44, III, Note.

^e 112, 5.

^f § 98, Obs. 10.

^g § 126, Obs. 2.

^h § 112, R. III.

ⁱ § 140, 1, 2d.

^k 98, 2.

^l 29, 1.

^m § 108, R. XII.

ⁿ § 123, R.

^o § 140, Obs. 4.

^p 19, (copiis.)

^q § 132, R. XLII.

^r 43.

^s § 140, 6.

^t § 141, Obs. 8.

^u § 145, Obs. 6, & 100, 14.

sistēret. Dies colloquio dictus est, ex eo die quintus. In-
tērim, cūm sæpe ultro citrōque legāti inter eos mitterentur,^a
Ariovistus postulāvit, ¹ ne quem peditem ad colloquium Cæ-
sar adducēret: ^b verēri^c, ne^d per insidias ab eo circumveni-
rētur: uterque cum equitatu venīret: ^e aliā ratiōne se non
esse ventūrum. Cæsar, quōd neque colloquium^e interpositā
causā ² tolli^f volēbat, neque salūtem suam Gallōrum equi-
tatu^g committēre audēbat, ³ commodissimum^h esse statuit,
⁴ omnibus equisⁱ Gallis equitibus^k detractis, eō legionarios
milites legiōnis decimæ, cui quāmaximē confidēbat, im-
ponēre,^l ut præsidium quāmaximē amicissimum, ⁵ si quid opus
facto esset, habēret.^m Quodⁿ cūm fiēret,^a non irridiculē
quidam ex militibus^o decimæ legiōnis dixit: “plus, quā
pollicitus esset,^p Cæsārem ei facēre; pollicitum, se in co-
hortis prætorix loco decimam legiōnem habitūrum, ⁶ nunc
ad equum rescribēre.”

43. Planities erat magna, et in eā tumulus terrēnus satis
grandis. Hic locus æquo ferē spatio^q ab castris utrisque
abērat. Eō, ut erat dictum, ad colloquium venērunt. Le-
giōnem Cæsar, quam equis^r devexērat, passibus^s ducentis
ab eo tumulo constituit. Item equites Ariovisti pari inter-
vallo^t constitērunt. Ariovistus, ⁷ ex equis ut colloqueren-
tur^b et, præter se, denos^u ut ad colloquium adducērent,^b pos-
tulāvit. ⁸ Ubi eō ventum est,^t Cæsar, initio oratiōnis, sua
Senatusque in eum beneficia commemorāvit, “quōd rex ap-
pellātus esset a Senātu, quōd munēra amplissīma missa:
quamⁿ rem et paucis^v contigisse,^v et pro magnis homīnum
officiis consuēsse tribui” docēbat: “illum, cūm neque aditum,

^a § 140, Obs. 4.^b § 140, 1, 3d.^c 94, 4.^d § 140, Obs. 6, &
121, 6.^e § 145, R. LVIII.^f 96, Exc. II. 11.^g § 123, R.^h § 98, Obs. 6.ⁱ 109.^k § 126, R. III.^l § 144, R. LVII. Note.^m § 140, 1, 2d.ⁿ 38.^o § 107, Obs. 8.^p § 141, Obs. 8.^q § 132, R. XLII.^r § 129, R.^s § 24, 11, & 26, I.^t 67, Note. 5.^u 19, & § 112, R. IV.^v 98, 2.

neque causam postulandi justam habēret, beneficio ac liberalitāte suā ac Senātus ea præmia consecutum." Docēbat etiam, "quā vetēres, quāque justæ causæ ¹necessitudinis ipsis² cum Æduis intercedērent,³ quæ Senātus consulta, quoties, quāque honorificā in eos facta essent:⁴ ut omni tempore totius Galliæ principatū Ædui tenuissent,⁵ prius etiam quā nostram amicitiam appetissent:⁶ Populi Romāni hanc⁷ esse consuetudinē, ut socios⁸ atque amicos non modò ⁹sui nihil deperdere,¹⁰ sed gratiā, dignitāte, honore ¹¹auctiores velit¹² esse; quod vero ad amicitiam Populi Romāni attulissent, id iis¹³ eripi, quis pati posset?"¹⁴ Postulavit deinde eādem, quæ legatis in mandatis dedērat, "ne aut Æduis, aut eōrum sociis bellum inferret;¹⁵ obsides redderet: si nullam partem Germanōrum domum¹⁶ remittere posset,¹⁷ at ne ¹⁸quos ampliūs Rhenum transire pateretur."¹⁹

44. Ariovistus ad postulata Cæsaris pauca respondit; de suis virtutibus multa prædicavit: "Transisse¹ Rhenum² sese, non suā sponte, sed ³rogatum⁴ et accessitum⁵ a Gallis; non sine magnā spe, magnisque præmiis, domum propinquosque reliquisse;⁶ sedes habere⁷ in Galliā; ab ipsis concessas;⁸ obsides ipsōrum voluntate datos; stipendium capere⁹ jure belli, quod victores victis¹⁰ imponere consueverint; non sese¹¹ Gallis, sed Gallos¹² sibi bellum intulisse; omnes Galliæ civitates ad se oppugnandum venisse,¹³ ac contra se castra habuisse; eas omnes copias a se uno prælio fusas ac superatas esse; si iterum experiri velint,¹⁴ iterum paratum sese decertare; si pace¹⁵ uti velint, iniquum esse, de stipendio recusare, quod suā voluntate ad id tempus pependrint.

² § 112, R. IV.

³ § 140, 5.

⁴ § 140, 1, 3d.

⁵ § 140, 4.

⁶ § 145, R. LVIII.

⁷ 90.

⁸ § 140, 6.

⁹ § 126, R. III.

¹⁰ § 130, 4.

¹¹ § 140, 2.

¹² 98, 2.

¹³ § 136, R. LII.

¹⁴ 101, 4.

¹⁵ 96, 2.

¹⁶ § 123, R. & 19.

¹⁷ § 121, R. XXVI.

Amicitiam Popūli Romāni sibi^a ornamento^a et præsidio, non detrimento, esse oportēre, idque se eā spe petisse. Si per Popūlum Romānum stipendium remittātur,^b et dedititii subtrahantur,^b non minūs libenter sese recusatūrum Popūli Romāni amicitiam, quā appetiērit.^c ¹ Quōd multitudīnem Germanōrum in Galliam transducāt,^d id se sui muniendi,^e non Galliæ impugnandæ^e causā facēre; ejus rei testimonium^f esse,^g quōd, nisi rogātus, non veniērit,^g et quōd bellum non intulērit,^g ² sed defendērit.^c Se priūs in Galliam venisse, quā Popūlum Romānum.^h Nunquam ante hoc tempus exercitūm Popūli Romāni Galliæ provinciæ finesⁱ egressum. ³ Quid sibi vellet?^c Cur in suas possessiōnes veniēret?^c Provinciam suam⁴ hanc esse Galliam, sicut illam nostram. Ut ipsi¹ concēdi non oportēret, si in nostros fines impētum facēret,^b sic item nos esse inīquos,⁵ qui in suo jure se interpellārēmus.^k ⁶ Quōd¹ fratres^f a Senātu Æduos appellātos dicēret,^c non se tam barbārum,^m neque tam imperitū^m esse rerum,ⁿ ut non sciret,^o neque bellō Allobrōgum proximō Æduos Romānis^p auxiliū tulisse, neque ipsos in his contentiōnibus, quas Ædui secūm et cum Sequānis habuissent,⁴ auxilio^f Popūli Romāni usos esse. Debēre se suspicārī, simulatā Cæsārem amicitia, quōd exercitūm in Galliā habeat,^c sui opprimendi^c causā habēre. Qui⁴ nisi decēdat^b atque exercitūm deducat^b ex his regionibus, sese illum non pro amīco, sed pro hoste habitūrum: quōd si eum interfecērit,^b multis⁷ sese nobilibus^f principibusque Popūli Romāni gratum esse factūrum; id se ab ipsis per eōrum nuntios compertum^u habēre, quorum omnium gratiam atque ami-

^a § 114, R.^b § 120, Obs. 2, 1st.^p § 123, R.^b § 140, 2.¹ § 113, R.^q § 141, Obs. 7.^c § 140, 6.^k § 141, R. III.^r § 121, R. XXVI.^d § 141, Obs. 7.¹ 38, 11, Note.^s 39.^e 112, 5.^m § 103, Obs. 2.^t § 111, R.^f § 103, R. V.ⁿ § 107, R. IX.^u § 146, Obs. 1.^s 51.^o § 140, 1, 1st.^w Sup. trans.

citiam ejus morte redimere posset. Quod si decessisset,^a ac liberam possessionem Galliae sibi^b tradidisset, magno se illum praemio remuneraturum, et, quaecumque^c bella geri vellet,^d sine ullo ejus labore et periculo confecturum."

45. Multa ab Cæsare¹ in eam sententiam dicta sunt, quare negotio desistere non posset,^e et "neque suam,^f neque Populi Romani consuetudinem^g pati, uti optime meritos socios desereret:^h neque se judicare, Galliam potius esse Ariovisti,ⁱ quam Populi Romani.¹ Bello superatos esse Arvernos et Rutenos ab Q. Fabio Maximo, quibus^k Populus Romanus ignovisset,^l neque in provinciam redegisset;¹ neque stipendium imposuisset. Quod si antiquissimum^m quodque tempusⁿ spectari oporteret,^a Populi Romani justissimum^m esse in Galliâ imperium: si judicium^g Senatûs observari oporteret,^a liberam^m debere esse Galliam, quam bello victam suis legibusⁿ uti⁴ voluisset."¹

46. Dum hæc in colloquio geruntur, Cæsari^o nuntiatum est, equites^f Ariovisti^g propius tumulum accedere,^p et ad nostros adequitare,^p lapides telâque in nostros conjicere. Cæsar loquendi finem facit^q seque ad suos recipit,^q suisque^k imperavit, ne quod omnino telum in hostes rejicerent.^h Nam, etsi sine ullo periculo legionis delectæ cum equitatu praelium^g fore vidēbat, tamen committendum^r non putabat, ut, pulsus hostibus, dici posset,^a eos^g ab se⁶ per fidem in colloquio circumventos. Posteaquam in⁷ vulgus militum elatum est, ⁸quâ arrogantia in colloquio Ariovistus usus omni Galliâ Romanis interdixisset,^o impetumque in nostros ejus equites fecissent^o eâque res colloquium ut diremisset:^o multo major alacritas studiumque pugnandi majus exercitu⁹ injectum est.

^a § 140, 2.

^b § 123, R.

^c § 99, Obs. 7.

^d § 140, 6.

^e § 140, 5.

^f 29, 1.

^g § 145, R. LVIII.

^h § 140, 1, 3d.

ⁱ § 108, R. XII.

^k § 112, R. V.

^l § 141, Obs. 7.

^m § 103, Obs. 2.

ⁿ § 121, R. XXVI.

^o § 126, R. III.

^p 96, 2.

^q § 44, I. 3.

^r 113, and r.

^s § 140, 1, 1st.

47. Biduo post Ariovistus ad Cæsarem legātos mittit,^a velle^b se de his rebus, quæ inter eos agi cæptæ,¹ neque perfectæ essent,^c agere cum eo: uti aut iterum colloquio diem constitueret;^d aut, si id minus vellet,^e ex suis aliquem ad se mitteret.^d Colloquendi Cæsari^f causa visa non est; et eo magis, quòd pridie ejus diē^g Germāni retineri non poterant,² quin^h in nostrosⁱ tela conjicerent. Legātum ex suis^j sese magno cum pericūlo ad eum missurum, et hominibus feris objecturum, existimabat. Commodissimum visum est, Caium Valerium Procillum, Caii Valerii Cabūri filium,^k summā virtute^k et humanitate adolescentem^l (cujus pater a Caio Valerio Flacco civitate^m donatus erat), et propter fidem et propter linguæ Gallicæ scientiam, quā multā jam Ariovistus longinquā consuetudineⁿ utebatur, et quòd in eo³ peccandi Germānis^o causa non esset,^p ad eum mittere, et Marcum Mettium, qui hospitio Ariovisti usus erat. His^q mandavit, ut, quæ diceret^r Ariovistus, cognoscere^d et ad se referrent.^d Quos^s cum apud se in castris Ariovistus conspexisset,^t exercitū suo præsente, conclamavit: "Quid ad se venirent?^e An^u ⁴speculandi causā?" Conantes dicere prohibuit et in catēnas conjecit.

48. Eodem die castra promovit, et millibus^v passuum sex a Cæsaris castris sub monte consedit. Postridie ejus diē^g præter castra Cæsaris suas copias transduxit, et millibus^v passuum duobus ultra eum castra fecit, eo consilio,ⁿ uti frumento commeatūque, qui ex Sequānis et Æduis supportarentur,^r Cæsarem intercluderet.^e Ex eo die dies continuos

^a 94, 1, 2d, & 4.^b 98, 2.^c § 140, 6.^d § 140, 1, 3d.^e § 140, 2.^f 70.^g § 135, R. XLVI.^h § 140, 3, & 78, 7,

Note.

ⁱ 19.^k § 106, R. VII.^l § 97, R.^m § 126, R. V.ⁿ § 129, R.^o § 112, R. II.^p § 141, Obs. 7.^q § 123, R.^r § 141, Obs. 8.^s 38.^t § 140, Obs. 4.^u 56, 3d.^v § 142, R. XLII.

quinque Cæsar pro castris suas copias produxit, et aciem instructam habuit, ut, si vellent^a Ariovistus prælio contendere¹ ei^b potestas non deesset.^c Ariovistus his omnibus diebus^d exercitum castris continuit; equestri prælio quotidie contendit. Genus hoc^e erat pugnae, quo se Germani exercuerant. Equitum millia erant sex: totidem numero^f pedites velocissimi ac fortissimi; ^g quos ex omni copia singuli singulos,^h suae salutis causa, delegerant. Cum his in præliis versabantur, ad hos se equites recipiebant: hi, si quid erat durius,ⁱ concurrerant: si qui,^j graviore vulnere accepto, equo deciderat, circumstabant: ^k si quod erat longius prodeundum,^k aut celerius recipiendum,^k tanta erat horum exercitatione celeritas, ut, jubis^l equorum sublevati, ^m cursum adaequarent.^m

49. Ubi eumⁿ castris se tenere Cæsar intellexit, ne diutius commeatu prohiberetur,^o ultra eum locum, ^p quo in loco^o Germani consederant, circiter passus^p sexcentos ab eis, castris^q idoneum locum delēgit, acieque triplici instructa, ad eum locum venit. Primam et secundam aciem in armis esse,^r tertiam castra munire jussit. Hic locus ab hoste circiter passus^p sexcentos, ut dictum est, aberat. Eo circiter hominum numero sexdecim millia expedita cum omni equitatu Ariovistus misit, ^s quæ^s copiae nostros perterrèrent^t et munitione prohiberent. Nihilō seciūs Cæsar, ut antè constituerat, duas acies hostem propulsare,^t tertiam opus perficere jussit. Munitis castris, duas ibi legiones reliquit et partem auxiliorum: quatuor reliquas in castra majora reduxit.

^a § 140, 2.

^b 22.

^o 37, 7, Note. 1.

^b § 112, R. II.

ⁱ § 35.

^p § 136, R. XLVIII.

^c § 140, 1, 2d.

^k 113, 2.

^q § 111, R.

^d § 131, R. XLI.

^l § 129, R.

^r 90, 4.

^e § 103, R. V.

^m § 140, 1, 1st.

^s 40, 4.

^f § 128, R. XXXIV.

ⁿ § 145, R. LVIII.

^t § 141, Obs. 2, 4th.

^g 26.

50. Proximo die,^a ¹ instituto ^b suo, Cæsar e castris utrisque copias suas eduxit; paulumque ² a majoribus progressus, aciem instruxit, hostibusque ^c pugnandi potestatem fecit. Ubi ne tum quidem eos prodire ^d intellexit, circiter meridiem exercitum in castra reduxit. Tum demum Ariovistus partem suarum copiarum, quæ castra minora oppugnaret,^e misit: acriter utrinque usque ad vespèrum pugnatum est. Solis occâsu suas copias Ariovistus, multis et illâtis et acceptis vulneribus,^f in castra reduxit. Cùm ex captivis quæreret ^g Cæsar, quam ob rem Ariovistus prælio non decertaret,^h hanc reperiēbat causam, quod apud Germânos ea consuetudo esset,ⁱ ut matres familiæ eorum ³ sortibus et vaticinationibus declararent,^k utrùm prælium committi ⁴ ex usu esset,^h nec ne: eas ita dicere, ⁵ “Non-esse ¹ fas, Germânos superâre, si ante novam lunam prælio contendissent.”^m

51. Postridie ejus diēi Cæsar præsidio ⁿ utrisque castris, quod ^o satis esse visum est, reliquit; ⁶ omnes alarios in conspecta hostium ⁷ pro castris minoribus constituit, quod minùs multitudīne militum legionariorum pro hostium numēro valēbat, ut ⁸ ad speciem alariis uteretur.^p Ipse, triplici instructâ acie, usque ad castra hostium accessit. Tum demum necessariò Germâni suas copias castris eduxerunt, ⁹ generatimque constituērunt paribusque intervallis Harūdes, Marcomânos, Triboccos, Vangiōnes, Nemētes, Sedusios, Suēvos, omnemque aciem suam ^q ¹⁰ rhedis ^b et carris circumdedērunt, ne qua spes in fugâ relinqueretur.^p ¹¹ Eò muliēres imposuerunt, quæ in prælium proficiscentes milites passis crinibus flentes implorābant, ne se in servirūtem Românis tradērent.^r

^a § 131, R. XL.^g § 140, Obs. 4.ⁿ § 114, R.^b § 129, R.^h § 140, 5.^o 37, 2 (*id.*)^c § 123, R. & 63, 5.¹ § 141, Obs. 7.^p § 140, 1, 2d.^d § 96, 2.^k § 140, 1, 1st.^q § 30, 2.^e § 141, Obs. 2, 4th.¹ 51.^r § 140, 1, 3d, &^f 109, 2.^m § 140, 2.

121, 2.

52. Cæsar ¹ singulis^a legionibus^b singulos legatos et quæstorem præfēcit, uti eos testes suæ quisque virtutis habēret.^c Ipse a dextro cornu, quod eam partem ² minimè firmam hostium esse animum advertērat, prælium commisit. Ita nostri acriter in hostes, signo dato, impetum fecerunt, itaque hostes repentè celeriterque procurrerunt, ut spatium pila in hostes conjiciendi^d non darētur.^e Rejectis pilis,^f cominus gladiis pugnatum est: at Germāni, celeriter ex consuetudine suā ³ phalange^g facta, impetus gladiorum excepērunt. Reperti sunt complures^h nostri milites, qui in phalangas in silirent,ⁱ et scuta manibus revellērent,^j et desuper vulnerarent.^k Cùm hostium acies a sinistro cornu pulsa atque in fugam conversa esset, a dextro cornu vehementer multitudinē^b suorum nostram aciem premēbant. Id cùm animadvertisset^c Publius Crassus adolescens, qui equitatu^k præerat, quod ⁴ expeditior erat, quàm hi qui inter aciem versabantur, tertiam aciem laborantibus nostris^l subsidio^l misit:

53. Ita prælium restitutum est, atque omnes hostes terga vertērunt, ⁵ neque prius fugere destitērunt, quàm ad flumen Rhenum millia^m passuum ex eo loco circiter quinquaginta pervenērunt.ⁿ Ibi perpauci aut, viribus^o confisi, transnatāre contendērunt, aut, lintribus inventis, sibi^b salutem reperērunt. ⁶ In his fuit Ariovistus, qui, naviculam deligatam ad ripam nactus,^p eā profūgit: reliquos omnes consecuti equites nostri interfecērunt. Duæ fuērunt Ariovisti uxōres, una^q Sueva natione, quam ab domo secum eduxerat; altēra Norīca, regis Vociōnis soror,^q quam in Galliā ⁷ duxerat, a fratre missam: utræque in eā fugā periērunt. ⁸ Duæ filiæ^r harum, altēra^r occisa, altēra^r capta est. Caius Valerius Proculus,

^a 26.^b § 123, R.^c § 140, 1, 2d.^d 112, 1.^e 109, &

§ 146, R. LX.

^f 17.^g § 141, Obs. 1.^h § 129, R.ⁱ § 140, Obs. 4.^j § 112, R. I.^k § 114, R.^m § 136, R. XLVIIIⁿ § 140, 4.^o § 112, R. V.^p 105, 1.^q § 97, R.^r § 97, Obs. 5.

cūq; a custodib; in fugā trinis catēnis^a vinctus traherētur,^b
¹ in ipsum Cæsārem, hostes equitātu^a persequentem, incidit.
 Quæ quidem res Cæsāri^d non minōrem, quā ipsa victo-
 ria,^e voluptātem attūlit; quōd homīnem honestissimū pro-
 vincię Gallię, suū familiārem^f et hospitem, ceptum e
 manib; hostium, sibi^g restitūtum vidēbat, neque ejus ca-
 lamitāte^a de tantā voluptāte et gratulatiōne quicquam for-
 tūna deminuērat. Is, se præsente,^h de se ter sortib;^a con-
 sultumⁱ dicēbat, utrū^k igni statim necarētur,^l an in aliud
 tempus reservarētur: sortium² beneficio^a se esse^m incolū-
 mem. Item Marcus Metius repertus, et ad eum reductus est.

54. Hoc prælio trans Rhenum nunciāto, Suevi, qui ad ri-
 pas Rheni venērant, domumⁿ reverti cœpērunt: quos Ubii,
 qui^o proximi^o Rhenum incolunt, perterritos insecūti, mag-
 num ex his numērum occidērunt. Cæsar, unā æstāte^p duō-
 bus maximis bellis confectis, maturiūs paulo, quā tempus
 anni postulābat, in hiberna in Sequānos exercitū deduxit:
 hibernis^d Labiēnum præposuit: ipse⁴ in citeriōrem Galliā
 ad conventus agendos^q profectus est.

^a § 129, R.^e § 126, R. III.^m 96. 2.^b § 140, Obs. 4.^h 110, 5.ⁿ § 130, 4.^c 38, 2.ⁱ § 47, 6, & 98, 2.^o § 136, Obs. 5. (ad.)^d § 123, R.^k § 124, 14.^p § 131, R. XLI.^e § 120, Obs. 1.^l § 140, 5.^q 112, 7.^f § 97, R.

BOOK II.

GENERAL ARGUMENT.

I. Confederacy of the Belgæ. Cæsar's war with them—Chap. 1–14.
 II. War with the Nervii—Chap. 15–28. III. War with the Aduatici—Chap. 29–33. IV. Expedition of Publius Crassus into Armorica—Chap. 34. V. Transactions subsequent to the reduction of the Belgæ—Chap. 35.

1. ¹ Cum esset Cæsar in citeriøre Galliâ in hibernis, ita uti supra demonstravimus, ² crebri ad eum rumores afferebantur, literisque item Labiëni certior fiëbat, omnes Belgas, quam ^a tertiam esse Galliæ partem ³ dixeramus, contra Populum Romanum conjurare, ^b obsidesque inter se dare, ^c ⁴ conjurandi has esse causas: primum, quod vereretur, ^d ne, ^e omni pacatâ Galliâ, ad eos exercitus noster adduceretur: ^e deinde, quod ab nonnullis Gallis sollicitarentur, ^f partim qui, ut Germanos diutius in Galliâ versari noluërant, ita Populi Romani exercitum hiemare atque inveterascere in Galliâ molestè ferëbant; ^g partim qui mobilitate et levitate animi novis ^h imperiis studëbant: ⁱ ab nonnullis etiam, quod in Galliâ a potentioribus ^j atque his ^k qui ad ^l conducendos homines facultates habëbant, vulgò regna occupabantur, qui minùs facillè ^m eam rem in imperio nostro consëqui poterant.

2. Iis nuntiis literisque commotus, Cæsar duas legiões in citeriøre Galliâ novas conscripsit, et, ⁿ in ita æstâte, in interiorem Galliam qui deducëret, ^o Quintum Pedium legatum misit. Ipse, cum primum pabuli copia esse inciperet, ad exercitum venit: ^p dat negotium Senonibus reliquisque Gallis, qui finitimi Belgis ^q erant, uti ea, quæ apud eos gerantur, ^r ^s cognoscant, ^t seque de his rebus certiores faciant.¹

^a § 99, Obs. 4.

^c § 141, Obs. 8.

ⁱ § 141, Obs. 2, 4th.

^b 96, 2.

^e § 112, R. V.

^k § 111, R.

^d § 140, Obs. 6.

^f 19, (*hominibus*.)

^l § 140, 1, 3d.

^g § 141, Obs. 7.

^h 112, 7.

Hi constanter omnes nunciavērunt, manus cogi, exercitum in unum locum condūci. Tum vero dubitandum non existimāvit, ¹quin ad eos proficiscerētur.² Re frumentariā provīsā, castra movet, diebusque circiter quindēcim ad fines Belgārum pervēnit.

3. Eō cūm de improvīso ³celeriusque omnium opiniōe ^bvenisset, Remi, qui proximī Galliæ ex Belgis ^csunt, ad eūm legātos, Iccium et Antebrogium, primos civitātis, ^dmisērunt, qui dicērent, ^ese suāque omnia in fidem atque in potestātem Popūli Romāni permittēre: ^fneque ^gse cum Belgis reliquis consensisse, neque contra Popūlum Romānum omnino conjurāsse: paratosque esse et obsides dare, et imperāta ^hfacēre, et oppidis recipēre, et frumento ceterisque rebus juvāre: reliquos omnes Belgas in armis esse: Germanosque, qui cis Rhenum incolunt, sese cum his conjunxisse; tantumque esse eōrum omnium ⁴furōrem, ut ne Suessiōnes quidem, fratres consanguineosque suos, qui eōdem jure ⁱet eisdem legibus utantur, ^kunum imperium unumque magistrātum cum ipsis habeant, ^kdeterre potuerint, ^lquin cum his consentirent.^m

4. Cūm ab ⁵his quæreret, quæ civitātes, ⁶quantæque in armis essent, ⁿet quid in bello possent, sic reperiēbat: ple-rosque Belgas esse ortos ab Germānis: Rhenumque antiquitus transductos, propter loci fertilitatem ibi consedis- se, Gallosque, qui ea loca incolērent, expulisse; solosque esse, qui, patrum nostrōrum memoriā, omni Galliā vexatā, Teutōnos Cimbrosque intra fines suos ingrēdi prohibuērint.^o Quā ex re fieri, uti eārum rerum memoriā magnam sibi auctoritatem, magnosque spirītus in re militāri sumērent.^p De numero eōrum ⁷omnia se habēre explorāta, ^qRemi dicēbant;

^a § 140, 3.^z 124, 5.

78, 7, Note.

^b § 120, R.^h 19, (*negotia*.)ⁿ § 140, 5.^c § 107, Obs. 8.ⁱ § 121, R. XXVI.^o § 141, Obs. 7.^d § 107, R. X. Exp.^k § 141, R. IV.^p § 140, 1, 4th.^e § 141, Obs. 2, 4th.^l § 140, 1, 1st.^q § 146, Obs. 1^f § 145, Obs. 3.^m § 140, 3, &

propterea quòd propinquitatibus affinitatibusque conjuncti, quantam quisque multitudinem in communi Belgarum concilio ad id bellum pollicitus sit,^a cognoverint.^b Plurimum inter eos Bellovacos et virtute,^c et auctoritate,^c et hominum numero,^c valere: hos posse conficere armata millia centum: pollicitos ex eo numero electa millia sexaginta, totiusque belli imperium sibi^d postulare. Suessiones suos esse finitimos, latissimos feracissimosque agros possidere. Apud eos fuisse regem nostram etiam memoriam¹ Divitiacum, totius Galliae potentissimum, qui cum^e magnae partis harum regionum, tum^e etiam Britanniae, imperium obtinuerit:^b nunc esse regem Galbam: ad hunc, propter justitiam prudentiamque, totius belli summam omnium voluntate deferri: oppida habere numero^c duodecim, polliceri millia armata quinquaginta: totidem^f Nervios, qui maxime feri inter ipsos habentur^b longissimèque absint:^b quindecim millia Atrebatum: Ambianos decem millia: Morinos viginti quinque millia: Menapios novem millia: Caletos decem millia: Velocasses et Veromandos totidem: Aduaticos viginti novem millia, Condrusos, Eburones, Ceraunos, Pemaunos, qui uno nomine Germani appellantur,^g arbitrari ad quadraginta millia.

5. Caesar, Remos cohortatus^h liberaliterque oratione prosecutus, omnem senatum^h ad se convenire, principumque liberos obsidesⁱ ad se adduci jussit. Quae^k omnia ab his¹ diligenter⁶ ad diem facta sunt. Ipse, Divitiacum Aeduum⁷ magno opere cohortatus, docet, quanto opere rei publicae communisque salutis intersit,^a manus hostium distineri,^m ne⁸ cum tanta multitudine uno tempore configendum sit.ⁿ Id fieri posse, si suas copias Aedui in fines Bellovacorum intro-

^a § 140, 5.^f 19, (*militēs*.)^k 38.^b § 140, 6.^g § 141, Obs. 5, 2d.¹ § 126, Obs. 2.^c § 128, R. XXXIV.^h 90, 4.^m 94, 3.^d § 123, R.ⁱ § 97, R.ⁿ § 140, 1, 2d.^e 124, 8.

duxerint,^a et eorum agros populāri cæperint.^a His mandātis, eum ab se dimittit. Postquā omnes Belgārum copias, in unum locum coactas, ad se venīre^b vidit, neque jam longē abesse ab his, quos miserat, exploratoribus,^c et ab Remis cognōvit, flumen^d Axōnam, quod est in extrēmis Remōrum finibus, exercitum^d transducere maturāvit, atque ibi castra posuit. ¹Quæ^e res et latus unum castrorum ripis fluminis muniēbat, et post eum quæ^f essent tuta ab hostibus reddēbat, et, commeātus ab Remis reliquisque civitatibus ut sine periculō ad eum portāri posset,^g efficiēbat. In eo fluminē pons erat. Ibi præsidium ponit, et in altērā parte fluminis Quintum Titurium Sabinum legātum cum sex ²cohortibus reliquit: castra in altitudinem pedum duodēcim vallo,^h fossaque ³duodeviginti pedum,ⁱ munire iubet.

6. Ab his castris oppidum Remōrum, nomīne^k Bibrax, abērat millia passūum octo. Id ex itinere magno impētū^l Belgæ oppugnare cæperunt. Ægrē eo die^l sustentātum est.^m ⁴Gallōrum eādē atqueⁿ Belgārum oppugnatio est hæc. Ubi, circumjectā multitudīne hominū totis mœnibus^o undique lapides in murum jaci cæpti sunt, murusque defensoribus^p nudātus est, testudinē factā portas^q succēdunt murumque subruunt. ⁵Quod tum facilē siēbat. Nam, cū tanta multitudō lapides ac tela conijcerent;⁶ in muro consistendi potestas erat nulli.^r Cū finem oppugnandi nox fecisset, Iccius, Remus, summā nobilitate^s et gratiā inter suos, qui tum oppido ⁷præerat, unus ex his qui legāti de pace ad Cæsārem venērant, nuncios ad eum mittit,^t nisi subsidium sibi^o submittātur, sese diutius sustinere non posse.

7. Eō⁸ de mediā nocte Cæsar, iisdem ducibus usus qui nuncii ab Iccio venērant, Numīdas et Cretas ⁹sagittarios, et

^a 79.^e § 140, 1, 3d.ⁿ § 149, Obs. 6.^b 89, 3.^f § 129, R.^o § 126, R. III.^c § 136, Obs. 5, (ab.)ⁱ § 106, R. VII.^p § 126, R. V.^d 119, 1.^k § 128, R.^q § 112, Obs. 4.^e 38, 2.^l § 131, R. XLI.^r § 112, R. II.^t § 99, Obs. 1, 4th, (loca)^m 66.^s 94, 4.

funditōres Baleāres, subsidio ^a oppidānis mittit: quorum adventu et Remis, ^b cum spe defensiōnis, studium propugnandi accessit, et hostībus ^c eādē de causā spes potiundi ^d oppidi discessit. Itaque, paulisper apud oppidum morāti, ^e agrōsque Remōrum depopulāti, ^f omnībus vicis ædificiisque, ^g quos ^h adire potērant, incēnsis, ad castra Cæsāris omnībus copiis contendērunt, ⁱ et ab ^j millibus ^k passuum minūs duōbus castra posuērunt; quæ castra, ut fumo atque ignībus significabatur, ampliūs millibus ^l passuum octo in latitudīnem patēbant.

8. Cæsar primò, et propter multitudīnem hostium, et propter eximiam opiniōnem virtūtis, ^m prælio supersedēre statuit; quotidie tamen equestribus præliis, quid hostis virtūte posset, et quid nostri audērent, ⁿ sollicitationibus periclitabātur. Ubi nostros non esse inferiōres intellexit, loco ^o pro castris, ad aciem instruendam natūrā opportūno atque idoneo (quod is collis, ubi castra posita erant, paululum ex planitie editus, tantum ^p adversus in latitudīnem patēbat, quantum loci ^q acies instructa occupāre potērat, atque ^r ex utrāque parte latēris dejectus habēbat, ^s et, montem lenīter fastigātus, paulatim ad planitiem redibat), ab utrōque latēre ejus collis transversam fossam obduxit circīter passuum ^t quadringentōrum; et ^u ad extrēmas fossas castella constituit, ibique ^v tormenta collocāvit, ne, cū aciem instruxisset, hostes, ^w quōd tantum multitudīne potērant, ab lateribus pugnantes ^x suos circumvenīre possent. ^y Hoc facto, duābus legionibus, ^z quas proximē conscripsērat, in castris relictis, ut, ^{aa} si quā opus esset, subsidio ^{ab} duci possent, ^{ac} reliquas sex legiōnes pro castris in acie constituit. Hostes item suas copias ex castris eductas instruxērunt.

^a § 114, R. & Obs. 1.

§ 136, R. LII.

^m § 128, Exc.

^b § 112, R. IV.

ⁿ § 132, Obs. 5.

ⁿ § 106, R. VII.

^c § 136, Obs. 5, (ab.)

^h § 120, R. & 6, 3.

^o 17, 2.

^d 112, 5.

ⁱ § 136, Obs. 5, (in)

^p 101, 1.

^e 105, 1.

^k 44, 5.

^q § 140, 1, 2d.

^f § 99, Obs. 6, &

^l § 106, R. VIII.

^r 109, 2.

9. ¹ Palus erat non magna inter nostrum ^a atque hostium exercitum. Hanc si nostri transirent, hostes ² expectabant; nostri autem, si ab illis initium transeundi fieret, ut impeditos ^c aggredierentur, ^b parati in armis erant. Intērim praelio equestri inter duas acies contendebatur. ^d Ubi neutri transeundi initium faciunt, ³ secundiore equitum praelio nostris, ^e Cæsar suos in castra reduxit. Hostes protinus ex eo loco ad flumen Axōnam contendērunt, quod esse post nostra castra ⁴ demonstratum est. Ibi vadis ^f repertis, partem suarum copiarum transducere conati sunt, eo consilio, ut, si possent, ^g castellum, cui ^h præerat Quintus Titurius legatus, expugnarent, pontemque interscindērent; ⁱ ⁵ si minùs potuissent, ^g agros Remōrum popularentur, ^j qui magno nobis ^k usui ad bellum gerendum erant, commeatūque nostros prohibērent.

10. Cæsar, certior factus ab Titurio, omnem equitatum, et levis armaturæ ¹ Numidas, funditores ^m sagittariosque, pontem transducit, atque ad eos contendit. Acriter in eo loco pugnatum est. ^d Hostes ⁶ impeditos nostri in flumine aggressi, magnum eorum numerum occiderunt. Per eorum corpora reliquos, audacissimè transire conantes, multitudīne telorum repulērunt; primos, qui transierant, equitatu circumventos interfecērunt. Hostes, ubi et de expugnando ⁿ oppido, et de flumine transeundo, ⁿ spem se fefellisse intellexērunt, neque nostros in locum iniquiorem progrēdī pugnandi causā vidērunt, atque ipsos res frumentaria deficere cœpit, concilio convocato ^f constituērunt, optimum esse, domum ^o suam quemque reverti, ut, ⁷ quorum in fines primūm Romāni exercitum introduxissent, ^p ad eos defendendos undique convenirent, ^q et potiùs in suis, quàm in aliēnis finibus, decertarent, ^q ⁸ et domesticis copiis ^r rei frumentariæ uterentur. ^q

^a 29, 1.^g § 140, 2.ⁿ 112, 8.^b § 140, 1, 2d.^h § 112, R. I.^o § 130, 4.^c 19, (eos.)ⁱ § 140, 1, 1st.^p § 141, Obs. 8.^d 65.^k § 114, R.^q § 140, 1, 4th.^e § 111, & 19.^l § 106, R. VII.^r § 121, R. XXVI.^f 109.^m 119, 1.

Ad eam sententiam, cum reliquis causis, ¹ hæc quoque ratio eos deduxit, quòd Divitiacum atque Æduos finibus Bellocorum appropinquare ^a cognoverant. ² His ^b persuaderi, ut diutius morarentur, neque suis auxiliis ^c ferrent, non poterat.

11. Eâ re constitutâ, secundâ vigiliâ ^d magno cum strepitu ac tumultu castris ^e egressi, ^f nullo certo ordine neque imperio, ^g cùm sibi ^h quisque primum itineris locum peteret, et domum ⁱ pervenire properaret, fecerunt, ut consimilis fugæ profectio videretur. ^j Hâc re ^k statim, Cæsar, per speculatores cognitâ, ^l insidias veritus, quòd, quâ de causâ discederent, ^m nondum perspexerat, exercitum equitatumque castris ⁿ continuit. Primâ luce, ^o confirmatâ ^p re ^q ab exploratoribus, omnem equitatum, qui novissimum agmen moraretur, ^r præmisit. His ^s Quintum Pedium et Lucium Aurunculeium Cottam legatos præfecit. Titum Labienum legatum cum legionibus tribus subsequi jussit. Hi, novissimos adorti, et multa millia ^t passuum prosecuti, magnam multitudinem eorum fugientium conciderunt, ^u cùm ab extrêmo agmine, ad quos ^v ventum erat, ^w consistèrent, ^x fortiterque impetum nostrorum militum sustinerent; ^y prioresque (quòd abesse a periculo viderentur, neque ullâ necessitatē neque imperio continerentur), exaudito clamore, ^z perturbatis ordinibus, ^{aa} omnes in fugâ sibi præsidium ponerent. ^{ab} Ita sine ullo periculo, ^{ac} tantam ^{ad} eorum multitudinem nostri interfecerunt, quantum fuit diēi spatium: sub occasumque solis destiterunt, seque in castrâ, ut erat imperatum, recepērunt.

12. Postridie ejus diēi Cæsar, priusquàm se hostes ex terrore ac fugâ recipèrent, ^{ae} in fines Suessionum, qui proximi Remis erant, exercitum duxit, et, magno itinere ^{af} confecto, ad oppidum Noviodunum contendit. ^{ag} Id ex itinere oppug-

^a § 96, 2.

^e § 126, 4.

^m § 67, 5, Note.

^b § 126, R. III.

^h 109.

^o § 140, Obs. 4.

^c § 140, 1, 3d.

ⁱ § 140, 5.

^p § 141, Obs. 7.

^d § 131, R. XL.

^k § 141, Obs. 2, 4th.

^q 44, 3.

^f § 136, Obs. 5.

^l § 131, R. XLI.

^r § 140, 4.

^g § 123, R.

^u § 99, Exc. 1.

nāre conātus, quòd ¹ vacuum ab defensoribus esse audiebat propter latitudinem fossæ murique altitudinem, paucis defendentibus, expugnare non potuit. Castris munitis, ² vineas agere, quæque ad oppugnandum usui ³ erant, comparare cœpit. Intèrim omnis ex fugâ Suessionum multitudo in oppidum proximâ nocte convēnit. Celeriter vineis ⁴ ad oppidum actis, ⁵ aggere jacto, ⁶ turribusque constitutis, magnitudine ⁷ operum, quæ neque viderant antè Galli neque audierant, et celeritate Romanorum permoti, legatos ad Cæsarem de deditiōe mittunt, et, ⁸ petentibus Remis ⁹ ut conservarentur, ¹⁰ impetrant.

13. Cæsar, obsidibus ¹ acceptis, primis ² civitatis atque ipsius ³ Galbæ regis duobus filiis, armisque ⁴ omnibus ex oppido traditis, in deditiōnem Suessiones accēpit, exercitumque in Bellovacos duxit. Qui ⁵ cū se suæque omnia in oppidum Bratuspantium contulissent, ⁶ atque ab eo oppido Cæsar cum exercitu circiter millia passuum quinque abesset, omnes ⁷ majores natu, ex oppido egressi, manus ad Cæsarem tendere, et voce significare cœperunt, sese in ejus fidem ac potestatem venire, ⁸ neque contra Populum Romanum armis contendere. Item, cū ad oppidum accessisset, ⁹ castraque ibi poneret, pueri mulieresque ex muro ¹⁰ passis manibus, ¹¹ suo more, ¹² pacem ab Romanis ¹³ petierunt.

14. Pro his Divitiacus (nam post discessum Belgarum, dimissis Æduorum copiis, ¹ ad eum revertērat) ² facit verba: Bellovacos ³ omni tempore in ⁴ fide atque amicitia civitatis Æduæ fuisse: ⁵ impulsos a suis principibus, qui dicērent, ⁶ Æduos, a Cæsare in servitūtem redactos, omnes indignitates contumeliasque perferre, ⁷ et ab Æduis defecisse ⁸ et Populo Romano bellum intulisse. ⁹ Qui ¹⁰ hujus consilii

^a § 114, Obs. 4, (ei.) ^f 32.

^b 109, 2.

^c § 129, R.

^d § 140, 1, 3d.

^e § 97. R. & 19.

^g 39, 6.

^h § 140, Obs. 4. &

74, 8.

ⁱ 96, 2.

^k § 124, Obs. 2.

^l § 145, R. LVIII.

^m 98, 2.

ⁿ § 140, 6.

^o 37, 1st. (eos.)

principes fuissent, quòd intelligērent quantam calamitātem civitatī intulissent,^a in Britanniam profugisse.^b Petēre ¹non solum Bellovācos,^c sed etiam pro his Æduos,^e ut suā clementiā ac mansuetudinē in eos utātur.^d Quod ^e si fecerit, Æduōrum auctoritātem apud omnes Belgas amplificatūrum; quorum auxiliis atque opibus, si qua bella incidērint,^f sustentāre consuērint.”^g

15. Cæsar, honōris^h Divitiāci^h atque Æduōrum causā, sese eos in fidem receptūrum,ⁱ et conservatūrum, dixit: sed, quòd erat civitas magnā inter Belgas auctoritatē,^k atque hominum multitudinē^k præstābat, sexcentos obsidēs poposcit. His traditis, omnibusque armis ex oppido collatis, ab eo loco in fines Ambianōrum pervēnit, qui se^l suāque omnia sine morā deditērunt. Eōrum fines Nervii attingēbant: quorum de naturā moribusque Cæsar cū² quæreret, sic reperiebāt: “Nullum aditum esse ad eos mercatoribus:”^m nihil pati vini, reliquarumque rerum ad luxuriam pertinentium, inferri,ⁿ quòd his rebus^o relanguagescere animos et remitti virtutem existimārent: ^p esse homines feros, magnæque virtutis: ^q increpitāre atque incusāre reliquos Belgas, qui se Popūlo Romāno deditissent,^q patriamque virtutem projecissent: ^r confirmāre, sese neque legātos missūros,^r neque ullam ^s conditionem pacis acceptūros.”¹

16. Cū^{per} eōrum fines triduum iter fecisset, inveniēbat ex captivis, Sabim flumen ab castris suis non ampliūs millia⁷ passuum decem abesse: trans id flumen omnes Nervios consedissee,^b adventumque ibi Romanōrum ⁷ expectāre, unā cum Atrebatibus et Veromanduis, finitimis suis (nam his⁸ utrisque persuasērāt, uti eandem belli fortunam experirentur): ^s expectārī etiam ab his Aduatucōrum copias, at-

^a § 140, 5.

^b 98, 2.

^c § 145, R. LVIII.

^d § 140, 1, 3d.

^e 37, Note. 3, & 38.

^f § 45, III. 2.

^g § 141, Obs. 7.

^h § 106, Obs. 2.

ⁱ 100, 2.

^k § 128, R.

^l 31, 5, Note.

^m § 112, R. II.

ⁿ 90, 4.

^o § 129, R.

^p § 106, R. VII.

^q § 141, R. III.

^r § 132, R.

^s 63, 3.

que esse in itinere: ¹ mulieres, quique ^a per ætatem ad pugnam inutiles viderentur, ^b in eum locum coniecisse, quò propter paludes exercitui ^c aditus non esset.

¶ 17. His rebus cognitis, exploratores centurionesque præmittit, qui locum idoneum castris deligant. ^d Cùmque ex dedititiis Belgis reliquisque Gallis complures, Cæsarem secuti, unà iter facerent; ^e quidam ex his, ut postea ex captivis cognitum est, ² eorum dièrum ^f consuetudine ^f itinèris ^f nostri exercitûs perspectâ, nocte ad Nervios pervenerunt, atque iis ^h demonstrârunt, inter singulas ⁱ legiões impedimentorum magnum numerum intercedere, ³ neque esse quicquam negotii, ^k cùm prima legio in castra venisset, ^l reliquæque legiões magnam ^m parium ^m abessent, hanc sub sarcinjs adoriri: ⁿ ⁴ quâ pulsâ, ^l impedimentisque direptis, ^f futurum, ut reliquæ contrâ consistere non auderent. ^o Adjuvabat ^p etiam eorum consilium qui rem deferébant, quòd Nervii antiquitûs, cùm equitatu ^q nihil ^r possent (neque enim ad hoc tempus ^s ei rei student, sed, quicquid ^t possunt, pedestribus ⁶ valent copiis), quò facilius finitimorum equitatum, si prædandi causâ ad eos venisset, ^u impedirent, ^u tenèris arboribus ^f ⁷ incisis atque inflexis, ⁸ crebris in latitudinem ramis ⁱ et rubis sentibusque interjectis effecèrant, ut instar ^v muri hæ sepe munimenta præbèrent; quò non modò ^w intrâri, sed ^{ne} perspicì quidem posset. His rebus cùm iter agminis nostri impedirètur, non omittendum sibi consilium Nervii æstimaverunt.

18. ⁹ Loci natûra erat hæc, quem ^x locum nostri castris delegèrant. Collis, ab summo æqualiter declivis, ad flumen Sabim, quod suprà nominavimus, vergèbat. Ab eo flumine pari

^a 37, 1st.

^b § 141, Obs. 7.

^c § 112, R. II.

^d § 141, Obs. 2. 4th.

^e § 44, II.

^f 109, 2.

^g § 106, Obs. 2.

^h 63.

ⁱ 26, 5.

^k § 106, R. VIII.

^l 80, 3.

^m § 132, R. XLII.

ⁿ § 144, R. LVI.

^o § 140, 1, 4th.

^p 51.

^q § 129, R.

^r § 116, Obs. 3.

^s 37, 8, Note. 2. & r.

^t § 140, 2.

^u § 140, 1.

^v § 136, Obs. 5. (ad)

^w § 134, Obs. 5.

^x 37, 6, Note. 1

acclivitate collis nascebatur, adversus huic^a et contrarius, passus^b circiter ducentos¹ infimā apertus, ab^c superiore parte silvestris, ut non facile introrsus perspicī posset.^c Intra eas silvas hostes in occulto^d sese continēbant: in aperto loco, ²secundum flumen, paucæ stationes equitum videbantur. Fluminis erat altitudo pedum circiter trium.^e

19. Cæsar, equitatu præmisso, subsequebatur omnibus copiis: ^fsed ratio ordoque agminis ^galiter se habebat, ac ^hBelgæ ad Nervios detulerant. Nam, quod ad hostes appropinquabat, consuetudine suā Cæsar sex legiones ⁱexpeditas ducebat: post eas totius exercitus impedimenta collocarat: inde duæ legiones, quæ proximè conscriptæ erant, totum agmen claudēbant, præsidioque^h impedimentis^h erant. Equites nostri, cum funditoribus sagittariisque flumen transgressi, cum hostium equitatu prælium commiserunt. Cum se illi ^kidentidem in silvas ad suos recipērent,¹ ac rursus ex silvā in nostros impetum facerent,¹ neque^k nostri longiūs, quā^m quem¹ ad finem porrecta ac loca aperta pertinēbant, cedentes insēqui auderent:¹ intērim legiones sex, quæ primæ^m venerant, opère dimenso, castra munire cœperunt. Ubi prima impedimenta nostri exercitus ab his, qui in silvis abditi latēbant, visa sunt (⁷quod tempus inter eos committendi prælii convenērat), ita, ut intra silvas aciem ordinesque constituērant, atque ipsi sese confirmaverant, subito omnibus copiis^f provolaverunt impetumque in nostras equites fecerunt. His facile pulsus ac proturbātis, incredibili celeritate ad flumen decucurrerunt, ut pæne uno tempore et ad silvas, et in flumine, et jam ^gin manibus nostris hostes viderentur.^c Eadem autem celeritate ^gadverso colle ad nostra castra, atque eos,ⁿ qui in opère occupati erant, contendērunt.

^a § 111, R.^f § 132, Obs. 5, (*cum*)^h § 93, 1, (*and not.*)^b § 132, R. XLII.^g § 149, Obs. 6¹ 37, 2d, 5, Note. 1.^c § 140, 1, 1st, (*ita.*)^h § 114, R.^m 96, Obs. 10.^d § 90, 6.¹ § 140, Obs. 4, &ⁿ § 149, R. & Exp.^e § 132, Obs. 3.

74, 3.

20. Cæsari^a omnia uno tempore erant agenda: ^b 1 vexillum proponendum,^b quod erat insigne, cum ad arma concurrere oporteret: signum tubæ dandum: ^b ab opere revocandi ^b milites: ² qui paulo longius ^c aggeris petendi causā processerant, arcessendi: ^b acies instruenda, ^b milites cohortandi, ^b signum dandum: ^b quarum ^d rerum magnam partem temporis brevitas, et ³ successus et incursus hostium impediēbat. His difficultatibus ^e duæ res ⁴ erant subsidio, ^f scientia atque usus militum, quod, superioribus praeliis exercitati, quid fieri oporteret, ⁵ non minus commode ipsi sibi ^h præscribere, quam ab aliis doceri poterant; et quod ab opere ⁶ singulisque ⁱ legionibus ^e singulos ⁱ legatos Cæsar discedere, nisi munitis castris, vetuerat. Hi, propter propinquitatem et celeritatem hostium, ⁶ nihil jam Cæsaris imperium spectabant, sed ⁷ per se, quæ ⁹ videbantur, administrabant.

21. Cæsar, necessariis rebus imperatis, ad cohortandos milites, ⁹ quam ^k in partem fors obtulit, decurrit, et ad legiōnem decimam devenit. Milites non longiore oratione ⁱ cohortatus, quam uti suæ pristinae virtutis memoriam retinerent, ^m neu ⁿ ¹⁰ perturbarentur ^m animo, hostiumque impetum fortiter sustinerent; ^m quod non longius hostes abērant, quam quod telum adjici posset, ^o praelii committendi signum dedit. Atque in alteram partem item cohortandi causā profectus, pugnantis ^p occurrit. Temporis tanta fuit ¹¹ exiguitas, hostiumque tam paratus ad dimicandum animus, ut non modo ad insignia accommodanda, ^q sed etiam ad galeas induendas ^q scutisque tegumenta detrahenda tempus defuerit. Quam quisque in partem ab opere casu devenit, quæque prima signa conspexit, ad hæc constitit, ne, in quærendo suos, pugnandi tempus dimitteret.^a

^a § 126, Obs. 3.^e § 140, 5.ⁿ § 93, 1, (and not,)^b 108, 2.^h 63.^o § 140, 5.^c § 120, Obs. 5.ⁱ 26, 5.^p § 112, R. IV. & 19.^d 38.^k 37, 2d, 5. Note. 1.^q 112, 7.^f § 136, Obs. 5, (in.) ⁱ § 129, R.^r § 140, 1, 1st.ⁱ § 114, Obs. 4, nostris. ^m § 140, 1, 3d.^s § 140, 1, 2d.

22. Instructo exercitu, magis ut loci natūra, ¹ dejectusque collis, et ² necessitas temporis, quam ut rei militaris ratio atque ordo postulabat, cum diversis locis ^a legiones, aliae alia in parte, ^b hostibus resisterent, sepiusque ^c densissimis, ut ante demonstravimus, interjectis ³ prospectus impediretur: ^d neque ^e certa subsidia collocari, neque quid in quaque parte opus esset provideri, neque ab uno omnia imperia administrari poterant. Itaque, ⁴ in tanta rerum iniquitate, fortunae quoque eventus varii sequebantur.

23. Legionis nonae, et decimae milites, ut ⁵ in sinistra parte acie constituerant, pilis emissis, ^f cursu ac lassitudine ⁶ exanimatos, vulneribusque confectos, Atrebates (⁷ nam his ea pars obvenerat), celeriter ex loco superiore in flumen compulerunt; et, transire conantes insecuti gladiis, ^g magnam partem eorum impeditam interfecerunt. Ipsi transire flumen ⁸ non dubitaverunt; et, in locum iniquum progressi, rursus regressos ac resistentes hostes, redintegrato praelio, ^h ⁹ in fugam dederunt. Item alia in parte ⁹ diversae duae legiones, undecima et octava, profligatis Veromanduis, quibuscum erant congressi, ex loco superiore in ipsis ⁱ fluminis ripis praeliabantur. ¹⁰ At tum, totis ferè a fronte, et ab sinistra parte, nudatis castris, ^b cum in dextro cornu legio duodecima, et non magno ab ea intervallo septima constitisset, ^d omnes Nervii confertissimo agmine, ^c duce Boduognato, ^k qui summam imperii tenebat, ad eum locum contendērunt: quorum pars aperto latere legiones circumvenire, pars ¹¹ summum ^l castrorum locum petere, coepit.

24. Eodem tempore equites nostri, ¹² levisque armaturae ^m pedites, qui cum iis una fuerant, ¹³ quos ⁿ primo hostium impetu ^c pulsos dixeram, cum se in castra recipērent, ^d ¹⁴ adver-

^a § 136, Obs. 5, (in.) ^f 104, 1.

^b § 98, Obs. 11, & 25. ^g § 136, R. LII.

^c § 129, R.

^d § 140, Obs. 4.

^e 124, 5.

^h 109, 2.

ⁱ 32, 6.

^k 110, 1.

^l 17, 2.

^m § 106, R. VII.

ⁿ § 145, Obs. 2, &

91, 4.

sis hostibus occurrēbant, ac rursus aliam in partem fugam petēbant: et ¹calōnes, qui ab ²decumānā portā, ac summo jugo collis, nostros ³victōres flumen transisse ⁴conspexērāt, prādandi causā egressi, cū respexissent et hostes in nostris castris ⁵versārī ⁶vidissent, ⁷prācīpītes ⁸fugā sese mandābant. Simul eōrum, qui cum impedimentis veniēbant, clamor fremitusque oriebātur, aliique aliam ⁹in partem perterriti ferebantur.¹⁰ Quibus ¹¹omnibus rebus permōti equītes Trevīri, quorum inter Gallos virtūtis opīnio est singulāris, qui auxilii causā ab civitatē missi ad Cēsārem venērāt, cū multitudīne ¹²hostium castra ¹³nostra complēri, ¹⁴legiōnes ¹⁵premi ¹⁶et pāne circumventas tenēri, calōnes, ¹⁷equītes, funditōres, Numīdas, ¹⁸diversos dissipatosque, in omnes partes fugēre ¹⁹vidissent, ²⁰desperātis nostris rebus, domum contendērunt: Romānos ²¹pulsos ²²superatosque, castris ²³impedimentisque eōrum hostes potītos, ²⁴civitātī renunciavērunt.

25. Cēsar, ab decīmæ legiōnis cohortatiōne ad dextrum cornu profectus, ubi suos ²⁵urgēri, ²⁶signisque in unū locum collātis duodecīmæ legiōnis confertos milītes ²⁷sibi ²⁸ip-sos ²⁹ad pūgnam esse impedimento; ³⁰quartæ cohortis omnibus centurionibus occīsis, signiferōque interfecto, signo amisso, reliquārum cohortium omnibus ferē centurionibus aut vulnerātis aut occīsis, in his ³¹primopīlo, Publio Sextio Bacūlo, ³²fortissimo viro, ³³multis gravibusque vulneribus ³⁴confecto, ut jam se sustinēre non posset, ³⁵reliquos ³⁶esse tardiōres, et nonnullos ab novissimis desēptos ³⁷prælio ³⁸excedēre ac tela vitāre; hostes ³⁹neque ⁴⁰a fronte ex inferiōre loco ⁴¹subeuntes intermittēre, ⁴²et ab utroque latēre instāre; ⁴³et rem ⁴⁴esse ⁴⁵in angusto vidit, neque ullum esse ⁴⁶subsidium, quod submitti posset: ⁴⁷scuto ab novissimis uni milīti ⁴⁸de-

^a § 145. R. LVIII.

^b 98, 2.

^c 96, 2.

^d § 98, Obs. 10

^e § 98, Obs. 11, & 25.

^f 116, 3

^g 38. § 129, R

^h § 126. R. V.

ⁱ § 140, Obs. 4.

^k § 121, R. XXVI

^l 33, 1.

^m § 114, R

ⁿ § 97, R.

^o § 140, 1, 1st. (ita.)

^p 101, 4.

^q § 136, R. LII

^r § 126, R. III. & 5, 1

^s § 141, R. I

tracto (quòd ipse eò sine scuto venērat), in primam aciem processit, centurionibusque nominatim appellātis,^a reliquos cohortātus milītes, ¹ signa inferre et manipūlos laxāre ^b jussit, quò faciliūs gladiis ^c uti possent.^d ² Cujus adventu spe illātā militibus,^e ac redintegrāto animo, cūm ³ pro se quisque,^f in conspectu imperatōris, et jam in extrēmīs suis rebus, opēram navāre cupērent,^g paulum hostium impētus tardātus est.

26. Cæsar cūm septimam legiōnem,^h quæ juxta constitērat, item urgēri ¹ ab hoste vidisset, tribūnos ^k militūm monuit, ut paulatim sese ⁴ legiōnes conjungērent, et conversā signa in hostes inferrent. Quo factō, cūm alius ^l alii subsidium ferrent,^m neque timērent ⁿ ne ¹ aversi ab hoste circumvenirentur, audaciūs resistēre ac fortiūs pugnāre cōpērunt. Intērim milītes legiōnum duārum, quæ in novissimō agmīne præsidiō ^o impedimentis fuērāt, prœlio nunciātō, cursu incitātō, in summo colle ab hostibus conspiciebantur. Et Titus Labiēnus, castris ^p hostium potitus, et ex loco superiōre, quæ res in nostris castris gererentur,^q conspiciātus, decimam legiōnem subsidio ^r nostris misit. Qui,^s cūm ex equitūm et calōnum fugā, quo in loco res esset,^t quantōque in pericūlo et castra, et legiōnes, et imperatōr ^u versarētur,^v cognovissent,^w ⁷ nihil ad celeritatem sibi reliqui fecerunt.

27. Horum adventu tanta rerum commutatio facta est, ut nostri, etiam qui vulneribus confecti procubuissent,^x scutis ^y innixi, prœlium redintegrārent;^z tum calōnes, perterritos hostes conspiciātī, etiam inermes armātis ¹ occurrērent; equites vero, ut turpitudinem fugæ virtūte delērent,² ³ omnibus in locis pugnæ se legionariis militibus præferrent. At hostes, etiam in extrēmā spe salutis, tantam virtutem ⁴ præstit-

^a 104, 1.^b 90, 4, (eos.)^c § 120, R. XXVI. &

7, 5.

^d § 140, 1.^e § 126, R. III.^f § 98. Ex. 4. (illi.)^g § 140, Obs. 4.^h § 145, R. LVII.ⁱ 96, 2.^k 63, 3.^l § 140, Obs. 6.^m § 114, R.ⁿ § 140, 5.^o 39, 2.^p § 102, Obs. 1.^q § 141, Obs. 3.^r § 112, R. I.^s § 140, 1, 1st.^t § 140, 1, 2d.

erunt, ut, cum primi eorum cecidissent, proximi jacentibus insistèrent, atque ex eorum corporibus pugnarent: his dejectis, et coacervatis cadaveribus, ¹ qui ^a superessent, ^b ² uti ex tumulo, tela in nostros conjicerent, ^c et pila intercepta remitterent: ^c ut non nequicquam tantæ virtutis ^d homines judicari debëret ^e ausos esse ^f transire latissimum flumen, ^g ascendere altissimas ripas, subire iniquissimum locum: ^h quæ facilia ex difficillimis animi magnitudo ⁱ redegerat.

28. Hoc proelio facto, ^h et ⁱ prope ad internecionem gente ac nomine Nerviorum redacto, ^h majores natu, quos ⁱ una cum puëris mulieribusque in ^j æstuaria ac paludes collectos ^f dixeramus, hæc pugnâ nunciata, ^h cum victoribus ⁱ nihil ^k impeditum, ^l victis nihil ^k tutum ^l arbitrarentur, omnium, qui supererant, consensu legatos ad Cæsarem miserunt seque ei dederunt; et, in commemorandâ ^m civitatis calamitate, ex sexcentis ad tres senatores, ex hominum millibus sexaginta vix ad quingentos, qui arma ferre possent, ⁿ sese redactos esse ^f dixerunt. ⁷ Quos Cæsar, ut in miseros ac supplices usus ^o misericordiâ videretur, ^o diligentissimè conservavit, suisque finibus atque oppidis uti jussit, et finitimis ^p imperavit, ut ab injuriâ et maleficio se suosque prohiberent.^q

29. Aduatuci, de quibus supra scripsimus, cum omnibus copiis auxilio ^r Nervii venirent, hæc pugnâ ^h nunciata, ex itinere domum revertèrunt; cunctis oppidis castellisque desertis sua omnia in unum oppidum, egregiè naturâ munitum, contulèrunt. Quod ^s cum ex omnibus in circuitu partibus ^g altissimas rupes despectusque haberet, unâ ex parte leniter acclivis aditus, in latitudinem ⁹ non amplius ducentorum pedum, relinquebatur: quem ^s locum duplici altissimo muro munierant; tum magni pondëris ^t saxa et præcæptas trabes

^a 37, (iii.)^e § 136, R. LII.ⁿ § 141, Obs. 7.^b § 140, Obs. 8.^h 109, 2.^o § 145, Obs. 3.^c § 140, 1, 1st.ⁱ § 145, Obs. 2.^p 63, 3.^d § 106, R. VII.^k § 145, R. LVIII. (esse)^q § 140, 1, 3d.^f § 140, 1, 2d.^l § 103, R.^r § 114, R.^g 98, 2, & 94, 1, 2d.^m 112, 8.^s 38, 1, (oppidum.)

in muro collocārant. Ipsi erant ex Cimbris Teutonisque prognāti; qui, cū iter in provinciam nostram atque Italiam facerent, ¹ iis impedimentis, ^a quæ secum agere ac portare non poterant, citra flumen Rhenum depositis custodiæ ^a ex suis ac præsidio ^a sex ~~millia~~ hominum reliquerunt. Hi, post eorum obitum, multos annos ^b a finitimis exagitati, ² cū aliàs bellum inferrent, aliàs illatum defenderent, consensu eorum omnium pace facta, hunc sibi ^a domicilio ^a locum delegerunt.

30. Ac primo adventu ^c exercitus nostri crebras ex oppido excursiones faciebant, parvulisque præliis ^d cum nostris contendebant: postea, vallo ³ pedum ^c duodécim, in circuitu quindécim millium, ^e crebrisque castellis ^d circummuniti, oppido ^f sese continēbant. Ubi, ⁴ vineis actis, ⁵ aggere exstructo, turrim ^b procul constitui viderunt, primū irridere ¹ ex muro, atque increpitare ¹ vocibus, ^d ⁵ quò tanta machinatio ab ^k tanto spatio institueretur ¹ ? quibusnam manibus, ^d aut quibus viribus, præsertim homines tantulæ staturæ ^e (nam plerumque hominibus Gallis, ^a ⁶ præ magnitudine corporum suorum, brevis nostra contemptui est), tanti oneris ^c turrim ^b in muros sese collocare confiderent ? ¹

31. Ubi verò ⁷ moveri, et appropinquare mœnibus ^m viderunt, novā atque inusitatā specie ^d commoti, legatos ad Cæsarem de pace miserunt, qui, ⁸ ad hunc modum locuti: “Non se existimare” Romānos sine ope divinā bellum gerere, ⁿ qui ⁹ tantæ altitudinis ^e machinationes tantā celeritate promovere, ¹⁰ et ex propinquitāte pugnare, possent: se ^o suaque omnia eorum potestati permittēre,” dixerunt. ¹¹ “Unum petere” ac deprecari: si fortè, pro suā clementiā ac mansuetudine, quam ipsi ab aliis audirent, ^p statuisset, Aduatucos

^a § 114, R.

^b § 131, R. XLI.

^c § 131, R. XL.

^d § 129, R.

^e § 106, R. VII.

^f § 136, Obs. 5.

^g 109, 2.

^h § 15, 3.

ⁱ § 144, Obs. 6.

^k § 132, Obs. 5.

^l § 140, 5.

^m § 112, R. IV.

ⁿ 96, 2.

^o 31.

^p § 141, Obs. 7.

esse conservandos, ne se armis despoliaret: ^a sibi omnes ferè finitimos ^b esse inimicos, ^c ac suæ virtuti ^d invidere; a quibus se defendere, traditis armis, ^e non possent. ^f ¹ Sibi ^d præstare, si in eum casum deducerentur, ^g quamvis fortunam a Populo Romano pati, quam ab his ^h per cruciatum interfici, inter quos dominari consuissent.”

32. Ad hæc Cæsar respondit: “Se magis consuetudine ⁱ suâ, quam merito ^j eorum, civitatem conservaturum, ^k si ^l prius, quam murum aries attigisset, ^m se dedidissent: ⁿ sed deditiōnis nullam esse conditionem, ^o nisi armis traditis: se ^p id, quod ^q in Nervii fecisset, ^r facturum, ^s finitimisque imperaturum, ^t ne quam deditiis ^u Populi Romani injuriam inferrent.” ^v Re nunciatâ ad suos, “quæ imperarentur, facere” ^w dixerunt. Armorum magnâ multitudīne ^x de muro in fossam, quæ erat ante oppidum, jactâ, sic ut propè summam ^y muri aggerisque altitudinem acervi armorum adæquarent; et tamen circiter parte ^z tertiâ, ut postea perspectum est, celatâ atque in oppido retentâ, portis ^{aa} patefactis, eo die pace ^{ab} sunt usi.

33. ^{ac} Sub vespèrum Cæsar portas claudi ^{ad} militesque ex oppido exire ^{ae} jussit, ne quam noctu oppidani ab militibus injuriam acciperent. ^{af} Illi, antè inīto, ut intellectum est, consilio, ^{ag} quod, deditiōne ^{ah} factâ, nostros præsidia deducturos, ^{ai} aut denique indiligentiùs servaturos, ^{aj} crediderant, partim cum his, quæ retinuèrant et celavèrant, armis, partim scutis ex cortice factis aut viminibus intextis, quæ subito (ut temporis exiguitas postulabat), pellibus ^{ak} induxèrant, ^{al} tertiâ vigiliâ, ^{am} quâ minimè arduus ad nostras munitiones ascensus videbatur, omnibus copiis ^{an} repente ex oppido eruptionem fecerunt. Celeriter, ut antè Cæsar imperarat, ^{ao} ignibus ^{ap}

^a § 140, 1, 3d.

^b § 126, Obs. 2.

^p § 121, R. XXVI

^b § 145, -R. LVIII.

^j § 129, R.

^q 90, 4.

^c § 103, Obs. 2.

^k 100, 2.

^r § 140, 1, 2d, &

^d § 112, R. IV.

^l 80, 1, & 2.

121, 3.

^e 109, 2.

^m § 140, 6.

^s § 125, R.

^f § 141, Obs. 7.

ⁿ § 123, R.

^t § 131, R. XL.

^g § 140, 2.

^o 94, 3.

^u § 136, Obs. 5, cum.

significatiōe factā, ex proximis castellis eò concursus est,^a pugnatumque^a ab hostibus¹ ita acriter, ut^b a viris fortibus, in extrēmā spe salutis, iniquo loco, contra eos, qui ex vallo turribusque tela jacērent,^c pugnari debuit,^d cū in unā virtute omnis spes salutis consistēret.^e Occisis² ad hominum millibus^f quatuor, reliqui in oppidum rejecti sunt. Postridie ejus diēi, refractis portis,^f cū jam defendēret^o nemo, atque intromissis militibus nostris,² sectiōnem ejus oppidi universam Cæsar vendidit. Ab his, qui emērant, ⁴capitum numerus ad eum relatus est millium quinquaginta trium.

34. Eodem tempore⁵ a Publio Crasso, quem cum legiōne unā miserat ad Venetos, Unellos, Osismios, Curiosolitas, Sesuvios, Aulercos, Rhedōnes, quæ sunt mariūm civitates⁶ Oceanumque attingunt, ⁶certior factus est, omnes eas civitates in ditiōnem potestatemque Populi Romāni esse reductas.^h

35. His rebus^f gestis, omni Galliā^f pacatā, tanta hujus belli ad barbāros opinio perlata est, uti ab his nationibus, quæ trans Rhenum incolērent,¹ mitterentur^k legati ad Cæsarem, quæ se¹ obsides datūras,^m imperata factūras, pollicerentur: ¹quasⁿ legatiōnes Cæsar, quod in Italiam Illyricumque properabat, in itā proximā æstate^o ad se reverti jussit. Ipse in Carnutes, Andes, Turonesque, quæ^p civitates propinquæ his locis^q erant, ubi bellum gesserat, legionibus^f in hiberna deductis, in Italiam profectus est, ob easque res, ex litēris Cæsaris, ⁷diēs^r quindēcim supplicatio decretā est, quod^s ante id tempus accidit nullū.

^a § 67, 1.^b § 140, Obs. 1.^c § 141, Obs. 3.^d § 113, Obs. 1, & 88, 7.^e § 140, Obs. 4.^f 109, 2.¹ § 131, R. XL.^h 98, 6.ⁱ § 141, Obs. 3.^k § 140, 1, 1st.^l § 145, R. LVIII.^m 100, 2.ⁿ 38.^o § 146, Obs. 9.^p 37, 4, & Note. 1.^q § 111, R.^r § 131, R.-XLI.^s 37, Note. 3, 9.^t § 112, R. IV. & 19.

BOOK III.

GENERAL ARGUMENT.

- I. War with the Nantuates, Veragri, and Seduni—Chap. 1-6.
 II. War with the Veneti—Chap. 7-16. III. War with the Unelli—
 Chap. 17-19. IV. Expedition of Crassus into Aquitania—Chap.
 20-27. V. Expedition of Cæsar against the Morini and Menapii—
 Chap. 28-29.

1. Cum in Italiam proficisceretur Cæsar, Servium Galbam cum legione duodecimâ, et parte equitatus, in Nantuâtes, Verâgros, Sedunosque misit, qui ab finibus Allobrogum, et lacu Lemanno, et flumine Rhodano, ad summas^a Alpes pertinent. Causa mittendi fuit, quod iter^b per Alpes, quo, magno cum periculo^a magnisque cum portoriis, mercatores ire consuêrant, patefieri^c volêbat. Huic^d permisit, si opus esse arbitrarêtur, uti in eis locis legionem hiemandi causâ collocaret.^e Galba, secundis aliquot præliis^f factis, castellisque compluribus eorum expugnatis, missis ad eum undique legatis,^g obsidibusque datis, et pace factâ, constituit, cohortes duas in Nantuatibus collocare, et ipse^h cum reliquis ejus legionis cohortibus in vico Veragrorum, qui appellatur Octodurus,^h hiemare: quiⁱ vicus, positus in valle, non magnâ adjectâ planitie, altissimis montibus undique continetur. Cùm^h hic in duas partes flumine divideretur, alteramⁱ partem ejus vici Gallis^k concessit, alteram,ⁱ vacuum ab illis relictam, cohortibus ad hiemandum attribuit. ^lEum locum vallo fossaque munivit.

2. Cùm dies hibernorum complures transissent, frumentumque eò comportari^c jussisset, subito per exploratores certior factus est, ex eâ parte vici, quam Gallis concesserat, omnes^b noctu discessisse,^m montesque, qui impendêrent, a

^a 17, 2.

^e § 140, 1, 3d.

ⁱ § 38, 2.

^b § 145. R. LVIII.

^f 109, 2.

^k § 123, R.

^c 94, 3.

^g 32, 3, (constituit.)

^l 27, 10, Obs..

^d 63.

^h § 103, R.

^m 98, 2.

maximā multitudine Sedunorum et Veragrorum tenēri.^a Id aliquot de causis acciderat, ut subito Galli belli renovandi^b legionisque opprimendae^c consilium caperent: primū, quod legionem, neque eam plenissimam, detractis cohortibus duabus, et compluribus^d singillatim, qui commeātus petendi causā missi erant, absentibus, propter paucitatem despiciebant: tum etiam, quod, propter iniquitatem loci, cum ipsi ex montibus in valem^e decurrerent,^f et tela conjicerent,^g ne primum quidem posse impetum sustinere^h existimabant. Accedebat, quod suos ab se liberosⁱ abstractos^k obsidum nomine dolēbant: et Romanos^l non solum itinerum causā, sed etiam perpetuae possessionis, culmina Alpium occupare conari, et ea loca finitimae provinciae adjungere, sibi^m persuasum habebant.

3, His nuntiis acceptis, Galba, cum neque opus hibernorum, munitionesque plenae essent perfectae, neque de frumento reliquoque commeatu satis esset provisum,^k quod, de ditione facta, obsidibusque acceptis, nihil de bello timendum existimaverat, consilio celeriter convocato, sententias exquirere cepit. Quo^l in consilio, cum tantum repentini periculi praeter opinionem accidisset, ac jam omnia ferè superiōra loca multitudine^m armatorum complēta conspicerentur, neque subsidioⁿ veniri, neque commeātus supportari interclusis itineribus^p possent, prope jam desperatā salutē,^q nonnullae hujusmodi sententiae dicebantur, ut, impedimentis^r relictis, eruptione facta, iisdem itineribus,^s quibus^t eò pervenissent, ad salutem contenderent.^u Majori tamen parti^v placuit, hoc^w reservato ad extremum^x consilio, interim rei eventum experiri et^y castra defendere.

^a 96, 2.^e § 145, R. LVIII.^o § 136, Obs. 5. cum.^b 112, 5.^h 98, 2.^p 109, 2.^c § 140, 1, 4th.ⁱ § 126, R. III.^q § 129, R.^d 19, (*militibus*.)^k 65.^r § 113, R.^e § 140, Obs. 3, &^l 38.^s 19, (*casum*.)^f § 45, II. 1.^m § 126, R. V.^t § 149, R.^g 97, 7.ⁿ § 140, 1, 1st.

4. Brevi spatio interjecto, vix ut his rebus,^a quas constit-
uissent,^b ¹ collocandis ^c atque administrandis ^e tempus darē-
tur,^d hostes ex omnibus partibus, signo dato, decurrere,^e
lapides ²gæsæque in vallum conijcere:^e nostri primo ³intē-
gris viribus fortiter repugnare,^e neque ullum ⁴frustra telum
ex loco superiore mittere:^e ut ^f quæque pars castrorum nu-
dāta defensoribus ⁵ premi videbātur, eò occurrere,^e et auxil-
ium ferre:^e ⁶sed hōc superari,^e quod diuturnitate pugnae
hostes defessi praelio^h excedēbant, alii intēgris viribus suc-
cedēbant: quarum rerum a nostris propter ⁶paucitatem fieri
nihil potērat; ac ⁷non modò ⁱ defesso^k ex pugna excedendi,
sed ne saucio^k quidem ejus loci, ubi constitērat, relinquen-
di,^l ac sui recipiendi,^l facultas dabatur.

5. Cū jam ampliūs horis^m sex continenter pugnaretur,
ac non solūm vires, sed etiam tela, nostrisⁿ deficerent,^o at-
que hostes acriūs instarent, languidioribusque nostris^p val-
scindere, et fossas complere, cœpissent,^o resque esset^o ³jam
⁸ad extrēmum perducta casum, Publius Sextius Bacūlus,
primi pili centurio ⁹quem^q Nervico praelio compluribus con-
fectum vulneribus diximus, et item Caius Volusēnus, tribū-
nus milītum, vir et consilii^r magni et virtutis, ad Galbam
accurrunt, atque unam esse spem salutis docent, si eruptione
factā, extrēmum auxilium experirentur. Itaque,¹⁰ convocā-
tis centurionibus, celeriter milites certiōres facit, paulisper
intermitterent ^s praelium, ac tantummōdo tela missa excipē-
rent,^s seque ex labore reficerent; pōst, dato signo, ex castris
erumpērent,^s atque omnem spem salutis in virtute ponērent.^s

6. Quod jussi sunt, faciunt; ac, subitò ¹¹ omnibus portis
eruptione factā, neque cognoscendi, quid fieret, neque sui^t

^a § 114, R. (*sibi*.)

^b § 141, Obs. 8.

^c 112, 6.

^d § 140, 1, 1st, (*ita*.)

^e § 144, Obs. 6.

^f § 140, Obs. 1.

^g § 126, R. V.

^h § 136, R. LII.

ⁱ § 134, Obs. 5.

^j 19, & § 126, R. III.

^k 112, 5.

^l § 120, R.

^m § 112, R. V.

ⁿ § 140, Obs. 4.

^o 19, & 110.

^p 91, 4.

^q § 106, R. VII.

^r § 140, Obs. 5.

colligendi, hostibus^a facultatem relinquunt. Ita commutata fortuna,^b eos, qui in spem potiundorum^c castrorum venerant, undique circumventos interficiunt, et, ¹ ex hominum millibus amplius^d triginta, quem^e numerum barbarorum ad castra venisse constabat,² plus^d tertia parte interfecta, reliquos perterritos in fugam conjiciunt, ac ne in locis quidem superioribus consistere patiuntur. Sic, omnibus hostium copiis^b fusis, armisque exutis, se in castra munitionesque suas recipiunt. Quo^f prelio facto, quod saepius fortunam tentare Galba nolēbat, atque⁴ alio^g sese in hiberna consilio venisse^h meminērat, aliis^g occurrisse^h rebus vidērat, maxime frumenti commeatusque inopia permotus, postero dieⁱ omnibus ejus vici aedificiis^b incensis, in Provinciam reverti contendit; ac, nullo hoste prohibente, aut iter demorante, incolūmem legionem in Nantuates, inde in Allobrogas, perduxit, ibique hiemavit.

[7] His rebus^b gestis, cum⁴ omnibus de causis Cæsar pacatam Galliam existimāret, superatis Belgis,^b expulsis Germanis, victis in Alpibus Sedūnis, atque ita, inita hieme,^b in Illyricum profectus esset, quod eas quoque nationes^k adire, et regiones cognoscere, volēbat, subitum bellum in Galliā coortum est. Ejus belli hæc fuit causa. Publius Crassus adolescens cum legione septimā proximus^l mare^l Oceānum in Andibus hiemarat. Is, quod in his locis inopia frumenti erat,⁷ præfectos tribunosque militum complices in finitimas civitates, frumenti commeatusque petendi⁷ causā, dimisit: quo in numero erat Titus Terrasidius, missus in Esubios; Marcus Trebius Gallus in Curiosolitas; Quintus Velanius, cum Tito Silio, in Venetos.

8. Hujus est civitatis longē pluriſsimā auctoritas omnis oræ^m maritimæ regionum eārum; quod et naves habent Ve-

^a § 123, R.

^b 109, 2.

^c 112, 5.

^d § 120, Obs. 3.

^e 37, 2d, & Note. 1.

^f 28, 3.

^g § 98, Obs. 12.

^h 98, 2.

ⁱ § 131, R. XL.

^j § 136, R. LII.

^k § 136, Obs. 5, (ad.)

^l § 107, R. X. Exp.

nēti plurimas, quibus in Britanniam navigāre consuērent, et ¹scientiā^a atque usu nauticārum rerum reliquos^b antecēdunt, et, ²in magno impētū maris atque aperto, paucis portūbus interjectis, quos tenent ³ipsi,^c omnes ferē, qui ⁴eo mari uti consuērant, habent ⁵vectigāles. Ab iis fit initium retinendi^d Silii atque Velanii, quōd per eos suos se obsīdes, quos Crasso dedissent, recuperatūros^e existimābant. Horum auctoritatē finitimi adducti (⁶ut sunt Gallōrum subita^f et repentina consilia), eādē de causā Trebium Terrasidiumque retinent, et, celeritē missis legātis,^g per suos principes inter se conjūrant, nihil nisi commūni consilio actūros,^h eundemque ⁷omnis fortunæ exitum esse latūros;ⁱ reliquasque civitatē sollicitant, ut in eā libertatē, quam a majoribus acceperant, permanēre, quā^b Romanōrum servitutē perferre, mallent.¹ Omni orā^k maritimā celeritē ad suam^k sententiam perductā, commūnem legatiōnem ad Publium Crassum mittunt, “si velit^l suos recipēre, obsīdes sibi remittat.”

✕ 9. Quibus de rebus Cæsar ab Crasso certior factus, quōd ipse^m abērat longiūs, ⁹naves intērim longas ædificārī¹ in flumīne Ligēri, quod influit in Oceānum, ¹⁰remīges ex Provinciā institui,¹ nautas gubernatoresque comparārī¹ jubet. His rebusⁿ celeritē administrātis, ipse,^c cū primū per anni tempus potuit, ad exercitū contendit. Venēti, reliquæque item civitatē, cognīto Cæsāris adventu,^g simul quōd, quantum in se^m facinus admisissent,ⁿ intelligēbant (legātōs, quod^o nomen apud omnes natiōnes sanctum inviolatumque semper fuisset, retentos ab se et in vincūla coniectos), ¹¹pro magnitudīne periculī bellum parāre, et maxīmē ea, quæ ad usum navium pertinent, providēre instituunt; ¹²hoc majore spe, quōd multū naturā^p loci confidēbant. ¹³Pedestria

^a § 128, R.^e 109, 2.^m § 28, Foot note, †^b § 116, Obs. 4.^h § 149, Obs. 1.ⁿ § 140, 5.^c 32, 3.^l § 140, 1, 3d, &^o 37, 2d, 4, &^d 112, 5.ⁱ § 137, Obs. 1.

Note. 1.

^e 100, 2.^k 30, 2.^p § 121, Obs. 2.^f § 103, Obs. 2.¹ 90, 1.

esse itinēra concīsa^a æstuariis, ¹ navigatiōnem^d impeditam^a propter inscientiam locōrum paucitatemque portuum sciēbant: ² neque^b nostros exercītus^d propter frumenti inopiam diutius apud se morārī posse, confidēbant: ac jam, ut omnia contra ³ opiniōnem accidērent,^c tamen se^d plurimum navibus posse: ^e Romānos^d neque ullam facultātem habēre^e navium, neque eōrum locōrum, ubi bellum gestūri essent,^f vada, portus, insūlas novisse: ^g ac ⁴ longē aliam esseⁱ navigatiōnem in conclūso mari, atque^h in vastissimo atque apertissimo Oceāno, perspiciebant. His inītis consiliis, oppida muniant, frumenta ex agris in oppida comportant, naves in Venetiam, ubi Cæsārem primū bellum gestūrum^k constābat, quā^l plurimas possunt, cogunt. Socios sibi ad id bellum Osismios, Lexovios, Nannētes, Ambiliātos, Morīnos, Diablintes, Menapios adsciscunt: auxilia ex Britannia, quæ contra eas regiōnes posita est, arcessunt.

10. ⁵ Erant hæc difficultātes belli gerendi, quas supra ostendimus; sed multa^m Cæsārem tamen ad id bellum incitābant: ⁶ injuriæⁿ retentōrum^o equitū Romanōrum; ⁷ rebellio facta post deditiōnem; defectioⁿ datis obsidibus; tot civitātum conjuratio; ⁸ in primis, ⁹ ne, hāc parte neglectā, reliquæ natiōnes ⁹ idem^p sibi licēre arbitrarentur. Itaque cū intelligēret, omnes fere Gallos^d ¹⁰ novis rebus^q studēre,ⁱ et, ad bellum mobiliter celeriterque excitārī,^e omnes autem homīnes ¹¹ naturā libertāti^q studēre, et ¹² condiōnem servitūtis odisse; priusquam plures civitātes conspirārent,^r partiendum^d sibi^s ac latiūs distribuendum exercītum putāvit.

11. Itaque Titum Labiēnum legātum in Treviros, qui proximi Rheno flumīni sunt, cum equitātu mittit. Huic mandat, Remos reliquosque Belgas adeat, atque in officio contineat;

^a § 98, 2.

^g § 84, 3.

ⁿ § 97, R.

^b § 93, 1, (and—not.)

^h § 149, Obs. 6.

^o § 146, Obs. 2.

^c § 140, 3.

ⁱ 96, Exc. I. 9.

^p § 113, Obs. 4. *facere*

^d § 145, R. LVIII.

^k 100, 2.

^q § 112, R. V.

^e 96, 2.

^l § 134, Obs. 6, 3d.

^r § 140, 4.

^f § 140, 5, & § 79. 8.

^m 19, (negotia.)

^s § 147, R. & 113, 5

Germanosque, qui ¹ auxilio ^a a Belgis arcessiti ^b dicebantur, si per vim navibus flumen transire conentur, prohibeat.^c Publium Crassum cum cohortibus legionariis duodécim, et magno número equitatus, in Aquitaniam proficisci jubet, ne ex his nationibus auxilia in Galliam mittantur,^d ac tantæ nationes conjungantur.^d Quintum Titurium Sabinum legatum cum legionibus tribus in Unellos, Curiosolitas, Lexoviosque mittit, ² qui ^e eam manum destinendam ^f curet. Decimum Brutum adolescentem classi, Gallicisque navibus, quas ex Pictonibus et Santonis reliquisque pacatis regionibus convenire jussérat, præficit, et, cum primum possit,^g in Venetos proficisci jubet. Ipse eò pedestribus copiis contendit.

12. Erant ejusmodi ferè ³ situs oppidorum, ut, posita ⁴ in extrémis lingulis promontoriisque, neque pedibus ¹ aditum habèrent,^h ⁵ cum ex alto se æstus incitavisset,^g quod bis accidit semper horarum viginti quatuor spatio, neque navibus,ⁱ quòd, rursus ⁶ minuente æstu, ⁷ naves in vadis afflicterentur.^k Ita ⁸ utràque re ¹ oppidorum oppugnatio impediébatur; ac, si quando magnitudine ¹ operis fortè superati, extruso mari ⁹ aggere ¹ ac molibus, atque his ferme oppidi mœnibus ^m adæquatis, suis fortunis ⁿ desperare cœperant, magno número navium ¹⁰ appulso, cujus rei summam facultatem habebant, sua deportabant omnia, seque in proxima oppida recipiebant. Ibi se rursus iisdem opportunitatibus ¹ loci defendebant. Hæc eo facilius magnam partem ^o æstatis faciébant, quòd nostræ naves tempestatibus ¹ detinebantur; summæque erat vasto atque aperto mari,¹¹ magnis æstibus,¹ raris ac prope nullis portubus,¹ difficultas navigandi.

13. Namque ipsorum naves ad hunc modum ¹² factæ armatæque erant. Carinæ¹³ aliquanto planiöres, quàm ^p nos-

^a § 114, R. & Obs. 4. ^f 108, 4.

^m § 126, R. III.

^b 92, 2.

^g § 140, Obs. 4.

ⁿ § 136, Obs. 5.

^c § 140, 1, 3d.

^h § 140, 1, 1st.

^o § 131, R. XLI.

^d § 140, 1, 2d.

ⁱ § 123, R.

^p § 149, R. Sup. ca-

^e § 141, Obs. 2, 4th,
and 40.

^k § 139, 2, & 76, 2.

rina

¹ § 129, R.

trārum navium, quo facilius vada ac decessum æstus¹ excipere possent: ^a proræ admōdum erectæ, atque item puppes, ad magnitudinem fluctuum tempestatumque accommodatæ: naves totæ factæ ex robore,^b ² ad quamvis vim et contumeliam perferendam: ^c transtra ³ pedalibus in latitudinem trabibus^b confixa clavis ferreis, ⁴ digiti pollicis crassitudine: ^d anchoræ, pro funibus, ferreis catēnis revinctæ: ^e pelles pro velis, alutæque tenuiter confectæ, sive ^e propter lini inopiam atque ejus usūs inscientiam, sive eo,^f quod est magis verisimile, quòd tantas tempestates ^e Oceāni tantosque impētus ventōrum sustinēri,^h ac tanta onēra^e navium ⁶ regi^h velis non satis commōdē, arbitrabantur. ⁷ Cum his navibus nostræ classiⁱ ejusmodi congressus erat, ut unā celeritate^k et pulsu remōrum præstāret, ⁸ reliqua, pro loci naturā, pro vi tempestatum, illisⁱ essent aptiōra et accommodatiōra: ⁹ neque enim his ^m nostræ rostroⁿ nocēre potērant; tanta in eis erat firmitudo: neque propter altitudinem faciliè telum adiciebātur; et eādē de causā minūs commōdē ¹⁰ copulisⁿ continebantur. Accedēbat, ut, cū ¹¹ sævire ventus cōpisset et se vento dedissent, et ^o tempestatem ferrent facilius, et ^o in vadis consistērent ^p tutiūs, et, ab æstu derelictæ, nihil^q saxa et cautes timērent: quarum rerum omnium nostris navibus ^r ¹² casus erant extimescendi.

14. Compluribus expugnātis oppidis, Cæsar, ubi intellexit, frustra tantum labōrem^s sumi, neque hostium fugam^s captis oppidis reprimi, ¹³ neque his nocēri posse,^s statuit expectandum classem. Quæ ubi convēnit, ac primū ab hostibus visa est, circiter ducentæ et viginti naves eōrum ¹⁴ paratissimæ, atque omni genēreⁿ armōrum ornatissimæ, profectæ ex portu, nostrisⁱ adversæ constitērunt: neque satis

^a § 140, 1.^b § 128, Obs. 2.^c 112, 7.^d § 106, R. VII. & 6, 1.^e 124, 3.^f § 129, R.^g § 145, R. LVIII.^h 94, 3.ⁱ § 112, R. II.^k § 128, R.^l § 111, R.^m § 112, R. V.ⁿ § 129, R.^o 124, 1.^p § 140, 1, 4th.^q § 122, Obs. 6.^r § 126, Obs. 3.^s § 113, R. & Obs. 1.

¹Bruto,^a qui classi^b præerat, vel tribūnis^a militū centuri-
onibusque, quibus^c singulæ naves erant attributæ, constabat,
quid agerent,^d aut² quam rationem pugnae, insisterent.^d
Rostro^e enim noceri non posse^f cognoverant; turribus autem
excitatis, tamen has altitudo puppium ex barbâris navibus
superâbat; ³ ut neque ex inferiøre loco satis commodè tela
adjici possent,^g et missa ab Gallis ⁴ gravius acciderent. Una
erat magno usui^h res præparata a nostris, ⁵ falcesⁱ præacutæ,
insertæ affixæque longuriis,^c non absimili^k formâ^l muralium
falcium.^m His^e cū funes, qui antennis ad malos destinā-
bant,ⁿ comprehensi adductique erant, navigio remis^e incitato
prærumpebantur. Quibusⁿ abscissis, antennæ necessariò
concidēbant, ut, cū omnis Gallicis navibus^o spes in velis
armamentisque consisteret, his ereptis, omnis usus navium
uno tempore eriperetur.^g Reliquum erat certamen positum
in virtute, quâ nostri milites faciliè superâbant, atque eo mag-
is, quòd in conspectu Cæsaris atque omnis exercitus res
gerebatur, ut nullum paulo fortius factum ⁶ latere posset:^g
omnes enim colles ac loca superiõra, unde erat propinquus
despectus in mare, ab exercitu tenebantur.

15. Dejectis, ut diximus, antennis, ⁷ cū^p singulas^q binæ
ac ternæ naves circumsteterant, milites summâ vi^e ¹⁰ tran-
scendere in hostium naves contendēbant. Quod^r postquam
barbâri fieri animadvertērunt, expugnâti compluribus navibus,
cū ei rei^c nullum reperirētur auxilium, fugâ^e salutem
petere contendērunt: ac, jam conversis in eam partem navibus,
¹¹ quò ventus ferēbat, tanta subitò malacia ac tranquillitas,
extitit, ut se ex loco movere non possent. Quæ quidem
res ad negotium conficiendum maximè fuit opportuna:
nam singulas^q nostri consecrati expugnavērunt, ut perpaucæ

^a § 113, R.^h § 140, 1, 2d.^m § 111, Obs. 2.^b § 112, R. I.ⁱ § 114, R. & Obs. 4.ⁿ 38, 5.^c § 126, R. III.^l § 97, R.^o § 110, Obs. 1, R.^d § 140, 5.^k 16, 2.^p § 140, Obs. 3.^e § 129, R.¹ § 106, R. VII. or^q 26.^f § 113, Obs. 1.^r § 128, R.^r § 145, R. & 38, 4.

ex omni numēro, noctis interventu, ad terram pervenērunt, cūm^a ab horā ferē quartā usque ad solis occāsū pugnārētur.

16. Quo^b praelio bellum Venetōrum totiusque orae maritimae confectum est. Nam, cūm omnis juvenus, omnes etiam^c graviōris aetātis,^d in quibus aliquid consilii^e aut dignitātis fuit, eō convenērunt; tum, navium quod^f ubique fuērat, unum in locum coēgērunt: quibus^g amissis, reliqui, neque quō se recipērent^h neque quemadmodū oppida defendērent,ⁱ habēbant. Itaque se suāque omnia Cēsāri deditērunt. ² In quos eo gravius Cēsar vindicandū^k statuit, quo diligentius in reliquum tempus a barbāris jus legatōrum conservarētur.^l Itaque, omni senātu^m necāto, reliquosⁿ sub coronā vendidit.

17. Dum hēc in Venētis geruntur, Quintus Titurius Sabinus cum iis copiis, quas a Cēsāre accepērat, in fines Unelōrum pervēnit. His praeerat Viridōvix, ac summam imperii tenēbat eārum omnium civitātum, quae defecērunt, ex quibus exercitū magnasque copias coēgērat. ⁴ Atque his paucis diēbus^k Aulerci Eburovices, Lexovii^lque, senātu^m suo interfecto, quōd auctōres belli esse nolēbant, portas clausērunt seque cum Viridovīce conjunxērunt; magnāque praeerea multitūdō undique ex Galliāⁿ perditōrum hominū latronumque convenērunt, quos spes praeda^ondi, studiumque bellandi, ab agriculturā et quotidiāno labōre revocābat. Sabinus idoneo^p omnibus rebus loco^q castris sese tenēbat, cūm Viridōvix contra eum duōrum millium spatio consedisset, quotidieque productis copiis^r pugnandi potestātem facēret;^s ut jam non solūm hostibus^t in contemtiōnem Sabinus venīret,^u sed etiam nostrōrum militū vocibus^v nonnihil carperētur: tantamque opiniōnem timōris prae^wbuit, ut jam ad vallum castrōrum hostes accedēre audērent.^x Id eā de causā faciēbat,

^a § 140, Obs. 3.

^f 109, 2.

^l 16.

^b 38, 9, & § 129, R.

^g § 140, 5

^m § 136, Obs. 5, (in.)

^c § 106, R. VII.

^h 113, 5.

ⁿ § 110, Obs. 1, R.

^d § 106, R. VIII.

ⁱ § 140, 1.

^o § 140, 1, 2d.

^e § 106, Obs. 10.

^k § 131, R. XLI.

^p § 140, 1, 1st.

quòd cum tantâ multitudīne hostium, præsertim ¹eo^a absente, qui summam imperii tenēret,^b nisi æquo loco, aut opportunitate aliq̄uâ datâ, legâto^c dimicandum non existimabat.

18. ²Hâc confirmâtâ opiniōne timōris, idoneum quendam homīnem et callidum delēgit, Gallum, ex his, quos auxilii causâ secum habēbat. Huic ⁴ magnis præmiis pollicitationibusque persuādet, utl ad hostes transeat ;^e et, quid fieri velit,^f edōcet. Qui,^g ubi pro perfūgâ ad eos venit, timōrem Romanōrum ³propōnit : “quibus angustiis^h ipse Cæsar a Venētis premātur,”ⁱ docet : ⁴neque longiūs abesse, quin proximâ nocte Sabīnus clam ex castris exercitum edūcat,^l et ad Cæsārem auxilii ferendi causâ proficiscātur.”¹ Quod^k ubi auditum est, conclamant omnes, occasiōnem negotii bene gerendi amittendam non esse,^l ⁵ad castra iri oportēre. Multæ res ad hoc consilium Gallos hortabantur : superiorum diērum Sabīni cunctatio,^m ⁶perfūgæ confirmatio, inopia cibariōrum, cui reiⁿ parum diligenter ab iis erat provīsum, spes Venetici belli, et quòd ferè libenter homīnes id, quod volunt, credunt. His rebus^h adducti, non priūs Viridovicem reliquosque duces ex concilio dimittunt, quàm ab his sit^o concessum, arma utl capiant^p et ad castra contendant. Quâ re concessâ, læti, ut explorâtâ victoriâ, sarmentis virgultisque collectis, ⁷quibus^q fossas Romanōrum compleant,^q ad castra pergunt.

19. Locus erat castrōrum edītus, et paulâtīm ab imo acclivis circīter passus^r mille. Huc magno cursu contendērunt, ut ⁸quàm minīmum spatii^a ad se colligendos armandosque Romānis darētur, ⁹exanimatīque pervenērunt. Sabīnus, suos hortātus, cupientībus signum dat. Impeditis hostībus propter ea, quæ ferēbant, onēra, subitò duābus portis erup-

^a § 110.^b § 141, Obs. 8.^c § 147, R. & 113.^d § 123, R. & 63.^e § 140, 1, 3d.^f § 140, 5.^g § 39, 5.^h § 129, R.ⁱ § 140, 3.^k 38.^l 108, 4.^m § 97, R.ⁿ § 113, R.^o § 140, 4.^p § 140, 1, 4th.^q § 141, Obs. 2. 4th.^r § 132, R. XLII.^s § 106, R. VIII.

tionem fieri jubet. Factum est opportunitate loci, hostium inscientiâ ac defatigatione, virtute militum, superiorum pugnarum exercitatione, ut ne unum quidem nostrorum impetum ferrent,^a ac statim terga vertèrent. Quos^b impeditos¹ integris viribus^c milites nostri consecuti, magnum numerum eorum occiderunt; reliquos equites consecuti, paucos, qui ex fuga evaserant, reliquerunt. Sic, uno tempore, et^e de navali pugna² Sabinus, et de Sabini victoriâ Cæsar certior factus; civitatesque omnes se statim Titurio dederunt. Nam, ut^f ad bella suscipienda^g Gallorum alacer ac promptus est animus, sic mollis ac³ minimè resistens ad calamitates perferendas^h mens eorum est.

20. Eodem ferè tempore, Publius Crassus, cum in Aquitaniam pervenisset, quæ pars,^h ut ante dictum est, et regionum latitudine,ⁱ et multitudine¹ hominum, ⁴ex tertiâ parte Galliæ est æstimanda, cum intelligeret in his locis sibi^k bellum gerendum, ubi paucis antè annis Lucius Valerius Præconinus, legatus, exercitu pulso, interfectus esset,¹ atque unde Lucius Manilius, proconsul, impedimentis amissis profugisset,¹ ⁵non mediocrem sibi diligentiam^m adhibendamⁿ intelligebat. Itaque re frumentariâ provisâ, auxiliis equitatuque comparato,^o multis præterea viris fortibus Tolosâ,^p Carcasone, et Narbone, quæ sunt civitates Galliæ Provinciæ, finitimæ his regionibus, nominatim evocatis, in Sotiätum fines exercitum introduxit. Cujus adventu cognito, Sotiätes, magnis copiis coactis, equitatuque, ⁶quo plurimum valébant, in itinere agmen nostrum adorti, primum equestre prælium commiserunt: deinde, equitatu suo pulso, atque insequentibus nostris, subito pedestres copias, quas in convalle in insidiis collocaverant, ostenderunt. Hi, nostros disjectos adorti, prælium renovarunt.

^a § 140, 1, 4th.^b 38.^c § 129, R.^d 105.^e 124, 1.^f 124, 20.^g 112, 7.^h 37, 2d, 4, Note. 1.ⁱ § 128, R.^k § 147, R. LXI.¹ § 141, Obs. 8.^m § 145, R.ⁿ 108, 4.^o § 98, Obs. 4.^p § 136, R. LII.

21. Pugnatum est diu atque acriter, cum Sotiates, superioribus victoriis^a freti, in suam^b virtute totius Aquitaniam salutem positam putarent; ^c nostri autem, quid sine imperatore, et sine reliquis legionibus, adolescentulo duce,^d efficere possent, perspicere cuperent.^e Tandem, confecti vulneribus, hostes terga vertere.^e Quorum^f magno numero interfecto, Crassus ex itinere oppidum Sotiatum oppugnare cepit. Quibus^g fortiter resistentibus, vineas turrese egit. Illi, alias eruptione tentata, alias cuniculis ad aggere vineasque actis (¹ cuius rei^h sunt longe peritissimi Aquitani, propterea quod multis locis apud eosⁱ arariae secturae sunt), ubi diligentiam nostrorum^j nihilⁱ his rebus profici posse^k intellexerunt, legatos ad Crassum mittunt, seque in ditionem ut recipiat petunt. Quam^l re impetrata, arma tradere jussi, faciunt.

22. Atque, in ea re omnium nostrorum intentis animis, aliam ex parte oppidi Adcantuannus, qui summam imperii tenebat, cum sexcentis devotis, quos illi soldurios appellant (⁴ quorum haec est conditio, ut omnibus in vita commodis¹ una cum his fruantur,^m quorum se amicitiae^o dediderint; ⁿ si quid iis per vim accidat, aut eundem casum una ferant,^m aut sibi^o mortem consciscant: ^m neque adhuc hominum memoria repertus est quisquam, qui, eo interfecto, cuius se amicitiae^o devovisset, mortem recusaret),^p cum iis Adcantuannus, eruptionem facere conatus, clamore ab ea parte munitiois sublato, cum ad arma milites concurrissent,^c vehementerque ibi pugnatum esset,^c repulsus in oppidum, tamen uti eadem ditionis conditione¹ uteretur,^q ab Crasso impetravit.

23. Armis obsidibusque acceptis, Crassus in fines Vocationum et Tarusatum profectus est. Tum vero^r barbari commoti, quod oppidum,^r et naturam^s loci et manu^s munitum,

^a § 119, R.^b 30, 2.^c § 140, Obs. 4.^d 110, 1.^e § 144, Obs. 6.^f 38.^g 38, & 109.^h § 107, R. IX.ⁱ § 128, Exc.^j § 145, Obs. 3, (se.)^k § 121, R. XXVI.^l § 140, 1, 1st.^m § 141, Obs. 8.ⁿ § 123, R.^o § 141, Obs. 3.^p § 140, 1, 3d.^q § 145, R.^r § 129, R.

paucis diēbus,^a quibus^a eò ventum erat,^b expugnātum^c cognovērant, legātos quoquo versus dimittēre, conjurāre, obsides inter se dare, copias parāre cōpērunt. Mittuntur etiam ad eas civitatē legāti, quæ sunt ¹citeriōris Hispaniæ,^d finiti mæ Aquitaniæ: ^e inde auxilia ducesque arcessuntur. Quorum ^f adventu magnā cum auctoritatē, et magnā cum hominū multitudinē, bellum gerēre conantur. Duces verò ii deliguntur, qui unā cum Quinto Sertorio omnes annos^e fuērant, summamque scientiam rei militāris habēre existimabantur. Hi consuetudinē Populi Romāni ² loca capēre, castra munire, commeatibus nostros intercludēre instituunt. Quod ^f ubi Crassus animadvertit, suas copias propter exiguitatē non ³ facilē didūci,^h hostem et vagārī ¹ et vias obsidēre ¹ et castris satis præsidiū relinquiēre,¹ ob eam causam minū com-mōdē frumentum commeatumque sibi^k supportārī; ^h ⁴ in dies hostium numērū augēri; non cunctandum existimāvit, quin pugnā decertāret.¹ ⁵ Hāc re ad consilium delātā, ubi omnes ⁶ idem sentīre¹ intellexit, postērū diem pugnæ constituit.

24. Primā luce, productis omnibus copiis, ⁷ duplici acie institūtā, ⁸ auxiliis in mediā aciem coniectis, quid hostes consilii^m capērent^a expectābat. Illi, etsi propter multitudinē, et vetērem belli gloriā, paucitatemque nostrōrum, se tutō dimicatūros^o existimābant, tamen tutius^p esse arbitrabantur, obsessis viis, commeātu interclūso, sine ullo vulnēre victoriā potīri: et, si propter inopiam rei frumentariæ Romāni sese recipēre cōpissent,^q impedītos in agmīne et sub sarcīnis, inferiōres animo,^r adorīri cogitābant. Hoc consilio probāto ab ducibus, productis Romanōrum copiis, sese castris^s tenēbant. Hāc re perspectā Crassus, ⁹ cū suā cunctatiōne atque opiniōne timōris hostes nostros milītes alacri-

^a § 131, R. XLI. Obs. 3. ^r § 131, R. XLI.

^b 67, 5, Note.

^h 94, 3.

ⁿ § 140, 5.

^c 98, 2.

¹ 96, 2.

^o 100, 1.

^d § 108, R. XII.

^k § 126, R. III.

^p § 98, Obs. 6.

^e § 111, R.

² § 140, 3.

^q § 140, 2.

^f 38.

³ § 106, R. VIII.

^r § 128, R.

^s § 136. Obs. 5, (in.)

ōres ad pugnandum^a effecissent;^b atque omnium voces audirentur,^b expectārī^c diutius non oportere, quin^d ad castra irētur;^c cohortātus suos, omnibus cupientibus, ad hostium castra contendit.

25. Ibi cūm alii^e fossas complērent,^b alii^e multis telis con-
jectis, defensōres vallo^f munitionibusque depellērent, auxili-
aresque, quibus^g ad pugnam non multūm Crassus confidē-
bat, lapidibus^h telisque subministrandis,ⁱ et ad aggērem ces-
pitibus comportandis, speciem atque opiniōnem pugnantium^k
præbērent;^b cūm itē ab hostibus^l constanter ac non timidē
pugnarētur,^b telāque ex loco superiōre missa non frustra ac-
cidērent;^b equites, circumītis hostium castris, Crasso renun-
ciāvērunt, non eādē esse diligentīā ab^m decumānā portā
castra^l munīta, facilemque adītum habēre.

26. Crassus, equitūm præfectos cohortātus, ut magnis
præmiisⁿ pollicitationibusque suos excitārent, quid fieri velit
ostendit. Illi, ut erat imperātum, eductis quatuor cohorti-
bus, quæ, præsidio^m castris^m relictæ, ⁿ intrītæ ab labōre
erant, et ^o longiōreⁿ itinēre^h circumductis, ne ex hostium
castris conspici possent,^o omnium oculis mentibusque ad
pugnam intentis, celerīter ad eas, quas diximus, munitiōnes
pervenērunt, atque, his prorūtis, prius in hostium castris
constitērunt, quā^p planē ab iis vidēri,^r aut, quid rei^p ger-
erētur,^s cognosci^r posset. Tum vero, clamōre ab eā parte
audito, nostri redintegrātis viribus,^h quod^s plerumque in spe
victoriæ accidere consuevit, acrius impugnāre cōpērunt.
Hostes undique circumventi, desperātis omnibus rebus,^t se
per munitiōnes dejicere et fugā^h salutē petere^u intendē-
runt. Quos^u equitātus apertissimis campis^v consecrātus,

^a § 147, Obs. 4.^b § 129, R.^p § 106, R. VIII.^b § 140, Obs. 4.^l § 147, R. LXII.^q § 140, 5.^c 67, Note.^k 19, (*militum*.)^r 87.^d § 140, 3.^l § 145, R. LVIII.^s 37, 9, Note. 3.^e § 98, Obs. 12.^m § 114, R.^t 109, 2.^f § 136, R. LII.ⁿ § 120, Obs. 5.^u 38.^g § 112, R. V.^o § 140, 1, 2d.^v § 136, Obs. 5, (*in*.)

ex millium quinquaginta numēro, quæ^a ex Aquitaniâ Cantabrisque convenisse^b constābat, vix quartâ parte relictâ^c multâ^c nocte^d se in castra recēpit.

27. Hâc auditâ pugnâ,^e magna pars Aquitaniæ sese Crasso^f dedit, obsidesque ultro misit: quo^g in numēro fuērunt Tarbelli, Bigerriōnes, Preciāni, Vocātes, Tarusātes, Elusātes, Garītes, Ausci, Garumni, Sibuzātes, Cocosātes. Paucæ ultimæ natiōnes, anni tempore^h confisæ, quod hiems subērat, hoc facere neglexērunt.

28. Eōdem ferè tempore^d Cæsar, etsi prope exacta jam æstas erat, tamen, quod, omni Galliâⁱ pacatâ, Morīni Menapiique^j superērunt, qui^k in armis essent,^k neque^l ad eum unquam legātos de pace misissent,^k arbitrātus, id bellum celeriter confici posse, eò exercitum adduxit: ^qqui longè aliâ ratiōne, ac reliqui^m Galli, bellum agere instituērunt. Nam quod intelligēbant, maxīmas natiōnes,ⁿ quæ prælio contendissent,^o pulsas^b superatasque esse,^b ⁴continentesque silvas ac palūdes habēbant, eò se suâque omnia contulērunt. Ad quarum^s initium silvārum cū Cæsar pervenisset,^p castrâque munire instituisset,^p neque^l hostis intērim visus esset,^p dispersis in opère nostris,ⁱ subitò ex omnībus partibus silvæ evolavērunt et in nostros^q impētum fecērunt. Nostri^s celeriter arma cepērunt, eosque in silvas repulērunt, et, compluribus^o interfectis, ⁵longius^r impeditioribus locis secūti, paucos ex suis deperdidērunt.

29. Reliquis deinceps diēbus^s Cæsar silvas cædere instituit, et, ne, quis ⁶inermibus imprudentibusque militibus^t ab latere impētus fieri^m posset,ⁿ omnem eam ⁷materiam, quæ

^a § 145, R. & Obs. 2.	^h § 121, Obs. 2.	^p § 140, Obs. 4.
^b 98, 2.	ⁱ 109, 2.	^q 19, 2.
^c 17, 1.	^k § 141, R. V, (<i>soli.</i>)	^r 22, 1.
^d § 131, R. XL.	^l § 93, 1.	^s § 131, R. XLI.
^e 109, 2.	^m § 87, 6.	^t § 126, R. III.
^f § 123, R.	ⁿ § 145, R.	^u § 140, 1, 2d
^g 38.	^o § 141, Obs. 7.	

erat cæsa, ¹ conversam ad hostem collocābat, et pro vallo ad utrumque latus extruēbat. Incredibili celeritatē ^a magno spatio ^b paucis diēbus ^c ² confecto, cū jam pecus atque ³ extrēma ^d impedimenta ab nostris tenerentur, ^e ipsi ^f densiōres silvas petērent; ejusmōdi sunt tempestātes consecūtæ, ut opus necessario intermitterētur, ^g et, continuatiōne ^h imbrium diutius ⁱ sub pellibus milites continēri ^j non possent. ^k Itaque vastātis omnibus eōrum agris, ^l vicis ædificiisque incensis, Cæsar exercitum reduxit, et in Aulercis, Lexoviisque, reliquis item civitatibus, ^m quæ proximè bellum fecerant, in hibernis collocāvit.

^a § 129, R.^d 17, 2.^e § 140, 1, 1st.^b 109, 2.^f § 140, Obs. 4.^h 87, 6.^c § 131, R. XLI.ⁱ 32, 3.

BOOK IV.

GENERAL ARGUMENT.

I. War with the Usipetes and Tenchtheri—Chap. 1–15. II. Cæsar's bridge over the Rhine, and his crossing into Germany—Chap. 16–19. III. Cæsar passes into Britain.—A battle—surrender of the Britains, and subsequent revolt.—Chap. 20–36. IV. War with the Morini and Menapii—Chap. 37–38.

1. ¹ Ea, quæ secūta est, hième,^a qui fuit annus ² Cneio Pompeio,^b Marco Crasso consulibus, Usipētes Germāni, et item Tenchthēri, magnā cum multitudīne homīnum, flumen Rhenum transiērunt, non longè a mari, ³ quo Rhenus influit. Causa transeundi fuit, quòd, ab Suēvis complūres annos ^c exagitāti, bello premebantur et agricultūrā^d prohibebantur. Suevōrum gens est longè maxīma et bellicosissīma Germanōrum^e omnium. Hi centum pagos habēre dicuntur, ex quibus quotannis singūla ^f millia armatōrum bellandi causā ex finībūs edūcunt. Relīqui, ⁴ qui domi mansērint,⁵ se atque illos alunt. Hi rursus invicem anno post in armis sunt; illi domi remānent. Sic neque agricultūra, ⁶ nec ratio atque usus belli, intermittitur. Sed privāti ac separāti agri apud eos nihil est; neque longiūs anno ^h remanēre uno in loco incolendi causā licet. Neque multūm frumento,ⁱ sed ⁶ maxīmam partem^k lacte atque pecōre^l vivunt, multūmque sunt in venationībūs; quæ res et cibi genēre,^l et quotidianā exercitatiōne, et libertāte vitæ (quòd, a puēris ⁷ nullo officio^l aut disciplinā assuefacti, nihil omnīno contra voluntātem faciunt),^m et vires alit, et immāni corpōrum magnitudīneⁿ homīnes efficit. Atque in eam^o se consuetudinē adduxērunt,

^a § 131, R. XL.

^b § 110, Obs. 1, & 2.

^c § 131, R. XLI.

^d § 136, Obs. 5, (*ab.*)

^e § 106, Obs. 3, (*gens*)

^f 26, 1.

^g § 141, R. III.

^h § 120, R.

ⁱ § 121, Obs. 2.

^k § 136, Obs. 5, (*Secundum.*)

^l § 129, R.

^m § 140, Obs. 2.

ⁿ § 106, R. VII. &

6, 1.

^o § 31, Obs. 2, & 28, 1.

ut locis frigidissimis, neque vestitûs,^a præter pelles, habeant^b quicquam (quarum propter exiguitatem magna est corporis pars aperta), et laventur^b in fluminibus.

2. Mercatoribus^c est ad eos aditus magis eo, ¹ut, quæ bello cepèrint,^d quibus vendant,^e habeant,^b quàm quò ullam rem ad se importâri desiderent:^f quinetiam ²jumentis,^g quibus^h maxime Gallia delectatur, quæque impenso parant pretio,ⁱ Germâni importâtis non utuntur: sed quæ sunt apud eos nata, parva atque deformia, hæc ³quotidianâ exercitatione, summi ut sint ⁴labôris,^j efficiunt. Equestribus proliis sæpe ex equis desiliunt, ac pedibus^k præliantur; equosque eodem remanere vestigio^m assuefaciunt; ad quos se celeriter, cum usus est, recipiunt: neque eorum moribus turpius quicquam aut inertius habetur, quàm ephippiis^l uti. ⁴Itaque ad quemvis numerum ephippiatorum equitum, quamvis pauci, adire audent. Vinum ad se omnino importâri non sinunt, quòd eâ re ad laborem ferendum remollescere homines, atque effeminari, arbitrantur.

3. ⁵Publicè maximam putant esse laudem, quàm latissimè a suis finibus vacare agros:ⁿ hæc re ⁶significari, magnum numerum^o civitatum suam vim sustinere non posse. Itaque, unâ ex parte, a Suëvis, circiter millia passuum sexcenta agri ⁷vacare dicuntur. ⁸Ad alteram partem succedunt Ubii (quorum fuit civitas ampla atque florens, ⁹ut est captus Germanorum), et paulo quàm sunt ejusdem generis cetèri humaniores; propterea quòd Rhenum attingunt, multumque ad eos mercatores ventitant, et ipsi propter propinquitatem Gallicis sunt moribus assuefacti. Hos cum Suëvi, multis sæpe bellis experti, propter ¹⁰amplitudinem gravitatemque civitatis, finibus^p expellere non potuissent, tamen vectigales sibi fecerunt, ac multo^q humiliôres infirmioresque redegerunt.

^a § 106, R. VIII.^c § 140, 1.¹ § 106, R. VII.^b § 140, 1, 1st.^e § 121, R. XXVI.^m § 136, Obs. 5, (in.)^d § 112, R. II.^h § 121, Obs. 2.ⁿ § 145, R.^e § 141, Obs. 3.^l § 133, R.^o § 136, R. LII.^q § 141, R. I. & Obs. 1.^k § 140, 1, 3d.^p § 132, R. XLIII.

4. ¹In eadē causā fuērunt Usipētes et Tenchthēri, quos suprà diximus, qui complūres annos ^a Suevōrum vim sustinuērunt; ad extrēmum ^b tamen, agris ^c expulsi, et multis Germaniæ locis ^d triennium ^a vagāti, ad Rhenum pervenērunt: ²quas ^e regiōnes Menapii incolēbant, et ad utramque ripam fluminis agros, ædificia, vicosque habēbant; sed tantæ multitudinis aditū ^f perterriti, ex his ædificiis, quæ trans flumen habuērant, demigrauerant, et, cis Rhenum dispositis præsidiiis, ^gGermānos transire prohibēbant. Illi, omnia experti, cū neque vi ^f contendere propter inopiam navium, neque ²clam transire propter custodias Menapiōrum, possent, ^hreverti se in suas sedes regionesque simulaverunt; et, ⁴tridui viam progressi, rursus revertērunt, atque, omni hoc itinere unā nocte equitātū ⁱ confecto, inscios inopinantesque Menapios oppressērunt, qui, de Germanōrum discessu per exploratōres certiores facti, sine metu trans Rhenum in suos vicos remigrauerant. His ^ginterfectis, navibusque eōrum occupātis, ^hpriusquam ea pars Menapiōrum, quæ citra Rhenum quicquid in suis sedibus erat, certior fieret, ^kflumen transierunt, atque, omnibus eōrum ædificiis ^goccupātis, ^hreliquam partem ^ahiemis se eōrum copiis aluerunt.

5. His de rebus Cæsar certior factus, et ^ginfirmitatem Gallōrum veritus, ¹quod sunt in consiliis capiendis mobiles, et novis plerumque rebus ^mstudent, ⁷nihil his ⁿcommittendum existimavit. ⁸Est autem hoc Gallicæ consuetudinis, ^out et viatores, etiam invitos, consistere cogant, ^pet, quod quisque eōrum de quaque re audiērit ^qaut cognovērit, quærant; ^pet mercatōres in oppidis vulgus circumstiat, ^pquibusque ex regionibus veniant, ^qquasque ibi res cognovērint, pronuciare cogant. ^pHis rumoribus atque auditionibus per-

^a § 131, R. XLI.

^e 109, 2.

^m § 112, R. V.

^b 19, (*tempus*.)

^h § 140, Obs. 4.

ⁿ § 126, R. III.

^c § 136, R. LII.

¹ § 136, Obs. 5, (*ab*.)

^o § 108, R.

^d § 136, Obs. 5, (*in*.)

^k § 140, 4.

^p § 145, Obs. 5.

^f 37, 2d, 4, Note 1.

ⁱ 106, 1.

^q § 140, 5.

^g § 129, R.

mōti, de ¹summis sæpe rebus consilia ineunt, quorum ^a eos
²e vestigio pœnitēre necesse est, ³cū incertis rumoribus ^b
serviant, ^cet plerique ad voluntātem eōrum ficta respondeant. ^c

6. Quā consuetudine cognītā, Cæsar, ⁴ne ^dgraviōri bello ^e
occurreret, maturius quā consuebat ad exercitum proficis-
citur. Eō cū venisset, ea, quæ fore suspicātus erat, ^ffacta ^f
cognōvit; missas ^flegatiōnes a nonnullis civitatibus ad Ger-
mānos, invitatosque ^feos, uti ab Rheno diacederent; ^gōm-
niāque quæ postulāssent, ^hab se fore parāta. Quā ⁱspe ad-
ducti Germāni latius jam vagabantur, et in fines Eburōnum
et Condrusōrum, qui sunt Trevirōrum clientes, pervenērunt.
Principibus Galliæ evocātis, Cæsar ea quæ cognovērāt ⁶dis-
simulanda ^ksibi ⁱexistimāvit, eorumque animis permulsis et
confirmātis, equitatuque imperāto, bellum cum Germānis
gerere constituit.

7. Re ^mfrumentariā comparātā, equitibusque delectis, iter
in ea loca facere cœpit, quibus ⁿin locis esse Germānos au-
diēbat. A quibus cū paucōrum diērum iter ^oabesset, le-
gāti ab his venērunt, quorum hæc fuit oratio: "Germānos ^p
neque priōres ^qPopūlo Romāno bellum inferre, neque tamen
recusāre, ^rsi laceasantur, quin armis contendant; ^squod Ger-
manōrum consuetūdo hæc sit ^ta majoribus tradita, quicum-
que bellum infērant, ^h⁷resistere, neque deprecāri: hæc ta-
men dicere, venisse ^finvitos, ^qejectos domo." Si ⁸suam gra-
tiam Romāni velint, posse eis utiles esse amicos: vel sibi
agros attribuant, vel patiantur ⁹eos tenere quos armis pos-
sedērint. Sese unis Suēvis ¹⁰concedere, quibus ne Dii qui-
dem immortāles pares esse possint: reliquum quidem ¹¹in
terris esse neminem, quem non superare possint."

^a § 113, Ex. II.

^b § 112, R. V.

^c § 140, Obs. 3.

^d § 140, 1, 2d.

^e § 112, R. IV

^f 98, 2.

^g § 140, 1. 3d.

^h § 141, Obs. 8.

ⁱ 38.

^k § 108, 4.

^l § 126, Obs. 3.

^m 109, 2.

ⁿ 37, 6, Note. 1.

^o 132, R. XLII.

^p § 145, R. LVIII.

^q § 98, Obs. 10.

^r 94, 3.

^s § 140, 3.

^t § 140, 6.

^u § 136, R. LII.

^v § 141, Obs. 3.

8. ¹ Ad hæc Cæsar, quæ visum est, respondit; sed ² exitus fuit orationis: "Sibi^a nullam cum his amicitiam esse posse, si in Galliâ remanerent: neque ³ verum esse, qui^b suos fines tueri non potuerint,^c alienos occupare: ⁴ neque ullos in Galliâ vacare agros qui dari, tantæ præsertim multitudini,^d sine injuriâ possint.^e Sed licere, si velint, in Ubi-
 òrum finibus considere, quorum sint^f legati apud se, et de Suevòrum injuriis querantur,^g et a se auxilium petant: hoc se ab iis impetratùrum."^h

9. Legati hæc se ad suos relaturosⁱ dixerunt, et, re deliberatâ, post diem tertium ad Cæsarem reversuros: interea ne propius se^h castra moveret,ⁱ petierunt. Ne id quidem^k Cæsar ab se impetrari posse dixit: cognoverat enim, magnam partem equitatûs ab iis aliquot diebus^l ante prædandi frumentandique causâ ad Ambivarétos trans Mosam missam. Hos^m expectari equites, atque ejus rei causâ moramⁿ interpōni, arbitrabatur.

10. Mosa profluit ex monte Vosëgo, qui est in finibus Lingonum,^o et, parte quâdam ex Rheno receptâ, quæ appellatur Vahâlis,^p insulam efficit Batavòrum, neque longius ab eo millibus^q passuum octoginta in Oceânus transit. Rhenus autem oritur ex Lepontiis, qui Alpes incolunt, et longo spatio^r per fines Nantuatum, Helvetiòrum, Sequanòrum, Mediomatricòrum, Tribocòrum, Treviròrum citatus^s fertur;^t et, ubi Oceâno^u appropinquat,^v in plures diffluit partes, multis ingentibusque insulis effectis, quarum pars magna a feris barbarisque nationibus incolitur^w (ex quibus sunt, qui piscibus^x atque ovis avium vivere existimantur),^y multisque capitibus in Oceânus influit.

^a § 112, R. II.

^b 37, (eos.)

^c § 141, Obs. 3.

^d § 126, R. III.

^e § 141, R. I. & Obs. 1.

^f § 141, Obs. 7.

^g § 100, 2.

^h § 136, Obs. 5, (ad.)

ⁱ § 140, 1, 3d.

^k 121, Note. 2.

^l § 131, R. XLI.

^m § 145, R.

ⁿ § 103, R.

^o § 120, R. XXIV.

^p § 132, R. XLII.

^q § 98, Obs. 10.

^r 116, 4.

^s § 112, R. IV.

^t § 102, R. II.

^u § 121, Obs. 2.

11. Cæsar cùm ab hoste non ampliùs passuum duodècim millibus abesset, ut erat constitutum, ad eum legāti rever-
tuntur: qui,^a in itinère congressi, magnopère, ne longiùs
progredieretur,^b orābant. Cùm id non impetrāssent,^c petē-
bant, uti ad eos equites, qui agmen antecessissent, præmit-
teret,^b eosque pugnā^d prohiberet; sibi que uti potestatem
faceret, in Ubios legātos mittendi: quorum^e si Principes ac
Senātus^f sibi jurejurando^f fidem fecissent, eā conditiōne,^g
quæ a Cæsare ferretur, se usūros ostendebant: ad has res
conficiendas sibi tridui spatium daret.^b Hæc omnia Cæsar
² eōdem illo pertinere^h arbitrābatur, ut, tridui morā interpo-
sitā, equites eōrum, qui abessent,ⁱ reverterentur:^k tamen
sese non longiùs millibus passuum quatuor aquatiōnis causā
processurum eo die dixit: huc postero die^l quā frequentis-
sīmi convenirent,^b ut de eōrum postulātis cognosceret.^k In-
terim ad præfectos, qui cum omni equitatu antecesserant,
mittit, qui^m nunciarent, ne hostes prælio lacesserent,^b et, si
ipsi lacesserentur, ³ sustinerent, quoad ipse cum exercitu
propiùs accessisset.ⁿ

12. At hostes, ubi primùm nostros equites conspexerunt,
quorum erat quinque millium numērus, cùm ipsi non am-
pliùs^o octingentos equites haberent, quòd ii, qui frumentandi
causā ierant trans Mosam, nondum redierant, nihil timentū-
bus nostris,^p quòd legāti eōrum paulo antè a Cæsare disces-
serant, atque is dies induciis^q erat ab eis petitus, impetu
facto, celeriter nostros perturbaverunt. Rursus resistentibus
nostris,^p consuetudine suā^r ad pedes desiluērunt, subfossis-
que equis, compluribusque nostris dejectis, reliquos in fugam
conjecerunt, atque ita perterritos egērunt, ut non priùs fugā^r
desisterent,^s quā in conspectu agmīnis nostri venissent.

^a § 39, 5.^e § 121, R. XXVI.ⁿ § 140, 4.^b § 140, 1, 3d.^h 96, 2.^o § 120, Obs. 3^c § 140, Obs. 4.ⁱ § 141, Obs. 3.^p 109, 1.^d § 136, Obs. 5, (ab.)^k § 140, 1, 2d.^q § 114, R. & Obs. 4.^e 39.^l § 131, R. XL.^r § 136, Obs. 5, (ex.)^f § 129, R.^m § 141, Obs. 2, 4th.^s § 140, 1, 1st.

In eo prœlio ex equitibus^a nostris interficiuntur quatuor et septuaginta, in his vir fortissimus, Piso, Aquitānus, ¹amplissimo genere^b natus, cujus avus in civitatē suā regnum obtinuērat, amicus^c ab Senātu nostro appellātus. Hic cū fratri^d ²interclūso ab hostibus auxilium ferret,^e illum ex pericūlo^f eripuit: ipse, equo vulnerāto dejectus, quoad potuit, fortissimē restitit. Cū circumventus, multis vulneribus acceptis, cecidisset,^g atque id frater, qui jam prœlio^h excesserat, procul animadvertisset, incitāto equoⁱ se hostibus^j obtūlit atque interfectus est.

13. Hoc facto prœlio, Cæsar neque jam sibi^b legātos¹ audiendos,^k neque condiōnes accipiendas^k arbitrabātur ab his, qui per dolum atque insidias, petītā pace, ultro bellum intulissent: ¹expectāre^m verò, dum hostium copiæ augerentur,ⁿ equitatusque reverterētur, ⁴summæ dementiæ^o esse^p judicābat; et, cognītā Gallōrum infirmitate, quantum jam apud eos hostes uno prœlio auctoritātis^q essent consecūtī, sentiebat: quibus^r ad consilia capienda nihil¹ spatii dandum existimābat. His constitūtis rebus, et consilio cum legātis et quæstōre comunicāto, ⁵ne quem diem pugnæ prætermittēret, opportunissima res accīdit, quòd postridie ejus diēi^a mane, eādē et perfidiā et simulatiōne usi Germāni, frequentes, ⁶omnibus principibus majoribusque natu adhibitis, ad eum in castra venērunt; simul, ut dicebātur, ⁷sui purgandi causā, quòd ⁸contrā atque esset dictum, et ipsi petissent, prœlium pridie commisissent; simul ut, si quid posset, de induciis fallendo impetrārent. ⁹Quos¹ sibi Cæsar oblātos gāvīsus, illīco retinēri jussit; ipse omnes copias castris eduxit, equitatumque, quòd recentī prœlio perterritum esse existimābat, agmen subsēqui jussit.

^a § 107, Obs. 8.^b § 119, R. & 6, 5.^c § 103, R.^d § 123, R.^e § 140, Obs. 4.^f § 123, Obs. 1.^g § 136, R. LII.^h § 126, Obs. 3.ⁱ § 145, R. (esse.)^k 108, 4.¹ § 141, Obs. 8.^m § 144, R. LVI.ⁿ § 140, 4.^o § 108, R.^p 94, 3.^q § 106, R. VIII.^r 39, & § 126, R. III.¹ § 135, XLVI.

14. Acie triplici institutâ, et celeriter octo millium^a itin-
 ère confecto, prius ad hostium castra pervenit, quàm, quid
 ageretur, ^b Germâni sentire possent.^c Qui,^d omnibus rebus
 subito perterriti, et celeritate adventus nostri, et discessu su-
 ōrum, neque consilii habendi^e neque arma capiendi^f spatio
 dato, ¹ perturbantur, copiasne adversus hostem educere, an
 castra defendere, an fugâ salutem petere, præstaret.^b Quo-
 rum^g timor cùm fremitu et concursu ² significaretur, milites
 nostri, ³ pristini diēi perfidiâ incitati, in castra irrupērunt.
 Quorum^h quiⁱ celeriter arma capere potuerunt, paulisper
 nostris restitērunt, atque inter carros impedimentâque præ-
 lium commiserunt: at reliqua multitudo puerorum mulie-
 rumque (nam cum omnibus suis domo excesserant Rhenum-
 que transierant), passim fugere cœpit; ad quos^j consecan-
 dos Cæsar equitatum misit.

15. Germâni, post tergum ⁴ clamore audito, cùm suos^k
 interficere vidērent, armis abjectis, signisque militaribus re-
 lictis, se ex castris ejecerunt: et, cùm ⁵ ad confluentem Mo-
 sæ et Rheni pervenissent, ⁶ reliquâ fugâ desperatâ, magno
 numero interfecto, reliqui se in flumen præcipitaverunt, at-
 que ibi timore,¹ lassitudine,¹ vi fluminis oppressi, periērunt.
 Nostri ad unum^m omnes incolūmes, perpaucis vulneratis,
⁷ ex tanti belli timore, cùm hostium numerus capitum quad-
 ringentorum et triginta millium fuisset, se in castra recepē-
 runt. Cæsar his,ⁿ quos in castris retinuerat, ⁸ discedendi
 potestatem fecit: illi supplicia cruciatusque Gallorum ver-
 ūti,^o quorum agros vexaverant, remanere se apud eum velle
 dixerunt. His^p Cæsar libertatem concessit.

16. Germanico bello confecto, multis de causis Cæsar
 statuit, sibi Rhenum esse transeundum: quarum^p illa fuit
 justissima, quod, cùm vidēret, Germānos tam facile impelli,

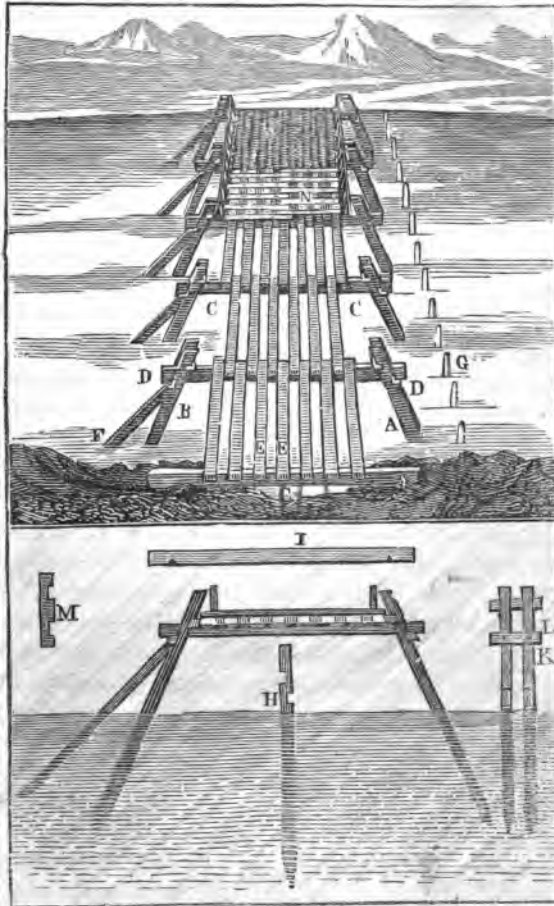
^a § 106, R. VII.^f 112, 1.¹ § 129, R.^b § 140, 5.^g 39.^m 19, (*homīnem*.)^c § 140, 4.^h 39, & § 107, R. X.ⁿ § 123, R.^d 39, 5.ⁱ 37, (ii.)^o 106, 1.^e 112, 5.^k 19, 2, & § 145, R.^p 38, & § 107, R. X.

ut in Galliam venirent,^a ¹suis quoque rebus^b eos timere voluit, cum intelligerent, ²et posse et audere Populi Romani exercitum Rhenum transire. ³Accessit etiam, quod illa pars equitatus Usipetum et Tenchtherorum, quam supra commemoravi, praedandi^c frumentandique causâ Mosam transisse, neque praelio^d interfuisse, post fugam suorum se trans Rhenum in fines Sigambrorum receperat seque cum iis conjunxerat. Ad quos^e cum Cæsar nuncios misisset, qui^f postularent, eos, qui sibi^g Galliaeque bellum intulissent, sibi^g dedèrent,^h responderunt: "Populi Romani imperium Rhenumⁱ finire: si, se invito Germanos in Galliam transire non æquum existimaret, ⁴cur sui^k quicquam^l esse imperii^l aut potestatis trans Rhenum postularet?"^m Ubii autem, qui uni ex Transrhenanis ad Cæsarem legatos miserant, amicitiam fecerant, obsides dederant, magnopere orabant, "ut sibiⁿ auxilium ferret,^h quod graviter ab Suevis premerentur;ⁿ vel, si id facere^o occupationibus reipublicæ prohiberetur, exercitum modo Rhenum transportaret:^h idⁱ sibi^d ad auxilium spemque reliqui temporis satis futurum: tantum esse nomen atque opinionem ejus exercitus, Ariovisto pulso, et hoc novissimo praelio facto, etiam ad ultimas Germanorum nationes, uti opinione^o et amicitia Populi Romani tuti^p esse possint."^a Navium magnam copiam ad transportandum exercitum pollicebantur.

17. Cæsar his de causis, quas commemoravi, Rhenum transire decreverat; sed navibus transire, neque satis tutum esse^q arbitrabatur, ⁶neque suæ^r neque Populi Romani dignitatis^k esse statuēbat. Itaque, etsi summa difficultas faciendi pontis⁷ proponebatur, propter latitudinem, rapiditatem, altitudinemque fluminis, tamen idⁱ sibi^a contendendum, aut

^a § 140, 1, 1st.^b § 112, R. XVII.^c 112, 1.^d § 112, R. I.^e 39, 9.^f § 141, Obs. 2, 4th.^g § 123, R.^h § 140, 1, 3d, & Obs. 5.ⁱ § 145, R.^k § 108, R. XII.^l § 106, R. VIII.^m § 140, 6.ⁿ § 141, Obs. 7.^o § 129, R.^p § 103, Obs. 6.^q 51, 5.^r 29, 1.^s 113, & § 147.

**PLAN OF THE BRIDGE MADE OVER THE RHINE BY CÆSAR,
IN TEN DAYS.**



A. *Tigna binæ œsquipedalia* : Two piles each a foot and a half thick, joined together at the distance of two feet. **H.** One of the piles detached. **K.** Form of the two piles braced together. **B.** Two opposite piles similarly joined together, and at the distance of forty feet down the river from the other. **C.** *Trabs bipedalis* : Large beam two feet square, extending from the upper to the lower piles. **I.** The same beam detached. **D.** *Fibulae binæ* : Two braces fastening each pair of piles together, as seen at **L.**, one on each side, (*utrimque*)—the one below, supporting the beam, (*trabs*), the other above it. **M.** Form of the brace detached. **E.** *Materiae* : Timbers laid from beam to beam, (*directæ*), lengthwise of the bridge. **N.** *Longuræ* : Spars laid across the timbers. **O.** *Crates* : Hurdles laid over the spars. **F.** *Sublicæ* : Stakes sunk in the river as buttresses, and fastened (*conjunctæ*), to each lower pair of piles. **G.** *Aliæ sublicæ* : Other stakes driven in above the bridge, and separate from it, as a fence against trunks of trees, &c. sent down the river.

aliter non transducendum exercitum, existimabat. ¹ Rationem pontis hanc instituit. ² Tigna bina^a sesquipedalia, paulum ab imo præacuta, dimensa ad altitudinem fluminis, intervallo^b pedum duorum inter se jungēbat. ³ Hæc cum^c machinationibus^d immissa in flumen defixerat, fistucisque^d adgerat, ⁴ non publicæ modo^d directa^e ad perpendiculum, sed prona^e ac fastigata, ut secundum naturam fluminis procumbērent; ⁵ iis^e item contraria bina,^a ad eundem modum juncta, intervallo^b pedum quadragenūm, ab inferiōre parte, contra vim atque impetum fluminis conversa statuēbat. ⁶ Hæc utraq̃ue insuper bipedalibus trabibus^b immissis quantum^f eorum tignorum junctura distabat, binis utrimque fibulis^h ab extrēmā parte, distinebantur: ⁷ quibusⁱ disclusis atque in contrariam partem revinctis, tanta erat opēris firmitudo, atque ⁸ ea^m rerum natura, ut, ⁹ quoⁿ major vis aquæ se incitavisset, ¹⁰ hocⁿ arctius illigata tenerentur. ¹⁰ Hæc directā materiem^q injectā contexebantur, et ¹¹ longuriis^q cratibusque consternebantur: ¹² ac nihilo secius publicæ et ad inferiōrem partem fluminis obliquē agebantur, quæ, ¹³ pro pariēte subjectæ, et cum omni opēre conjunctæ, vim fluminis excipērent: ¹⁴ et aliæ item supra pontem mediocri spatio,^b ut, si arborum trunci, sive naves ¹⁵ dejiendi opēris essent^t a barbaris missæ, his defensoribus^d earum rerum vis minueretur, neu ponti^u nocerent.

18. Diēbus^v decem, ¹⁶ quibus materia cœpta erat comportari, omni opēre effecto, exercitus transducitur. Cæsar, ¹⁷ ad utramque partem pontis firmo præsidio^h relicto, in fines Sigambrorum contendit. Intērim a compluribus civitatibus ad eum legati veniunt,^v quibus^x pacem atque amicitiam pe-

^a 26, 3.^b § 132, R. XLII.^c § 140, Obs. 3.^d § 129, R.^e § 98, Obs. 10.^f § 140, 1, 2d.^g § 111, R.^h 109, 2.ⁱ 46, (tantum.) &^b^k 110.^l § 38, & 109, 2.^m 124, 17, & 28.ⁿ § 132, Obs. 6, &

22, 4, Obs.

^o § 141, Obs. 8.^p § 140, 1, 1st.^q § 126, R. V.^r § 141, Obs. 2, 4th.^s 19, (publicæ.)^t 81, 2, & 140, 2.^u § 112, R. V.^v § 131, R. XLI.^w § 44, I. 3.^x § 123, R.

tentibus liberaliter respondit, obsidesque ad se adduci^a jubet, At Sigambri, ex eo tempore quo^b pons institui cœptus est, fugâ comparatâ, ¹ hortantibus iis^c quos ex Tenchthêris atque Usipetibus apud se habebant, finibus^d suis accesserant, suâque omnia exportaverant, seque ² in solitudinem ac silvas abdidérant.

19. Cæsar, paucos dies^e in eorum finibus moratus, omnibus vicis ædificiisque incensis,^f frumentisque succisis,^f se in fines Ubiörum recēpit; atque iis auxilium suum pollicitus, si ab Suëvis premerentur,^g hæc ab iis cognovit: Suëvos, posteaquam per exploratores pontem fieri comperissent,^h moreⁱ suo concilio habito, nuncios in omnes partes dimisisse, uti de oppidis demigrarent,^k liberos, uxores, suaque omnia in silvas deponerent,^k atque omnes qui arma ferre possent^l unum in locum convenirent:^k ³ hunc esse delectum medium^m ferè regionum earum quas Suëvi obtinerent:ⁿ hic Romanorum adventum expectare atque ibi decertare constituisse.^o Quod^p ubi Cæsar compērit, omnibus his rebus confectis, quarum rerum causâ transducere exercitum constituērat, ut Germānis metum injiceret,^k ut Sigambros⁴ ulcisceretur,^k ut Ubios obsidiōne liberāret,^k diēbus^c omnino decem et octo trans Rhenum consumtis,⁵ satis et ad laudem et ad utilitatem profectum^o arbitratus, se in Galliam recēpit, pontemque rescidit.

20. Exiguâ parte æstatis reliquâ, Cæsar, etsi in his locis, quod omnis Gallia ad septentriones vergit, ⁶ maturæ sunt hiemes, tamen in Britanniam proficisci contendit, quod, omnibus fere Gallicis bellis,^q hostibus nostris^r ⁷ inde subministrata auxilia intelligēbat: et, si tempus anni ad bellum gerendum deficeret,^k tamen magno sibi^s usui fore arbitrabatur, si modò insulam adisset, genus hominum perspexisset, loca,

^a 90, 4.^b § 131, R. XL.^c 109, 1.^d § 136, R. LII.^e § 131, R. XLI.^f 104, 1.^g § 140, 2.^h § 140, 4.ⁱ § 129, R.^k § 140, 1, 2d.^l § 141, Obs. 3.^m § 97, R. Exp.ⁿ § 140, 6.^o 98, 2.^p 38, 4.^q § 136, Obs. 5, (in.)^r § 126, R. III.^s § 114, R.

portus, aditus cognovisset: quæ omnia ferè Gallis erant incognita. Neque enim ¹temèrè præter mercatōres illò adit quisquam, ²neque iis ipsis ^a quicquam, præter oram maritimam atque eas regiōnes quæ sunt contra Gallias, notum est. Itaque, evocātis ad se undique mercatoribus, neque quanta esset ^b insulæ magnitudo, neque quæ ^c aut quantæ ^c natiōnes incolerent, ^b neque ³quem ^c usum belli haberent, ^b aut quibus ^c institutis uterentur, neque qui essent ad majōrum navium multitudinem idonei ^d portus, reperire poterat.

21. Ad hæc cognoscenda, priusquàm pericūlum faceret, idoneum esse arbitrātus ^e Caium Volusēnum, cum navi longā præmittit. Huic ^f mandat, uti, explorātis omnibus rebus, ad se quamprimum revertatur: ^g ipse cum omnibus copiis in Morinos proficiscitur, quòd inde erat brevissimus in Britanniam transjēctus. Huc naves undique ex finitimis regionibus et, quam ^b superiøre æstāte ad Veneticum bellum fecerat, classem jubet convenire. ¹ Intērim, consilio ejus cognito et per mercatōres perlato ad Britannos, a compluribus ejus insulæ civitatibus ad eum legāti veniunt, qui polliceantur ^k obsides dare, atque imperio ¹ Populi Romāni obtemperāre. Quibus ^m auditis, liberaliter pollicītus, hortatusque ut ⁴ in eā sententiā permanerent, ⁵ eos domum ⁿ remittit, et cum his unā Commium, quem ipse, Atrebatibus superātis, regem ibi constituerat, cujus et virtutem et consilium probābat, et quem sibi fidēlem arbitrabatur, cujusque auctoritas in iis regionibus magni ^o habebatur, mittit. Huic impērat, quas possit adeat ^b civitates, ⁶horteturque ⁵ ut Populi Romāni ⁶fidem sequantur; ⁷ seque celeriter eò ventūrum nunciet. ⁸ Volusēnus, perspectis regionibus, ⁷ quantum ei facultatis dari potuit, ⁸qui navi egrēdi ac se barbaris committere non auderet, ⁹ quinto die ad Cæsārem revertitur; quæque ibi perspexisset renunciat.

^a § 126, R. XXXIII. ^f 63, & § 123, R. ¹ § 112, R. V.

^b § 140, 5. ^g § 140, 1, 3d. ^m 38, & 109, 2.

^c 48, & § 34, Obs. 1. ^h 43. ⁿ § 130, 4.

^d § 103, Obs. 2. ⁱ 90, 4. ^o § 126, R. II.

^e 106, 1. ^k § 141, Obs. 2, 4th. ^p § 141, R. III.

22. Dum in his locis Cæsar navium parandârum^a causâ morâtur, ex magnâ parte Morinôrum ad eum legâti venêrunt, qui^b se¹ de superiôris temporis consilio excusarent,^b quôd homînes barbâri, et nostræ consuetudinis^c imperiti, bellum Popûlo Româno fecissent,^d seque ea, quæ imperâsset,^e factûros pollicerentur.^b Hoc sibi^f satis opportunè Cæsar accidis-
disse arbitrâtus, quôd neque post tergum hostem relinquere volêbat, neque belli gerendi,^g propter anni tempus, facultatem habêbat, neque^h has tantulârum rerum occupatiônes,ⁱ sibi^h Britannîæⁱ anteponendas judicâbat, magnum his^k obsidum numêrum impêrat. Quibus adductis, eos in fidem recêpit.
^j Navibus circiter octoginta onerariis coactis contractisque, quot^l satis esse ad duas transportandas legiônes existimâbat, quicquid præterea navium^m longârum habêbat, quæstori, legâtis, præfectisque distribuit. Huc accedêbant octodêcim onerariæ naves, quæ ex eo loco abⁿ millibus passuum octo vento tenebantur, quo minùs in eundem portum pervenire possent.^o Has equitibus distribuit; reliquum exercitum Quinto Titurio Sabîno et Lucio Aurunculeiô Cottæ, legâtis, in Menapios atque in eos pagos Morinôrum, ab quibus ad eum legâti non venêrant, deducendum^p dedit. Publium Sulpitium Rufum, legâtum, cum eo præsidio quod satis esse arbitrabâtur, portum tenere iussit.

23. His constitûtis rebus, nactus idoneam ad navigandum^q tempestâtem, ^r tertiâ ferè vigiliâ ^s solvit, equitesque in ulteriôrem portum progrêdi,^t ^u et naves conscendêre,^v et se sequi^w iussit: a quibus^x cûm id paulo tardiùs esset administrâtum, ipse ^y horâ diêi circiter quartâ cum primis navibus Britanniam attigit, atque ibi in omnibus collibus^z expositas hostium

^a 112, 5.^b § 141, Obs. 2, 4.^c § 107, R. IX.^d § 141, Obs. 7.^e § 141, Obs. 3.^f § 112, R. IV.^g § 145, R.^h § 126, Obs. 3.ⁱ § 126, R. III.^j § 123, R. & 5, 1.^k 46, 2.^l § 106, R. VIII. &

Obs. 10.

^m § 132, Obs. 5.ⁿ § 140, 1.^o 107, 1.^p 112, 3.^q 90, 1.^r 33.

copias armatas conspexit. Cujus loci hæc erat natura: ¹ adeo montibus angustis mare continebatur, uti ex locis superioribus in littus telum adjici^a posset. Hunc ² ad egrediendum nequâquam idoneum arbitratus locum, dum reliquæ naves eò convenirent,^b ³ ad horam nonam in anchoris expectavit. Intërim legatis^c tribunisque militum convocatis, et quæ ex Volusëno cognosset,^d et quæ fieri vellet,^d ostendit, ⁴ monuitque (ut rei militaris ratio, maxime ut maritimæ res postularent,^e ut quæ celërem atque instabilem motum haberent), ad nutum et ad tempus omnes res ab iis administrarentur.^f His^c dimissis, et ventum et æstum uno tempore nactus secundum, dato signo,^c et sublatis anchoris,^c circiter millia passuum septem ab eo loco progressus, aperto ac plano litore^g naves constituit.

24. At barbari, consilio^c Romanorum cognito, præmisso^h equitatu,^h et essedariis, quo plerumque genereⁱ in præliis uti consuêrunt, reliquis copiis subsecuti, nostros navibus^k egrëdi^l prohibebant. Erat ob has causas summa difficultas, quod naves, propter magnitudinem, nisi in alto, constitui^m non poterant; ⁷ militibusⁱ autem, ignotis locis,^c impeditis manibus,^c magno et gravi armorum onere oppressis, simul et de navibus desiliendum,^l et in fluctibus consistendum,^l et cum hostibus erat pugnandum: ¹ cum illi aut ex arido, aut paululum in aquam progressi, ⁸ omnibus membris^m expediti, notissimis locis,^g audacter tela conjicerent,ⁿ et equos ⁹ insuefactos incitarent.ⁿ Quibus rebus nostri perterriti, atque hujus omnino generis^o pugnae imperiti, non eadem alacritateⁱ ac studio, quoⁱ in pedestribus uti præliis consueverant, utebantur.

25. Quod ubi Cæsar animum advertit, naves longas, ¹⁰ quarum et species erat barbaris^p inusitatio, et motus ad usum expeditior, paulum removëri ab onerariis navibus, et

^a § 87, 1.^f § 140, 1, 3d.ⁱ § 147, & 113, 2.^b § 140, 4.^g § 136, Obs. 5, (in.)^m § 128, R.^c 109, 2.^h § 98, Obs. 4. & 109. 2.ⁿ § 140, Obs. 4.^d § 140, 5.^l § 121, R. XXVI.^o § 108, R. IX.^e § 141, Obs. 7.^k § 136, R. LII.^p § 111, R.

¹ remis incitāri,^a et ad latus apertum hostium constitui,^a atque inde fundis, sagittis, ² tormentis, hostes propelli^a ac submovēri jussit: ³ quæ res magno usui^b nostris fuit. Nam, et navium figurâ, et remōrum motu, et inusitâto genēre tormentōrum permōti, barbāri constitērunt, ⁴ ac paulum modò pedem retulērunt. Atque, nostris militibus^c cunctantibus, maxīmè propter altitudinem maris, ⁵ qui^d decimæ legionis aquilam ferēbat, contestātus^e Deos, ut ⁶ ea res legiōni^f feliciter eveniret: “Desilite,” inquit, “commilitōnes, nim̄ vultis aquilam hostibus prodere: ego certè meum reipublicæ atque imperatōri officium præstitēro.” Hoc cū ⁷ magnâ voce dixisset, ⁸ ex navi se projēcit, atque in hostes aquilam ferre cœpit. Tum nostri, cohortāti inter se,^g ne^h tantum dedēcus admitterētur, universi ex navi desiluērunt: hos item ex proximis navibus cū conspexissent, subsecūti hostibusⁱ appropinquārunt.

26. Pugnātum est ab utrisque acriter; nostri tamen, quod neque ordines servāre,^k neque firmiter insistere,^k neque signa subsequi^k potērant, atque alius aliâ^l ex navi, quibuscumque^m signis occurrerat, se aggregābat, magno opère perturbabantur. Hostes verò, notis omnibus vadis, ubi ex litore aliquos ⁹ singulāres ex navi egredientes conspexerant, incitātis equis impeditos adoriebantur: plures paucosⁿ circumstībant: alii ab latere aperto in universos tela conjiciēbant. ¹⁰ Quod^o cū animum advertisset Cæsar, ¹¹ scaphas longarum navium, item ¹² speculatoria navigia militibus compleri^a jussit, et, quos^p laborantes conspexerat, iis subsidia submittēbat. Nostri, simul^q in arido constitērunt, suis omnibus consecūtis, in hostes impetum fecērunt, atque eos in fugam dedērunt, neque longiùs prosēqui^k potuerunt, quod

^a § 90, 4.^b § 114, R.^c 109, 1.^d 37, 3.^e 105, 2.^f § 112, R. XVII.^g § 23, Obs. 5.^h § 140, 1, 3d, & 121.ⁱ § 112, R. IV.^k 87, 7.^l § 98, Obs. 11, &

25, 1.

^m 37, 7, Note. 2, &

§ 99, Obs. 7.

ⁿ § 136, R. LII.^o § 38, 7.^p 43.^q 124, 18, (Sup.ac.)

equites ¹ cursum tenere atque insulam capere non potuerant. Hoc unum ad pristinam fortunam Cæsari defuit.

27. Hostes prælio superati, simul^a atque se ex fuga receperunt, statim ad Cæsarem legatos de pace miserunt: obsides daturos, quæque imperasset^b sese facturos, polliciti sunt. Unà cum his legatis Commius Atrébas venit, quem^c ²suprà demonstravëram a Cæsare in Britanniam præmissum.^d Hunc illi e navi egressum, cum ad eos^e ³oratoris modo imperatoris mandata perferret, comprehendërant, atque in vincula coniecërant: tum, prælio facto, remisërunt et in petendâ^f pace ejus rei ⁴culpam in multitudinem contulërunt, et propter imprudentiam ut ignoscerëtur, petiverunt. Cæsar questus, quòd, cum ultro^g in continentem legatis missis pacem ab se petissent,^f bellum sine causâ intulissent,^g ignoscere^h imprudentiæ^b dixit, obsidesque imperavit: quorum illi partem statim dedërunt, partem, ex longinquiöribus locis ⁷arcessitam,^d paucis diëbusⁱ sese daturos dixerunt. Interea suos remigrare in agros jussërunt, principesque undique convenire, et se civitatesque suas Cæsari commendare cöperunt.

28. His rebus pace confirmatâ, ⁸post diem quartum, quàm est in Britanniam ventum,^k naves octodëcim, de quibus⁹ suprà demonstratüm est, quæ equites sustulërant, ex superiorië portu leni vento solvërunt. ¹⁰Quæ¹ cum appropinquarent Britanniæ, et ex castris viderentur, tanta tempestas subito coorta est, ut nulla eörum^m cursum tenere posset,ⁿ sed aliæ eòdem, unde erant profectæ, referrentur; aliæ ad inferiorë partem insulæ, ¹¹quæ est propiùs solis occäsus,^o magno sui cum periculö dejicerentur: ¹²quæ^p tamen, anchöris jactis cum fluctibus complerentur,^f ¹³necessariò adversâ nocte in altum profectæ, continentem petierunt.

^a 124, 18.^f § 140, Obs. 4.¹ 39, 6, or 1.^b 80, 1.^g § 141, Obs. 7.^m § 107, R. X.^c § 145, R. & 91, 4.^h § 112, R. V.ⁿ § 140, 1, 1st.^d 98, 2.ⁱ § 131, R. XLI.^o § 136, Obs. 5, (ad.)^e § 147, R. LXII.^k 67, 5, Note.^p § 38.

29. Eādem nocte accīdit, ut esset^a luna plena, ¹qui^b dies maritimos æstus maximos in Oceāno efficere consuēvit; ²nostrisque^c id erat incognitum. Ita uno tempore et longas naves, quibus^d Cæsar exercitum transportandum curaverat, quasque in aridum^e subduxerat, æstus complēbat; et onerarias, ³quæ ad anchōras erant deligatæ, tempestas ⁴afflictabat; neque ulla nostris^f facultas aut administrandi, aut auxiliandi, dabatur. Compluribus navibus^g fractis, reliquæ cū essent, funibus,^h anchōris, reliquisque armamentis amissis, ad navigandum inutiles, magna, id quod^h necesse erat accidere, totius exercitus perturbatio facta est: neque enim naves erant aliæ, quibus reportari possent;ⁱ et omnia deerant, quæ ad reficiendas eas usui^k sunt, et, ⁵quod omnibus^l constabat hiemari in Galliā oportere, frumentum ⁶his in locis in hiemem provisum non erat.

30. Quibus^m rebusⁿ cognitis, principes Britannię, qui post prælium factum ad ea, quæ jussērat Cæsar, facienda convenērant, inter se collocūti, cū equites^o et naves et frumentum Romanis^p deesse intelligērent, et paucitatem militum ex castrorum exiguitate cognoscērent, quæ hoc erant etiam angustiora, quod sine impedimentis Cæsar legiōnes transportaverat, optimum factu^p esse duxerunt, rebellione^q factā, frumento^r commeatūque nostros prohibere, et ⁷rem in hiemem producere, quod, iis superatis, aut reditu^s interclusis, neminem postea belli inferendi causā in Britanniam transiturum confidēbant. Itaque, rursus conjuratione^t factā, paulatim ex castris discedere, ac suos clam ex agris deducere cōpērunt.

31. At Cæsar, etsi nondum eōrum consilia cognovērat, tamen et ⁸ex eventu navium suarum, ⁹et ex eo, quod obsides dare intermisērant, fore^t id,ⁿ quod accīdit, suspicabatur.

^a § 140, 1, 4th.

^b § 99, Exc. 1, & 37, 4.

^c § 111, R.

^d § 129, R.

^e 19, (*locum.*)

^f § 126, R. III.

^g 109, 2.

^h 37, 9, Note. 3.

ⁱ § 141, Obs. 1.

^k § 114, Obs. 4.

^l § 113, R. & 19.

^m 38, 3.

ⁿ § 145, R.

^o § 112, R. I.

^p 114, 2.

^q § 136, Obs. 5, (*ad.*)

^r 100, 12.

Itaque ¹ ad omnes casus subsidia comparabat: nam et frumentum ex agris quotidie in castra conferēbat,^a et, quæ ^b gravissimè afflictae erant naves, earum ^c materiā atque ære ad reliquas reficiendas utebatur, et, quæ ad eas res erant usui,^d ex continenti comportari jubebat. Itaque, cum id summo studio a militibus administraretur, duodēcim navibus amissis, ^e reliquis ^f ut navigari commode posset, effecit.

32. ^g Dum ea geruntur, legione ex consuetudine unā frumentum ^h missā, quæ appellabatur septima, neque ullā ad id tempus belli suspiciōne interpositā, cum pars hominum in agris remaneret, pars etiam in castra ventitaret, ii, qui pro portis castrorum ⁱ in statione erant, Cæsari renunciārent, pulvēm ^j majorem, ^k quā consuetudo ferret,^l in eā parte vidēri, quam ^m in partem legio iter fecisset. Cæsar id, quod erat, suspicatus, aliquid ⁿ novi a barbaris initum ^o consilii, cohortes, quæ ^p in stationibus erant, secum in eam partem proficisci,^q duas ex reliquis ^r in stationem succedere,^s reliquas armari^t et confestim sese subsequi^u jussit. Cum paulò longius a castris processisset, suos ^v ab hostibus premi,^w atque ægrè sustinēre, ^x et, confertā legione, ex omnibus partibus tela ^y conjici,^z animum advertit. Nam ^{aa} quod, omni ex reliquis partibus demesso frumento, pars una erat reliqua, suspicāti hostes, huc nostros esse venturos, noctu in silvis delituērunt: tum dispersos, depositis armis, in metendo ^{ab} occupatos, subito adorti, paucis interfectis, reliquos ^{ac} incertis ordinibus perturbavērunt: simul equitatu^{ad} atque essēdis^{ae} circumdedērunt.

33. ^{af} Genus hoc est ex essēdis pugnæ: primò per omnes partes perequitant, et tela conjiciunt, atque ^{ag} ipso^{ah} terrore^{ai} equorum, et strepitu rotarum, ordines plerumque perturbant;

^a § 44, II. 2.

^g § 129, R.

^k 98, 2.

^b 37, 6, Note. 1. & 43.

^h § 148, R. LXIII.

^l 90, 4.

^j § 145, R.

^m 96, 6.

^c 19, (*navium*.)

^p § 141, Obs. 7.

ⁿ § 147, Obs. 5.

^d § 114, Obs. 4.

ⁱ 37, 6, Note. 1.

^o 32, 5.

et cū se inter equitū turmas ¹insinuavērint, ²ex essēdis desiliunt, et pedibus praeliantur. ³Aurīgæ intērim paulatim ex praelio excēdunt, ⁴atque ita curru ⁵se collōcant, ut, si illi a multitudine hostium premantur, ⁶expeditum ad suos receptum habeant. ⁷Ita mobilitātem equitū, stabilitātem peditū, in praeliis præstant: ⁸ac tantum usu quotidiāno et exercitatiōne efficiunt, uti, in declivi ac præcipiti loco, ⁹incitatos equos sustinere, ¹⁰et brevi ¹¹moderari ac flectere, et per temōnem percurrere, et in iugo insistere, et inde se in curvus citissimè recipere consueverint. ¹²

34. Quibus ¹rebus, ²perturbatis nostris novitate pugnae, tempore ³opportunissimo Cæsar auxilium tulit: namque ejus adventu ⁴hostes constitērunt, nostri se ex timore recepērunt. Quo ⁵facto, ad lacessendum et ad committendum praelium aliēnum esse tempus arbitrātus, ⁶suo se loco ⁷continuit, et, brevi tempore intermisso, in castra legiōnes reduxit. Dum hæc geruntur, nostris omnibus occupatis, qui erant in agris, reliqui discessērunt. Secūtæ sunt ⁸continuos complures dies ⁹tempestates, quæ ¹⁰et nostros in castris continērent, ¹¹et hostem a pugna prohibērent. Intērim barbāri nuncios in omnes partes dimisērunt, paucitatemque nostrōrum militum ¹²suis prædicavērunt, et, ¹³quanta prædæ faciendæ, ¹⁴atque in perpetuum sui liberandi, ¹⁵facultas darētur, ¹⁶si Romānos castris ¹⁷expulissent, demonstravērunt. His rebus celeriter magnā multitudīne peditātis equitātisque coactā, ad castra venērunt.

35, Cæsar, etsi idem, ¹quod superioribus diebus ²acciderat, fore vidēbat, ut, si essent hostes pulsī, celeritate periculum effugērent; ³tamen nactus equites circiter triginta,

¹ § 140, Obs. 3.

² § 136, Obs. 5, (cum.) ³ § 131, R. XL.

⁴ § 140, 2.

⁵ § 140, 1, 1st.

⁶ 19, (tempore.)

⁷ 38.

⁸ § 136, Obs. 5 (in.)

⁹ § 129, R.

¹⁰ 38, 5.

¹¹ 106, 1.

¹² § 131, R. XLI.

¹³ § 141, Obs. 3.

¹⁴ 112, 5.

¹⁵ § 140, 5.

¹⁶ § 136, R. LII.

¹⁷ § 145, R. & 19.

¹⁸ § 145, Obs. 6.

quos Commius Atrēbas, de quo ¹antè dictum est, ^a secum transportavērat, legiōnes in acie pro castris constituit. Commisso prēlio, diutius nostrōrum militum impētum hostes ferre non potuerunt, ac terga vertērunt. Quos ^b tanto spatio ^c secūti, quantum ^d cursu ^e et viribus efficere potuerunt, complures ex iis occiderunt; deinde, ^f omnibus ^g longè latèque afflictis incensisque, se in castra recepērunt.

36. Eōdem die legāti, ab hostibus missi ad Cæsārem de pace, venērunt. His ^h Cæsar numērum obsīdum, quem antea imperavērat, duplicāvit, eosque in continentem addūci ⁱ jussit, quòd, propinquā ^j die ^k æquinocitii, infirmis navibus, ^l hiēmi ^m navigatiōnem subjiēndam ⁿ non existimābat. Ipse, idoneam tempestātem nactus, paulò post mediam noctem naves solvit, quæ omnes incolūmes ad continentem pervenerunt; sed ex his onerariæ duæ ^o eosdem, quos reliquæ, ^p portus capere non potuerunt, et paulo infrā delātæ sunt.

37. ^q Quibus ^r ex navibus cūm essent expositi milites circiter trecenti, atque in castra contendērent, Morīni, quos Cæsar, in Britanniam proficiscens, pacātos reliquērat, spe ^s prædæ adducti, primò ^t non ita magno suōrum numēro circumstetērunt, ac, ^u si sese interfici nollent, ^v arma ponere jussērunt. Cūm illi, ^w orbe facto, sese defendērent, celeriter ad clamōrem homīnum circiter millia sex convenērunt. Quā ^x re nunciātā, Cæsar omnem ex castris equitātum suis ^y auxilio ^z misit. Intērim nostri milites impētum hostium sustinuerunt, atque ampliūs horis ^{aa} quatuor fortissimè pugnavērunt, et, paucis vulneribus acceptis, complures ex iis occiderunt. Postea verò quā equitātus noster in conspectum venit, hostes abjectis armis ^{ab} terga vertērunt, magnusque eōrum numērus est occisus.

^a 67, Note. (*a nobis.*) ^c § 123, R.

^m § 101, Obs. 4, (*ceperunt.*)

^b § 38.

^h 90, 4.

^c § 132, R. XLII.

ⁱ § 110, 1

ⁿ § 140, 2.

^d 44, 3.

^k § 126, R. III.

^o § 114, R.

^e § 129, R.

^l 108, 4.

^p § 120, R.

^f 19, (*negotiiis.*)

38. Cæsar postëro die Titum Labiënum legatum, cum iis legionibus, quas ex Britannia reduxerat, in Morinos, qui rebellionem fecerant, misit. Qui,^a cum propter siccitates paludum, quò se recipèrent,^b non haberent^c (quo perfugio^d superiori anno fuerant usi), omnes ferè in potestatem Labiëni venērunt. At Quintus Titurius et Lucius Cotta, legati, qui in Menapiörum fines legiones duxerant, omnibus eörum agris vastatis, frumentis succisis, ædificiis incensis, quòd Menapii se omnes¹ in densissimas silvas abdidērant, se ad Cæsarem receperunt. Cæsar in Belgis omnium legionum hiberna constituit. Eo duæ omnino civitates ex Britannia obsides miserunt; reliquæ neglexerunt. His rebus gestis, ex literis Cæsaris diörum^e viginti supplicatio a Senatu decretæ est.

^a 39, 5.^c § 140, Obs. 4.^e § 106, R. VII.^b § 140, 5.^d § 121, R. XXVI.

BOOK V.

GENERAL ARGUMENT.

I. Cæsar's second expedition into Britain—Chap. 1-23. II. War with Ambiorix—Chap. 24-54. III. Insurrection among the Treveri repressed—Chap. 55-58.

1. ¹ Lucio Domitio, Appio Claudio, consulibus, discēdens ab hibernis Cæsar in Italiam, ut quotannis facere consuērat, legātis impērat, quos legionibus præfecērat, uti, ² quamplurimas ^a possent, hiēme ^b naves ædificandas ^c veteresque reficiendas ^c curārent. Eārum modum formamque demonstrat. ³ Ad celeritatem onerandi subductionesque paulò facit humiliores, quā quibus ^d in ⁴ nostro mari uti consuevīmus; atque id eo ^e magis, quòd propter crebras commutatiōnes æstuum minùs magnos ibi fluctus fieri cognovērat: ad onēra et ad multitudinē jumentōrum transportandam paulò latiōres, quā quibus ^d in reliquis utimur maribus. Has omnes ⁶ actuarias impērat fieri, quā ad rem multū humilitas ⁶ adjūvat. Ea, quæ sunt usui ⁷ ad armandas naves, ex Hispaniā apportāri jubet. Ipse, conventibus Galliæ citeriōris peractis, in Illyricum proficiscitur, quòd a Pirustis finitūmam partem Provinciæ incursionibus vastāri audiēbat. Eò cū venisset, civitatibus ⁸ milites impērat, certumque in locum convenire jubet. Quā ⁹ re nunciātā, Pirustæ legātos ad eum mittunt, qui ^b doceant, nihil eārum rerum publico factum consilio, seseque parātos esse demonstrant, ¹⁰ omnibus rationibus ¹ de injuriis satisfacere. Acceptā oratiōne eōrum, Cæsar obsides impērat, eosque ad certam diem addūci jubet: nisi ita fecerint, sese bello civitatem persecutūrum de-

^a § 134, Obs. 6, 3d.

^d 37.

^e 38, 5.

^b § 131, R. XLI.

⁶ § 132, Obs. 6.

^h § 141, Obs. 2, 4th.

^c 108, 4.

⁷ § 123, R. & 5. 1.

ⁱ § 129, R.

monstrat. His ad diem adductis, ut imperavērat, arbitros inter civitates dat, ¹ qui litem aestiment ^a pœnamque constituent.^a

2. His confectis rebus ²conventibusque peractis, in citeriorem Galliam revertitur, atque inde ad exercitum proficiscitur. Eò cùm venisset, circuitis omnibus hibernis, singulari militum studio, in summâ omnium rerum inopiâ, circiter sexcentas ejus generis, cujus ^b suprâ demonstravimus, naves et longas viginti octo invēnit ³ instructas, ⁴ neque multum abesse ab eo, quin paucis diebus deduci possent.^c Colaudatis militibus^d atque iis^d qui negotio praeferant, quid fieri velit, ostendit, atque omnes ad portum Itium convenire jubet, quo ex portu commodissimum in Britanniam ^etransmissum^e esse cognoverat, circiter millium passuum^f triginta a continenti. Huic rei quod satis esse visum est militum,^g reliquit: ipse cum legionibus ^gexpeditis quatuor et equitibus octingentis in fines Trevirorum proficiscitur, quod hi neque ad concilia veniebant, neque imperio ^h pariebant, Germanosque transrhenanos sollicitare dicebantur.

3. Hæc civitas longè plurimum totius Galliæ equitatu valet, magnasque habet copias peditum, Rhenumque, ut suprâ demonstravimus, tangit. In eâ civitate duoⁱ de principatu inter se contendebant, Indutiomarus et Cingetorix: ex quibus ^jalter, simul atque ^kde Cæsaris legionumque adventu cognitum est, ad eum venit: se suosque omnes in officio futuros, neque ab amicitia Populi Romani defecturos confirmavit; quæque in Treviris gererentur,^l ostendit. At Indutiomarus equitatum peditatumque cogere,^m iisque,^d qui per ætatem in armis esse non poterant, in ⁿsilvam Arduennam abditis, quæ ingenti magnitudine per medios fines Trevirorum a flumine Rheno ad initium Remorum pertinet, bellum parareⁿ instituit. Sed postea quam nonnulli principes ex

^a § 141, Obs. 2, 4th. ^e § 145, R. ⁱ 19, 1.

^b § 99, Exc. 2. ^f § 106, R. VII. ^k 124, 18.

^c § 140, 3. ^g § 106, R. VIII. Obs. 10. ^l § 140, 5.

^d 109, 2. ^h 112, R. V. ^m § 144, R. LVII.

ea civitate, et familiaritate Cingetorigis adducti et adventu nostri exercitus perterriti, ad Cæsarem venerunt, et de suis privatim rebus ab eo petere cœperunt, ¹ quoniam civitati consulere non possent: ^a Indutiomārus, veritus ^b ne ^c ab omnibus desereretur, legatos ad Cæsarem mittit; ^d sese idcirco ab suis discedere atque ad eum venire noluisse, quò facilius civitatem in officio contineret, ne omnis nobilitatis discessu plebs propter imprudentiam ^e laberetur. Itaque esse civitatem in suâ potestate, seque, si Cæsar permitteret, ad eum in castra venturum, et suas civitatisque fortunas ejus fidē ^f permissurum.

4. Cæsar, etsi intelligebat, quâ de causâ ea dicerentur, ^g quæque eum res ab instituto consilio deterreret, ^h tamen, ne æstatem in Treviris consumere cogeretur, ⁱ omnibus ad Britannicum bellum rebus comparatis, Indutiomārum ad se cum ducentis obsidibus venire ^j jussit. His adductis, in iis filio propinquisque ejus omnibus, quos nominatim evocaverat, consolatus ^k Indutiomārum hortatusque est, uti in officio permaneret: nihilo tamen secius, principibus Trevirorum ad se convocatis, hos singillatim Cingetorigi conciliavit: quod cum ^l merito ejus ab se fieri intelligebat, tum ^m magni ⁿ interesse arbitrabatur, ejus auctoritatem inter suos quamplurimum valere, cujus tam egregiam in se voluntatem perspexisset. ^o Id factum graviter tulit Indutiomārus, ^p suam gratiam inter suos minui; et, qui ^q jam antè inimico in nos animo fuisset, ^r multo gravius hoc dolore exarsit.

5. His rebus constitutis, Cæsar ad portum Itium cum legionibus pervenit. Ibi cognoscit, quadraginta naves, quæ in Meldis factæ erant, tempestate rejectas. ^s cursum tenere non potuisse, atque eodem, unde erant profectæ, revertisse: reliquas paratas ad navigandum atque omnibus rebus in-

^a § 140, Obs. 2.^o § 140, 5.^l 124, 8.^b 106, 1.ⁱ § 140, 1, 2d.^k § 113, Exc. I.^c § 140, Obs. 6, & 121.^e 90, 4.¹ § 141, Obs. 7.^d 94, 4, & § 145, R.^h 115, 1.^m § 141, R. III.

structas invēnit. Eòdem totius Galliæ equitātus convēnit, numēro^a millium quatuor, principesque omnibus ex civitatibus: ex quibus perpauco, quorum in se fidem perspexerat, relinquere in Galliā, reliquos obsidum loco^a secum ducere, decreverat; quòd, cū ipse abesset, motum Galliæ verebatur.

6. Erat unā cum ceteris Dumnōrix Æduus, de quo ab nobis¹ antea dictum est. Hunc secum habere in primis constituērat, quòd eum² cupīdum rerum^b novārum, cupīdum imperii, magni animi,^c magnæ inter Gallos auctoritatis,^c cognoverat. Accedēbat huc, quòd jam in concilio Æduōrum Dumnōrix dixerat, sibi^d a Cæsare regnum civitātis deferri: quod^e dictum Ædui graviter ferēbant, neque recusandi aut deprecandi causā legātos ad Cæsārem mittere audēbant.² Id factum ex suis hospitibus Cæsar cognoverat. Ille omnibus primò precibus⁴ petere contendit, ut in Galliā relinqueretur; partim, quòd insuetus navigandi^b mare timeret;^f partim, quòd religionibus sese diceret impediri. Posteaquam id obstinātè sibi^d negari vidit, omni spe impetrandi ademtā, principes Galliæ sollicitare, sevocare singulos hortarique cœpit, uti in continenti remanerent;^g metu territare^h non sine causā fieri, ut Gallia omni nobilitate^b spoliaretur: id esse consilium Cæsaris, ut, quos in conspectu Galliæ interficere vereretur, hos omnes in Britanniam transductos necaret:^f ^g fidem reliquis interponere, jusjurandum poscere, ut, ⁷ quod¹ esse ex usu Galliæ intellexissent, communi consilio administrarent. Hæc a compluribus ad Cæsārem deferebantur.

7. Quā^c re cognitā, Cæsar, ⁸ quòd tantum civitatī Æduæ dignitātis^k tribuerat, coercendum¹ atque deterrendum,¹ quibuscumque rebus posset, Dumnōrigem statuēbat; quòd ⁹ longius ejus amentiam progrēdi vidēbat, ¹⁰ prospiciendum,^m

^a § 136, Obs. 5, (de.) • 38.

¹ 37, 2.

^b § 107, R. IX.

² § 141, Obs. 7.

^k § 106, R. VIII

^c § 106, R. VII.

³ § 140, 1, 3d.

¹ 108, 4.

^d § 126, R. III.

^b § 126, R. V.

^m 113, 5.

¹ne quid ^a sibi ^b ac rei publicæ nocere posset. Itaque dies ^c circiter viginti quinque in eo loco commoratus, quod ²Corus ventus navigationem impediēbat, qui magnam partem ^eomnis temporis in his locis flare consuevit, dabat operam, ut in officio Dumnorigem contineret, ^d nihilo tamen secius omnia ejus consilia ³cognosceret: ^d tandem, idoneam nactus tempestatem, milites equitesque conscendere naves jubet. At, ⁴omnium impeditis animis, Dumnorix cum equitibus Æduorum a castris, insciente Cæsare, domum ^ediscedere cepit. Quâ re nunciata, Cæsar, intermissâ profectiōne atque omnibus rebus postpositis, magnam partem equitatus ad eum insequendum mittit, retrahique ^fimpērat: si vim faciat neque ^epareat, interfici ^fjubet: nihil ⁵hunc ^bse absente pro sano facturum arbitratus, qui præsentis imperium neglexisset. ⁶Ille enim revocatus resistere ac se manu defendere suorumque fidem implorare cepit, sæpe clamitans, “liberum se liberæque civitatis ^kesse.” Illi, ut erat imperatum, circumstant atque hominem interficiunt; at Ædui equites ad Cæsarem omnes revertuntur.

8. His rebus gestis, Labiēno in continente cum tribus legionibus et equitum millibus duobus relicto, ut portus tueretur ^d et rem frumentariam provideret, ^d quæque in Galliâ gererentur ¹cognosceret, ^d ⁷consiliumque pro tempore et pro re caperet, ^d ipse cum quinque legionibus et ⁸pari numero equitum quem in continenti relinquebat, solis occasu ^mnaves solvit, et, leni Africo provectus, mediâ circiter nocte ^mvento intermisso, cursum non tenuit, et, ⁹longius delatus æstu, ortâ luce, sub sinistrâ Britanniam relictam conspexit. Tum rursus, æstus commutationem ¹⁰secutus, remis contendit, ut eam partem insulæ caperet, ^d quâ optimum esse egressum superiore æstate cognoverat. Quâ in re admōdum fuit

^a § 116, Obs. 3.^b § 130, 4.¹ § 141, R. III.^b § 112, R. V.^c 90, 4.² § 108, R. XII.^e § 131, R. XLI.^f § 93, 1, (and not.)¹ § 140, 5.^d § 140, 1. 2d.⁵ § 145, R.^m § 131, R. XL.

milītum ¹ virtus laudanda, qui ² vectoriis gravibusque navi-
giis, non intermisso remigandi labōre, longārum navium cur-
sum adæquārent. ³ Accessum est ^a ad Britanniam omnībus
navībus¹ meridiāno ferè tempore : neque in eo loco hostis est
visus, sed, ut postea Cæsar ex captivis compērit, cū^b mag-
næ manus eò convenissent,^b multitudīne navium perterritæ
(quæ ^c cum annotinis privatisque, quas sui quisque commō-
di^c fecerat, ampliùs octingentis uno erant visæ tempore), a
littōre discesserant ac se in superiōra loca abdidērunt.

9. Cæsar, exposito exercitū et loco castris ^d idoneo capto,
ubi ex captivis cognōvit, quo in loco hostium copiæ conse-
dissent,^e cohortibus decem ad mare relictis et equitibus tre-
centis, qui^f præsidio^e navibus essent, de tertiā vigiliā ad
hostes contendit, eo minùs ^g veritus navibus,^h quòd ⁱ in littōre
molli atque aperto deligatas ad anchōram relinquēbat; et
præsidio^e navium Quintum Atrium præfēcit. Ipse, noctu
progressus millia passuum circiter duodēcim, hostium copias
conspicātus est. Illi, equitatu¹ atque essēdis ad flumen
progressi, ex loco superiōre nostros prohibēre et prælium
committēre cōpērunt. Repulsi ab equitatu, se in silvas ab-
didērunt, locum nacti, egregiè et naturā et opēre munitum,
quem domestici belli, ut videbātur, causā jam antè præpa-
raverant: nam crebris arboribus^k succisis omnes introitus
erant ^lpræclūsi. Ipsi ex silvis rari propugnābant, nostrosque
intra munitiōnes ingrēdi prohibēbant. At milites legiōnis
septimæ, ^m testudinē^k factā, et aggere ad munitiōnes adjecto,
locum cepērunt eosque ex silvis expulērunt, paucis vulneri-
bus^k acceptis. Sed eos fugientes longiùs Cæsar prosēqui
vetuit, et quòd loci naturā ignorābat, et quòd, magnā
parte diēi consumptā munitiōni¹ castrōrum tempus relinqui
volēbat.

^a § 67, 5, Note.^c § 140, 5.ⁱ § 136, Obs. 5, (cum)^b § 140, Obs. 3.^f § 141, Obs. 2, 4th.^k 109, 2.^e § 106, Obs. 3. (causā.)^g § 114, R.^l § 110, R. XV.^d § 111, R.^h § 112, R. XVII.

10. Postridie ejus diēi^a mane ¹tripartitō milites equitesque in expeditiōnem misit, ut eos, qui fugerant, persequerentur. His aliquantum itinēris^b progressis, cū jam extrēmū^c essent in prospectu, equites a Quinto Atrio ad Cæsārem venērunt, qui^d nunciārent, ²superiōre nocte, maximā coortā tempestāte, prope omnes naves ³affictas^e atque in littōre ejectas esse; ⁴quōd neque anchōræ funesque ⁴subsisterent,^f neque nautæ gubernatoresque vim pati tempestātis possent: ⁵itāque ⁵ex eo concursu navium magnum esse ⁶incommōdum acceptum.^g

11. His rebus cognitis, Cæsar legiōnes equitatumque revocari atque itinēre desistere jubet: ipse ad naves revertitur: eādem ferē, quæ ex nuntiis literisque cognoverat, ⁷coram perspicit, sic ut, amissis circiter quadraginta navibus, reliquæ tamen refici posse magno negotio viderentur.^h Itaque ex legionibus fabros delēgit, et ex continenti alios accessiri jubet; Labiēno^h scribit, ut, quā plurimas posset, iis legionibusⁱ quæ sint^k apud eum, naves instituat. Ipse, etsi ⁸res erat multæ opē⁸ ac labōris, tamen commodissimum esse statuit, omnes naves ⁹subdūci^m et cum castris unā munitiōne conjungi. In his rebus circiter dies decem consūmit, ne nocturnisⁿ quidem temporibus ad labōrem militum intermissis. Subductis navibus castrisque egregiē munitis, easdem copias, quas antē, præsidio navibus reliquit: ipse eodem, unde redierat, proficiscitur. Eō cū venisset, majores jam undique in eum locum copiæ Britannōrum convenērunt, ¹⁰summa imperii bellicæ administrandi commūni consilio permissa Cassivellauno,^o cujus fines a maritimis civitatibus flumen dividit, quod appellatur Tamēsis, a mari circiter millia passuum octoginta. Huic^p ¹¹superiōre tempore cum reliquis civitatibus continentia bella intercessē-

^a § 135, R. XLVI.^f § 141, Obs. 7.¹ § 106, R. VII.^b § 106, R. VIII.² § 140, 1, 1st.^m 94, 3.^c Sup. *fugientium*.³ § 123, R.ⁿ 121, Note. 2.^d § 141, Obs. 2, 4th.⁴ § 136, Obs. 5, (ex.)^o § 126, R. III.^e 98, 2.^k § 141, Obs. 8.^p § 112, R. IV.

rant: sed nostro adventu permōti Britanni hunc toti bello^a imperiōque præfecerant.

12. Britanniae pars interior ab iis incolitur, ¹ quos^b natos in insulā ipsā, memoriā proditum dicunt: maritima pars ab iis, qui prædæ ac belli inferendi causā ex Belgis transierant; qui omnes ferè iis nominibus civitatum appellantur, quibus^c orti ex civitatibus eò pervenerunt, et ² bello illato ibi remanserunt atque agros colere cœperunt. Hominum est infinita multitudo, ³ creberrimæque ædificia, ⁴ ferè Gallicis^d consimilia: pecorum magnus numerus. Utuntur aut ære,^e aut ⁵ taleis ferreis, ad certum pondus examinatis, pro nummo. Nascitur ibi ⁶ plumbum album in mediterraneis regionibus, in maritimis ferrum; sed ejus exigua est ⁷ copia: ære^e utuntur importato. ⁸ Materia cujusque generis, ut in Galliā, est, præter fagum atque abiëtem. Leporem et gallinam et ansërem gustare, fas non putant; hæc tamen alunt ⁹ animi voluptatisque causā. ¹⁰ Loca sunt temperatiōra, quàm in Galliā, ¹¹ remissioribus frigoribus.^f

13. Insula natūrā ¹² triquetra, cujus unum latus est contra Galliam. Hujus latëris alter angulus, qui est ¹³ ad Cantium, quo ferè omnes ex Galliā naves appellantur, ad orientem solem; inferior ad meridiem spectat. Hoc latus tenet circiter millia passuum quingenta. Altërum vergit ¹⁴ ad Hispaniam atque occidentem solem, quā ex parte est Hibernia, ¹⁵ dimidio^h minor, ut æstimatur, quàm Britannia; ¹ ¹⁶ sed pari spatio^k transmissus, atque^l ex Galliā, est in Britanniam. In hoc medio cursu est insula, quæ appellatur ¹⁷ Mona; complures præterea minores objectæ insulæ existimantur; de quibus^c insulis nonnulli scripserunt, ¹⁸ dies^m continuos triginta sub brumā, esse noctem,^b Nos nihil de eo percontationibus reperiebamus, ¹⁹ nisi certis ex aquā mensuris brevior-

^a § 123, R.

• § 121, R. XXVI.

¹ § 120, Obs. 2, 2d.

^b § 145, R. & 91, 4.

^f 110.

^k § 132, R. XLII.

• 37, 6, Note. 1.

• 19, (*latus*.)

¹ § 149, Obs. 6.

^d § 111. R. & 19.

^h § 132, R. XLIII.

^m § 131, R. XLI

res esse, quàm in continente, noctes videbāmus. Hujus est longitūdo latēris, ut fert illōrum opinio, ¹ septingentōrum millium.^a Tertium est ² contra septentriones, cui parti ^b nulla est objecta terra; sed ejus angūlus latēris maxīmē ad Germaniam spectat: huic ^c millia ^d passuum ³ octingenta in longitudinē esse existimātur.^e Ita omnis insūla est in circuitu vices centum millium passuum.

14. Ex his omnibus longē sunt ⁴ humanissimi, qui Cantium incolunt, quæ regio est maritima omnis; neque multum a Gallicā diffērunt consuetudinē. Interiōres plerique frumenta non serunt, sed lacte ^f et carne vivunt, pellibusque ^g sunt vestiti. Omnes verò ⁵ se Britanni vitro inficiunt, quod cœruleum efficit colōrem, atque hoc horridiōre sunt in pugna aspectu:^h ⁶ capillōque ⁱ sunt promisso atque omni parte corpōris rasā, præter caput et labrum superius. Uxōres habent ⁷ deni duodenique inter se commūnes, et maxīmē fratres cum fratribus parentesque cum libēris; sed, si qui sunt ex his nati, eōrum habentur libēri, ⁸ quo ^k primū virgo quæque deducta est.

15. Equites hostium essedariique acriter prælio cum equitatu nostro in itinēre conflixerunt, ⁹ tamen ut nostri omnibus partibus superiōres fuērunt, atque eos in silvas collesque compulserint: sed compluribus interfectis, cupidius insecuti, nonnullos ex suis amisērunt. At illi, intermisso spatio, imprudentibus nostris atque occupatis in munitiōne castrōrum, subito se ex silvis eiecērunt, impetūque in eos facto, qui erant in statione pro castris collocati, acriter pugnaverunt: duabusque ¹⁰ submissis cohortibus a Cæsare, atque his primis legionum ^m duarum, cum hæ, perexiguo intermisso loci spatio inter se, ¹¹ constitissent, novo genēre pugnae perterritis nostris, per medios audacissimē perruperunt, seque inde in-

^a § 132, Obs. 3.^e 51.ⁱ § 136, Obs. 5, (cum)^b § 126, R. III.^f § 121, Obs. 2.^k § 136, Obs. 5, (a.)^c § 112, R. II.^g § 126, R. V.^l 22, 3.^d § 145, R.^h § 106, R. VII.ⁿ § 107, R. X.

colūmes recepērunt. Eo die Quintus Laberius Durus, tribūnus militum, interficitur. Illi, pluribus immissis cohortibus, repelluntur.

16. Toto hoc in genere pugnæ, ¹cū sub oculis omnium ac pro castris dimicarētur, ²intellectum est, ³nostros ⁴propter gravitatem armaturæ, quod neque insēqui ⁵cedentes possent, neque ab signis discedere auderent, minūs aptos esse ad hujus generis hostem; equites ⁶autem magno cum periculo dimicare, ⁷propterea quod illi etiam consultò plerumque ⁸cederent, ⁹et, cū paulū ab legionibus nostros removissent, ex essēdis desilirent ¹⁰et pedibus ¹¹dispāri praelio contendērent. Equestris autem praelii ratio et cedentibus ¹²et insequentibus par atque idem periculum inferēbat. Accedēbat huc, ut, nunquam ¹³conferti, sed rari magnisque intervallis ¹⁴præliarentur, ¹⁵stationesque dispositas haberent, ¹⁶atque ¹⁷alios alii deinceps exciperent, integritque et recentes defatigātis succedērent. ¹⁸

17. Postēro die procul a castris hostes in collibus constituerunt, rarique se ostendere et ¹⁹leniūs, quā pridie, nostros equites praelio lacessere cōpērunt. Sed meridie, cū Cæsar pabulandi causā tres legiōnes atque omnem equitatum cum Caio Trebonio legāto misisset, repentē ex omnibus partibus ad pabulatōres advolavērunt, sic, ²⁰ut ab signis legionibusque non absisterent. Nostri, acriter in eos impetu facto, repulērunt, neque finem sequendi fecērunt, quoad subsidio ²¹confisi equites, cū post se legiōnes vidērent, præcipientes hostes egērunt: magnōque eōrum numēro interfecto, neque sui colligendi, neque consistendi, aut ex essēdis desiliendi facultatem dedērunt. Ex hāc fugā protinus, quæ undique convenērant, auxilia discessērunt: ²²neque post id tempus unquam summis nobiscum copiis hostes contendērunt.

^a § 51, 2.

^b § 145, R.

^c 96, 2.

^d § 140, 6.

^e § 129, R.

^f 19, & § 123, R.

^g § 132, R. XLII.

^h § 140, 1, 4th.

ⁱ § 112, R. V.

18. Cæsar, cognito consilio eorum, ad flumen Tamēsin in fines Cassivellauni exercitum duxit; quod^a flumen uno omnino loco^b pedibus, atque hoc^c ægrè, transiri potest. Eò cum venisset, animadvertit, ad alteram fluminis ripam magnas esse copias hostium instructas: ripa^d autem erat^e acutis sudibus^f præfixis munita; ejusdem generis sub aquâ defixæ sudes flumīne^g tegebantur. His rebus cognitis a captivis perfugisque, Cæsar, præmisso equitatu, confestim legiōnes subsēqui jussit. Sed eā^h celeritate atque eoⁱ impetu milites ierunt, ²cum capite solo ex aquâ exstarent,^f ut hostes impetum legiōnum atque equitum sustinere non possent,⁵ ripasque dimitterent ac se fugæ mandarent.

19. Cassivellaunus, ³ut suprā demonstrāvimus, omni depositā spe contentiōnis, ⁴dimissis amplioribus copiis, millibus circiter quatuor essedariōrum relictis, itinera nostra servābat, paululumque ⁵ex viā excedēbat, locisque^b impeditis ac silvestribus sese occultābat, atque iis regionibus,^b quibus^b nos iter factūros cognovērat, pecora atque homines ex agris in silvas compellēbat: et, cum equitatus noster, liberius^h prædandi vastandique causā, se in agros effundēret, omnibus viisⁱ notis semitisque essedarios ex silvis emittēbat, et magno cum pericūlo nostrōrum equitum cum iis confligēbat, atque hoc metu latius^h vagari prohibēbat. ⁶Relinquebatur, ut neque longius ab agmine legiōnum discēdi^k Cæsar pateretur, et tantumⁱ in agris vastandis incendiisque faciendis ⁷hostibus^m noceretur,^k quantum labore^d atque itinere legionarii milites efficere poterant.

20. Intērim Trinobantes, propè firmissima eārum regiōnum civitas, ex quā Mandubratius adolescens, Cæsaris fidem secutus, ad eum in continentem Galliam venērat (cujus pater Imanuentius in eā civitate regnum obtinuērat, interfec-

^a 37, 6, Note. 1.^c 28, 1.ⁱ 109, 2.^b § 136, Obs. 5, (in.)^f § 140, Obs. 3.^k § 85, 3.^e 19, loco, Sup. (in.)⁵ § 140, 1, 1st.¹ § 116, Obs. 3.^g 129, R.^h 22, 3.^m 66, 7.

tusque erat a Cassivellauno, ipse fugâ mortem vitavêrat), legâtos ad Cæsarem mittunt, pollicenturque, sese ei deditûros atque imperâta factûros: petunt, ut Mandubratium ab injuriâ Cassivellauni defendat,^a ¹ atque in civitatem mittat, qui præsît ^b imperiumque obtineat.^b His ^c Cæsar impêrat obsides quadraginta frumentumque exercitui,^d Mandubratiumque ad eos mittit. Illi imperâta celeritè fecerunt, obsides ^e ad numêrum frumentâque miserunt.

21. Trinobantibus defensis atque ab omni militum injuriâ ³ prohibitis, Cenimagi, Segontiaci, Ancalites, Bibrœci, Cassi, legationibus missis sese Cæsari dedunt. Ab his cognoscit, non longè ex eo loco oppidum Cassivellauni abesse, silvis ^e paludibusque munitum, quo^f satis magnus hominum pecorisque numêrus convenêrit. (⁴ Oppidum autem Britanni vocant, cùm silvas impeditas vallo atque fossâ muniêrunt,^g quò incursiõnis hostium vitandæ causâ convenire consuêrunt.) Eò proficiscitur cum legionibus: locum repêrit egregiè natûrâ ^h atque opère munitum; tamen hunc duabus ex partibus oppugnâre contendit. Hostes, paulisper morâti, militum nostrorum impetum non tulêrunt, seseque aliâ ex parte oppidi eiecêrunt. Magnus ibi numêrus pecoris repertus, multique in fugâ sunt comprehensi atque interfecti.

22. Dum hæc in his locis geruntur, Cassivellaunus ad Cantium, quod ^h esse ⁱ ad mare suprâ demonstravimus, quibus ^l regionibus ^k quatuor reges præerant, Cingetorix, Carvilius, Taximagulus, Segônax, nuncios mittit, atque his impêrat, uti, coactis omnibus copiis, castra navalia de improviso ^l ^m adorianur atque oppugnent. Ii cùm ad castra venissent, nostri, eruptione factâ, multis eorum ^m interfectis, capto etiam nobili duce Lugotorige, suos incolûmes reduxerunt. Cassivellaunus, hoc prælio nunciâto, tot detrimentis accep-

^a § 140, 1, 3d.

^b § 129, R.

¹ 37, 1, (*regiones*.)

^b § 141, Obs. 2, 4th.

^c § 136, Obs. 5, (*in.*)

^k § 112, R. I.

^e § 123, R. & 5, 1.

^d § 140, Obs. 3.

^l § 90, 6.

^f § 110, R. XV.

^g § 145, R. & 91.

^m § 107, R. X.

tis, vastātis finibus, maxīmè etiam permōtus defectiōne civitatum, legātos per Atrebātem Commium de deditiōne ad Cæsārem mittit. Cæsar, cūm statuisset^a hiēmem in continenti propter repentinōs Galliæ¹ motus agēre, neque multum æstātis superesset, atque id faciliè extrāhi posse intelligēret, obsides impērat, et, quid in annos singūlos vectigālis^b Popūlo Romāno Britannia pendēret,^c constituit; interdicat atque impērat Cassivellauno, ne Mandubratio, neu Trinobantibus bellum faciat.^d

23. Obsidibus acceptis, exercitum reducit ad mare, naves invēnit² refectas. His deductis, quōd et^e ³captivōrum magnum numērum habēbat, et nonnullæ tempestāte deperiērant naves, duobus⁴ com meatibus exercitum reportāre instituit. Ac sic accidit, uti ex tanto navium numēro, tot⁵ navigationibus, neque hoc, neque superiōre anno,^f ulla omnino navis, quæ milites portāret,^g ⁶desiderarētur:^h at ex iis, quæ inānes ex continenti ad eum remitterentur,ⁱ et ⁷priōris com meatūs expositis militibus, et quas postea Labiēnus faciendas curaverat numēro sexaginta, ⁸perpaucae locum capērent;^k reliquæ fere omnes rejicerentur.^k Quas¹ cūm aliquamdiu Cæsar frustra expectāset,^a ne anni tempore a navigatione excluderētur, quōd æquinocium subērat, ⁹necessariō angustius milites collocāvit, ac, summā tranquillitāte consecūtā, secundā inīta cūm solvisset vigiliā, primā luce terram attigit, omnesque incolūmes naves perduxit.

24. ¹⁰Subductis navibus, conciliōque Gallōrum Samaro-brivæ^m peracto, quōd eo anno ¹¹frumentum in Galliā propter siccitātes angustius provenērat, coactus est aliter, ac superioribus annis,^f exercitum in hibernis collocāre, legionesque ¹²in plures civitatē distribuere: ex quibus unam in Morinos ducendam Caio Fabio legāto dedit; altēram in Nervios

^a § 140, Obs. 4.^e 124, 1.ⁱ § 141, Obs. 3.^b § 106, R. VIII.^f § 131, R. XL.^k Sup. *accidit ut.*^c § 140, 5.^g § 141, R. I. & Obs. 1.¹ 38.^d § 140, 1, 3d.^h § 140, 1, 4th.^m § 130, R. XXXVI.

Quintio Cicerōni; tertiam in Essuos Lucio Roscio; quartam in Remis cum Tito Labieno in confinio Trevirōrum hiemāre jussit; tres in Belgio collocāvit: his Marcum Crassum, quæstōrem, et Lucium Munatium Plancum et Caium Trebonium, legātos,* præfēcit. Unam legiōnem, quam proximè trans Padum conscripsērat, et cohortes quinque in Eburōnes, quorum pars maxīma est inter Mosam ac Rhenum, qui sub imperio Ambiorīgis et Cativolci erant, misit. His^b militibus Quintum Titurium Sabinum et Lucium Aurunculeium Cottam, legātos,^c præesse jussit. Ad hunc modum distribūtis legiōnibus, facillimè inopiæ^c frumentariæ sese¹ medēri posse existimāvit: atque harum^d tamen omnium hiberna (præter eam, quam Lucio Roscio in pacatissimam et quietissimam partem ducendam dedērat),² millibus passuum centum continebantur. Ipse interea, quoad legiōnes collocasset^e munitāque hiberna cognovisset, in Galliā morāri constituit.

25. Erat in Carnutibus³ summo loco^f natus Tasgetius, cujus majōres in suā civitatē regnum obtinuērant. Huic Cæsar, pro ejus virtute atque in se benevolentia, quod in omnibus bellis singulāri ejus operā fuērat usus, majōrum locum restituērat. ⁴ Tertium jam hunc annum^g regnantem inimici palam, multis etiam ex civitatē auctoribus, interfecērunt. Defertur ea res ad Cæsārem. Ille veritus, ⁵ quod ad plures pertinēbat, ne^h civitas eōrum impulsu deficēret, Lucium Plancum cum legiōne ex Belgio celeriter in Carnutes proficisci jubet, ibique hiemāre; quorumque operā cognovērit Tasgetium interfectum, hos comprehensos ad se mittere. Intērim ab omnibus legātis quæstoribusque, quibus legiōnes transdidērat, certior factus est, ⁶ in hiberna perventumⁱ locumque hibernis esse munitum.

26. Diēbus circiter quindēcim, quibus in hiberna ventum est,¹ initium repentinū tumultūs ac defectionis ortum est ab

* § 97, Obs. 2.

^b § 112, R. I.

^c § 112, R. V.

^d 19, (*legiōnum*.)

^e § 140, 4.

^f § 119, R.

^g § 131, R. XLI.

^h § 140, Obs. 6 & 121, 6.

ⁱ 67, 5, Note.

Ambiorġe et Cativolco : ¹ qui* cūm ad fines regni sui Sabīno^b Cottæque præstò fuissent, frumentumque in hiberna comportavissent, Indutiomāri Trevīri nunciis impulsī, suos concitavērunt, subitoque oppressis lignatorībūs, magnā manu castra oppugnātum^c venērunt. Cūm celerīter nostri arma cepissent vallumque ascendissent, atque, unā ex parte Hispānis equitībūs emissis, equestri prælio^d superiōres fuissent, ² desperātā re, hostes suos ab oppugnatione reduxērunt. Tum suo more conclamavērunt, utī aliqui ex nostris^e ad colloquium prodīrent; habēre se, quæ ³ de re commūni dicere vellent,^f quibūs rebus controversias ⁴ minui posse sperārent.^f

27. Mittitur ad eos colloquendi causā Caius Arpineius, eques Romānus, familiāris Quintii Titurii et Quintus Junius ex Hispaniā quidam, qui jam antè ⁵ missu Cæsāris ad Ambiorġem ventitāre consueverat : apud quos Ambiorix ⁶ ad hunc modum locūtus est : ⁷ “ Sese pro Cæsāris in se beneficiis ⁸ plurimum ei confitēri debēre, quòd ejus operā stipendio⁹ liberātus esset,^f quod Aduatūcis finitīmis suis pendere consuēssent :^f quòdque ei et filius et fratris filius ab Cæsāre remissi essent, quos Aduatūci, obsīdum numēro missos, apud se in servitūte et catēnis tenuissent :^f neque id, quod fecērīt ⁹ de oppugnatione castrōrum, aut iudicio^h aut voluntāte suā fecisse,ⁱ sed coactu^h civitātis; ¹⁰ suāque esse ejusmodi imperia, ut non minus habēret^k juris in se multitudo, quā ipse in multitudīnem. Civitāti^l porro hanc fuisse belli causam, quòd repentinæ Gallōrum conjurationi resistere non potuērīt : id se facīlè ¹¹ ex humilitāte suā probāre posse, quòd non adeo sit^f imperītus rerum, ut suis copiis^h Popūlum Romānum se superāre posse confīdat : sed ¹² esse Galhæ commūne consilium ; omnībūs hibernis Cæsāris oppugnandis hunc esse dictum diem, ne qua legio altēræ legiōni^m subsidio

* 39, 6.

* § 107, Obs. 8.

† § 145, Obs. 3.

b § 135, R. XLVII.

f § 141, Obs. 7.

k § 140, 1, 1st.

c § 143, 1.

s § 126, R. V.

l § 112, R. II.

d § 128, R.

h § 129, R.

m § 114, R.

venire posset :^a non facîle Gallos Gallis^b negare potuisse, præsertim cùm de recuperandâ communi libertate consilium initum videretur. ¹ Quibus^c quoniam pro pietate satisfacere, habere se nunc rationem officii pro beneficiis Cæsaris; monere, orare Titurium^d ² pro hospitio, ut suæ ac militum salutis consulat : magnam manum Germanorum conductam Rhenum transisse; ^e hanc^f affore biduo. ³ Ipsorum esse consilium, velintne^g prius, quàm finitimi sentiant,^h eductos ex hibernis milites aut ad Ciceronem aut ad Labienum deducere, quorum alterⁱ millia passuum circiter quinquaginta, alter^j paulò amplius ab his absit. Illud se polliceri et iurejurando confirmare, tutum iter per fines suos daturum; ^k quod^l cùm faciat, et^m civitati sese consulere, quod hibernis levetur, etⁿ Cæsari pro ejus meritis gratiam referre.” Hæc oratione habitâ, discedit Ambiōrix.

28. Arpineius et Junius, quæ audiērunt, ad legatos deferunt. Illi, repentinâ re perturbati, etsi ab hoste ea dicebantur, non tamen negligenda existimabant : maximèque hæc re permovebantur, quòd, civitatem ignobilem atque humilem Eburonum suâ sponte Populo Romano bellum facere ausam,^o vix erat credendum.^p Itaque ad consilium rem deferunt magnæque inter eos ^q existit controversia. Lucius Aurunculeius compluresque tribuni militum et primorum ordinum centuriones nihil temere agendum,^r neque ex hibernis injussu Cæsaris discedendum,^s existimabant : “quantavis magnas etiam copias^t Germanorum ^u sustineri posse munitis hibernis,” docebant : ^v “rem esse testimonio,” quòd primum hostium impetum, multis ultro vulneribus illatis, fortissimè sustinuērunt : ^w re frumentariâ non premi : interea et ex proximis hibernis et a Cæsare conventura subsidia

^a § 140, 1, 2d.^b 98, 2.^c 38, 4.^d § 112, R. V.^e § 145, R, & 19.^f 124, 1.^g 39, & § 112, R. III.^h § 140, 5.ⁱ 108.^j § 124, R. &^k § 140, 4.^l § 114, R. & Obs. 4.^m § 116, Exp.ⁿ 27, 10, Obs.^o § 140, 6.

postrēmo, "quid esse ¹levius aut turpius, quā, ²auctōre hoste,^a de summis rebus capere consilium?"

29. Contra ea Titurius, "serò factūros," ³clamitābat, "cum majōres hostium manus, adjunctis Germānis, convenissent: aut cūm aliquid calamitātis in proximis hibernis esset acceptum, brevem consulendi esse occasiōnem: ⁴Cæsārem^b arbitrāri profectum^c in Italiam: neque aliter Carnūtes interficiendi Tasgetii consilium fuisse captūros, neque Eburōnes, si ille adesset, tantā cum contentiōne nostri ad castra ventūros esse: ⁵non hostem auctōrem, sed rem spectāre; subesse Rhenum; magno esse Germānis dolōri Ariovisti mortem^b et superiōres nostras victorias:^b ⁶ardere Galliam,^b tot contumeliis acceptis sub Popūli Romāni imperium redactam, superiōre gloriā rei militāris extinctā." Postrēmo, "quis hoc sibi^d persuaderet,^e ⁷sine certā re Ambiorīgem ad ejusmōdi consilium descendisse^c? Suam sententiam in utramque partem esse tutam: ⁸si nil sit durius, nullo periculō ad proximam legiōnem perventūros; si Gallia omnis cum Germānis consentiat, ⁹unam esse in celeritāte positam salutem. Cottæ quidem atque eōrum, qui dissentiunt, consilium quem habēret^c exitum? In quo si non ¹⁰præsens periculūm, at certē longinquā obsidiōne^f fames esset pertimescenda."

30. ¹¹Hāc in utramque partem disputatiōne habītā, cūm a Cottā ¹²primisque ordinibus acriter resisterētur,^g ¹³"Vincite," inquit, "si ita vultis," Sabīnus, ¹⁴et id clariore voce,^f ut magna pars militūm exaudiret: "neque is sum," inquit, "qui^h gravissimē ex vobis mortis periculō terrear: ¹⁵hi sapient, et si gravius quid accidērit, abs te ratiōnem reposcent: qui,ⁱ si per te liceat, perendīno die cum proximis hibernis conjuncti, commūnem cum reliquis belli casum sustineant, ¹⁶nec rejecti et relegāti longē ab cetēris aut ferro aut fame intereant.

^a 110, 1.^d § 123, R.^e 67.^b § 145, R.^c § 140, 6.^h § 141, Obs. 2, 2d, & 40.^c 98, 2.^f § 129, R.ⁱ § 141, R. III. & Exp.

31. ¹ Consurgitur^a ex consilio; comprehendunt ² utrumque et orant, "ne suâ dissensiōe et pertinaciâ rem in summum pericūlum dedūcant:^b facilem esse rem, seu maneant,^c seu proficiscantur,^c si modò unum omnes sentiant ac probent; contrâ in dissensiōe nullam se salutem perspicere." ³ Res disputationē ad mediam noctem perducitur. Tandem ⁴ dat Cotta permōtus manus;^d supērat sententia Sabīni. ⁵ Pronunciātur,^d primâ luce itūros: consumitur vigiliis reliqua pars noctis, cū sua quisque miles circumspiceret,^e quid secum portāre posset,^e quid ex instrumento hibernōrum relinquere cogeretur.^e ⁷ Omnia excogitantur, quare nec sine pericūlo maneatur et languore militum et ⁸ vigiliis pericūlum augeatur. Primâ luce sic ex castris proficiscuntur, ⁹ ut quibus^f esset persuāsum,^g non ab hoste, sed ab homīne amicissīmo Ambiorge consilium datum,^h longissīmo agmīneⁱ maximisque impedimentis.

32. At hostes, posteaquam ex nocturno fremītu vigiliisque de profectiōe eōrum senserunt, collocātis insidiis bipartīto in silvis opportūno atque occulto loco, a^k millibus passuum circiter duobus, Romanōrum adventum expectābant: et, cū ¹⁰ se major pars agmīnis in magnam convallem demississet, ex utrāque parte ejus vallis subitō se ostendērunt, novissimosque premere et primos prohibere ascensu atque iniquissīmo nostris ¹ loco praelium committere cōpērunt.

33. Tum demum Titurius, ¹¹ut quī^f nihil antē providisset, trepidāre,^m concursare, cohortesque disponere; ¹² hēc tamen ipsa timide atque ut ⁿ eum omnia deficere viderentur: quod^o plerumque iis^p accidere consuēvit, qui ¹³ in ipso negotio consilium capere coguntur. At Cotta, qui^q cogitasset, hēc posse in itinere accidere, atque ob eam causam profectiōnis

^a 67, 5. Note.

^b § 140, 1, 3d.

^c § 140, 6.

^d 51, 2.

^e § 140, 5.

^f § 126, R. III.

^g § 141, Obs. 4.

^h 98, 2.

ⁱ § 129, R.

^k § 132, Obs. 5.

^l § 111, R.

^m § 144, Obs. 6.

ⁿ § 140, 1, 2d, (iia.)

^o 37, 9, Note. 3.

^p § 112, R. IV.

¹ auctor non fuisset, nullâ in re communi salutî ^a deërat, et in appellandis cohortandisque militibus, imperatōris; et in pugnâ, militis officia præstabat. Cùmque propter longitudinem agminis ² minùs facilè per se omnia obire, et, quid quoque loco ^c faciendum esset, ^b providere possent, ³ jussèrunt pronuntiare, ut impedimenta relinquere atque ⁴ in orbem consistere. Quod ^d consilium etsi in ejusmodi casu reprehendendum non est, tamen ^e incommodè accidit: nam et nostris militibus ^e spem minuit, et hostes ad pugnam alacriores effecit, quod non sine summo timore et desperatione id factum videbatur. Præterea accidit, quod ^f fieri necesse erat, ut ^g vulgò milites ab signis discederent, ^h quæ quisque eorum ^g carissimâ haberet ⁱ ab impedimentis petere atque abripere properaret, ^h clamore ac fletu omnia complerentur.

34. At ⁸ barbaris ^a consilium non defuit: nam duces eorum totâ acie pronuntiare jussèrunt, "ne quis ab locis discederet ⁹ illorum ^b esse prædam, atque illis ^c conservari, quæcumque Romani reliquissent: proinde omnia in victoriâ posita existimarent." ¹⁰ Erant et virtute et numero pugnando ^d pares nostri, tamen etsi ab duce et a fortunâ deserebantur, tamen omnem spem salutis in virtute ponebant, et, quoties quæque cohors procurreret, ab eâ parte magnus hostium numerus cadēbat. Quâ ^d re animadversâ, Ambiorix pronuntiari jubet, ut procul tela conijciant, neu propius accedant, et, quam in partem Romani impetum fecerint, ¹¹ cedant (levitate armorum et quotidianâ exercitatiōe ¹² nihil iis noceri posse ^m): rursus se ad signa recipientes insequantur.

35. Quo ^d præcepto ab iis diligentissimè observato, cùm quæpiam cohors ex orbe excesserat atque impetum fecerat, hostes velocissimè fugiebant. Intèrim eam partem nudari necesse erat et ab latere aperto tela recipi. Rursus, cùm

^a § 112, R. I.^e § 123, R.ⁱ § 141, Obs. 8.^b § 140, 5.^f 37, 9, Note. 3.^k § 108, R. XII.^c § 136, Obs. 5, (in.)^g § 107, R. X.^l § 128, R.^d 38.^h § 140, 1, 4th.^m 66, & 68, 2.

in eum locum, unde erant progressi, reverti cōpērant, et ab iis, qui cessērant, et ab iis, qui proximi^a stetērant, circumveniebantur; sin autem ¹ locum tenēre vellent, nec virtūti^b locus relinquebātur, neque ab tantā multitudīne coniecta tela conferti vitāre potērant. Tamen tot incommōdis conflictāti, multis vulneribus acceptis, resistēbant et, magnā parte diēi consumptā, cūm a primā luce ² ad horam octāvam pugnārētur, nihil, quod ipsis^c esset indignum, committēbant. Tum Tito Balventio,^d qui superiōre anno primum pilum duxērat, viro forti et magnæ auctoritātis, ³ utrumque femur tragulā transjicitur. Quintus Lucanius, ejusdem ordinis,^e fortissimè pugnans, dum circumvento filio^f ⁴ subvēnit, interficitur: Lucius Cottā, legātus, omnes cohortes ordinesque adhortans, cum adversum eos fundā vulnerātur.

~~36.~~ His rebus permōtus Quintus Titurius, cum procul Ambiorigem^g eos cohortantem conspexisset, interprētem suum, Cneium Pompeium, ad eum mittit, rogātum,^h ut sibiⁱ militibusque parcat. Ille appellātus respondit: “si velis secum collōqui, licēre; sperāre, a multitudīne impetrāri posse, quod^k ad militum salutē pertineat; ¹ ⁶ ipsi^k vero nihil nocitū iri, inque eam rem se^l suam fidem interponēre.” Ille cum Cottā saucio comunicat, “si videātur, pugnā ut excēdant et cum Ambiorige unā colloquantur: sperāre, ab eo de suā ac militum salutē impetrāre posse.” Cottā se ad armātum hostem itūrum negat ⁷ atque in eo constitit.

37. Sabīnus, quos⁸ in præsētia tribūnos militum circum se habēbat et primōrum ordinum centuriōnes, se sequi jubet, et, cum propius Ambiorigem^m accessisset, jussus arma abjicere, imperātum facit, suisque, ut idem faciant, imperat. Intērim, dum de conditionibus inter se agunt, longiorque

^a § 98, Obs. 10.^c § 106, R. VII.¹ § 140, 6.^b § 126, R. III.^f § 112, Obs. 5, 2d.^k 66, 7.^c § 119, R.^e § 148, 1.¹ § 145, R.^d § 110, Obs. 1.^k 37, 2.^m § 136, Obs. 5, (ad.)

consultò ab Ambiorige instituitur sermo, paulatim circumventus interficitur. Tum vero suo more ¹victoriam conclamant atque ululatum tollunt, impetūque in nostros facto, ordines perturbant. Ibi Lucius Cotta pugnans interficitur cum maximā parte militum, reliqui se in castra recipiunt, unde erant egressi: ex quibus Lucius Petrosidius aquilifer, cum magnā multitudīne hostium premeretur, aquilam intra vallum projecit, ipse pro castris fortissimē pugnans occiditur. ² Illi ægrē ad noctem oppugnationem sustinent: noctu ³ad unum ^a omnes, desperatā salutē, se ipsi ^b interficiunt. Pauci ex prælio elapsi, incertis itineribus ^c per silvas ad Titum Labienum legatum in hiberna perveniunt atque eum de rebus gestis certiorē faciunt.

38. Hāc victoriā ^c ⁴ sublatus Ambiorix, statim cum equitatu in Aduatucos, qui erant ejus regno ^d finitimi, proficiscitur; neque noctem neque diem intermittit, peditatumque se subsēqui jubet. Re demonstratā, Aduatucisque concitatis, postero die in Nervios pervēnit, hortaturque, “ne sui ^e in perpetuum liberandi atque ulciscendi ^f Romānos, pro iis, quas acceperint, ^h injuriis, occasiōnem dimittant: interfectos esse ⁱ legatos duo magnamque partem exercitūs interisse” ¹ demonstrat; ⁵ “nihil esse negotii, subitō oppressam legiōnem, quæ cum Cicerōne hiēmet, ^k interfici; ⁶ se ad eam rem profitetur adiutorem.” ¹ Facilē hāc oratiōe Nervii persuadet.

39. Itaque, confestim dimissis nunciis ad Ceutrones, Grudios, Levacos, Pleumoxios, Geidunos, qui omnes sub eorum imperio sunt, quā maximas manus possunt, cogunt, et de improvīso ad Cicerōnis hiberna advolant, nondum ad eum famā de Titurii morte perlātā. ⁷ Huic quoque accidit, quod ^m fuit necesse, ut nonnulli milites, qui lignationis munitionis-

^a 19, (*homīnem*.)

^b 33, 1.

^c § 129, R.

^d § 111, R.

^e 112, 5.

^f § 90, 6.

^g 112, 1.

^h § 141, Obs. 7.

ⁱ 98, 2, & 94, 1, 2.

^k § 140, 6.

^l § 97, R.

^m 37, 9, Note 3.

que causâ in silvas discessissent,^a repentinô equitum adven-
tu interciperentur.^b His circumventis, magnâ manu Ebu-
rônes, Nervii, Aduatûci atque horum omnium socii et cli-
entes, legiônem oppugnâre incipiunt: nostri celeritèr ad
arma concurrunt, vallum conscendunt. ¹ Ægrè is dies sus-
tentâtur, quòd omnem spem hostes in celeritatè ponèbant,
atque, hanc adepti ^c victoriam, in perpetuum se fore victô-
res^d confidèbant.

40. Mittuntur ad Cæsârem confestim ab Cicerône litèræ,
magnis ^a propositis præmiis, si pertulissent. Obsessis omni-
bus viis, missi ^c intercipiuntur. Noctu ex eâ materiâ, quam
munitionis causâ comportavèrant, ^b turres admòdum centum
et viginti excitantur incredibîli celeritatè: quæ^f deesse opè-
ri^g videbantur, perficiuntur. Hostes postèro die, multo ma-
joribus copiis coactis, castra oppugnant, fossam complent.
Ab nostris eâdem ratiône,^h quâ pridie, resistitur: ⁱ hoc idem
deinceps reliquis fit dièbus. Nulla pars nocturni tempòris
ad labòrem intermittitur: non ægris,^k non vulnerâtis, facul-
tas quiëtis datur: quæcumque ^l ad proximi dièi oppugnationem
opus sunt, noctu comparantur: multæ ^m præustæ sudes,
magnus muralium pilòrum numèrus instituitur; ⁿ turres
contabulantur, pinnæ loricæque ex cratibus attexuntur.
Ipse Cicèro, ^o cùm tenuissimâ valetudinè ^p esset, ne noctur-
num ^q quidem sibi tempus ad quiètem relinquèbat, ut ^r ultro
milîtum concursu ac vocibus ^s sibi ^t parcère cogerètur.

41. Tunc duces principesque Nerviorum, qui ^a aliquem
sermônis aditum causamque amicitiae cum Cicerône habè-
bant, collòqui sese velle dicunt. ^b Factâ potestâte, eâdem,
quæ Ambiorix cum Titurio egèrat, commemorant, "omnem
esse in armis Galliam, Germânos Rhenum transisse, Cæsâr-

^a § 141, R. I.

^c 37, 2.

ⁱ 37, 8, Note. 2.

^b § 140, 1, 4th.

^e § 112, R. I.

^m § 106, R. VII.

^d 105, 1.

^h § 129, R.

ⁿ 121, Note. 2.

^e § 103, R.

^l 67, 1.

^o § 140, 1, 1st, (ita.)

^f 19, (homines.)

^k § 126, R. III. & 19.

^p § 112, R. V.

is reliquorumque hiberna oppugnāri.” Addunt etiam de Sabīni morte. ¹ Ambiorīgem ostentant fidēi faciendæ causā: “errāre ² eos” dicunt, “si quicquam ab his præsidiis sperent,^a qui suis rebus^b diffīdant; ^c sese tamen ³ hoc esse in Cicerōnem Populumque Romānum animo,^d ut nihil nisi hiberna recūsant^m atque hanc inveterascēre consuetudinem nolint:^m ⁴ licēre illis^e incolumībus per se ex hibernis discedēre, et, quascumque in partes velint, sine metu proficisci.” Cicerō ad hęc unum modò respondit. “Non esse consuetudinem Popūli Romāni, ullam accipēre ab hoste armāto conditiōnem: si ab armis discedēre velint,^a se^f ⁵ adiutōre utantur,^f legatosque ad Cæsārem mittant: ⁶ sperāre, ⁶ pro ejus justitiā, quæ petiērint,^c impetratūros.”

42. Ab hęc spe repulsi Nervii, vallo^h pedum undēcim et fossā pedum quindēcim hiberna cingunt. Hęc et superiorum annōrum consuetudinē^h a nostris cognovērunt, et, quosdam de exercītu nacti captivos, ab his docebantur: ⁷ sed, nullā ferramentōrum copiā,ⁱ quæ sunt ad hunc usum idonea, gladiis^h cespitem circumcidēre, manībus^h ⁸ sagulisque ⁹ terram exhaurire cogeabantur. Quā^k quidem ex re homīnum multitūdo cognosci potuit: nam minūs horis tribus ¹⁰ millium decem in circuitu munitiōnem perfecērunt: reliquisque diēbus turres ad altitudinē valli, ¹¹ falces testudinesque, quas iīdem captīvi docuērunt, parāre ac facēre cœpērunt.

43. Septīmo oppugnationis die, maxīmo coorto vento, ¹² ferventes fusili ex argillā^l glandes fundis et ¹³ fervefacta jacūla in casas, quæ more^h Gallico stramentis erant tectæ, jacēre cœpērunt. Hæ celerīter ignem comprehendērunt et venti magnitudinē^h in omnem castrōrum locum ¹⁴ distulērunt. Hostes, maxīmo clamōre^h insectūti, quasi partā jam atque exploratā victoriā, turres testudinesque ¹⁵ agēre et scalis val-

^a § 140, 2.^e 66, 2.ⁱ 110, 1.^b § 112, R. V.^f § 121, R. XXVI.^k 38.^c § 141, Obs. 3.⁸ § 139, 2.^l § 128, Obs. 2.^d § 106, R. VII.^h § 129, R.^m § 140. 1. 1st.

lum ascendere cœperunt. At tanta militum virtus atque ea ^a præsentia animi fuit, ut, cum undique flammâ torrerentur, ^b maximâque telorum multitudine premerentur, ^b suâque omnia impedimenta atque omnes fortunas conflagrare intelligerent ^b non modò ¹ demigrandi causâ de vallo decederet ^c nemo, sed pæne ne respiceret ^c quidem quisquam; ac tum omnes ² acerrimè fortissimèque pugnarent. Hic dies nostris ^d longè gravissimus fuit; sed tamen hunc habuit eventum, ut eo die maximus hostium numerus vulneraretur ^c atque interficeretur, ut ^e se sub ipso vallo constipaverant ³ recessumque primis ^f ultimi non dabant. Paulum quidem intermissâ flammâ, et quodam loco ^e ⁴ turri ^b adactâ et contingente vallum, tertiæ cohortis centuriões ex eo, quo ⁵ stabant, ¹ loco recesserunt suosque omnes removerunt; nutu ^k vocibusque hostes, “si introire vellent,” vocare cœperunt, ⁶ quorum progrèdi ausus est nemo. Tum ex omni parte lapidibus ^b coniectis ⁶ deturbati, turrisque succensa est.

44. Erant in eâ legiōne fortissimi viri centuriões, ⁷ qui jam primis ordinibus ¹ appropinquarent, Tito Pulvio et Lucius Varēnus. Hi perpetuas controversias inter se habebant, quinam anteferrētur, ^m omnibusque annis de loco summis simultatibus ^k contendebant. Ex iis Pulvio, cum acerrimè ad munitiões pugnaretur, “Quid dubitas,” inquit, “Varēne? aut quem locum probandæ virtutis tuæ ⁸ spectas? hic, hic dies de nostris controversiis iudicabit.” Hæc cum dixisset, ^b procedit extra munitiões, ⁹ quâque pars hostium confertissima visa est, in eam irrumpit. Ne Varēnus quidem tum vallo sese continet, sed omnium veritus existimationem subsequitur. Tum, mediocri spatio ^b relicto, Pulvio pilum in hostes mittit atque unum ex multitudīne ¹⁰ procurrentem transjicit, quo ^b percusso et exanimato, ¹¹ hunc scutis protē-

^a 28, 1.^b § 140, Obs. 4.^c § 140, 1, 1st.^d § 111, R.^e § 140, Obs. 1.^f § 123, R. & 19.^g § 136, Obs. 5, (in.)^h 109, 2.ⁱ § 44, II. 2.^j § 129, R.^k § 112, R. IV.^l § 140, 5.

gunt hostes, ¹ in illum tela universi conjiciunt neque dant regrediendi facultatem. Transfigitur scutum Pulfioni^a et verutum in balteo defigitur. Avertit hic casus vaginam et gladium educere conanti^b dextram moratur manum; impeditum^c hostes circumsistunt. ² Succurrit inimicus illi^d Varēnus et laboranti^e subvenit. Ad ³hunc se confestim a Pulfione omnis multitudo convertit, ⁴illum veruto transfixum arbitrantur. Occursat ocius gladio cominusque rem gerit Varēnus atque, uno interfecto, reliquos paulum propellit: dum cupidius instat, ⁵in locum dejectus inferiorem concidit. Huic rursus circumvento fert subsidium Pulfio atque ambo incolūmes, compluribus interfectis, summā cum laude sese intra munitiōnes recipiunt. Sic fortuna ⁶in contentiōne et certamine utrumque versavit, ut alter alteri^d inimicus auxilio^f salutique esset, neque dijudicari posset, uter utri^g virtute^h antefendus videretur.

45. ⁷Quantoⁱ erat in dies gravior atque asperior oppugnationo, et maxime quod, magnā parte militum confecta vulneribus, res ad paucitatem defensorum pervenerat, tanto¹ crebriores literarum nuntiique ad Cæsarem mittebantur: quorum pars deprehensa in conspectu nostrorum militum cum cruciātu necabatur. Erat ⁸unus intus Nervius, nomine Vertico,⁹ loco natus honesto, qui a primā obsidiōne ad Ciceronem perfugerat, suamque ei fidem præstiterat. Hic ¹⁰servo^k spe libertatis magnisque persuadet præmiis, ut literas ad Cæsarem deferat. Has ille in jaculo illigatas effert, et, Gallus inter Gallos sine ullā suspiciōne versatus, ad Cæsarem pervenit. Ab eo^l de ¹¹periculis Ciceronis legionisque cognoscitur.

46. Cæsar, acceptis literis ¹²horā circiter undecimā diēi, statim nuncium in Bellovacos ad Marcum Crassum quæs-

^a § 110, Obs. 1,

^b 19, (ei,) & ^a.

^c 19, (eum.)

^d § 111, R.

^e § 112, R. V.

^f § 114, R.

^g § 126, R. III.

^h § 128, R.

ⁱ § 132, R. XLIII. Obs.

^j 6, & 44, 8, & 47.

^k 63, & § 123, R.

^l 67, 1.

torem mittit; cujus hiberna abērant ab eo millia passuum v. ginti quinque. Jubet mediā nocte legiōnem proficisci,^a celeriterque ad se venīre. Exiit cum nuncio Crassus, Altērum^b ad Caium Fabium legātum mittit, ut in Atrebatium fines legiōnem addūcat,^c ¹ quā sibi^d iter faciendum sciēbat. Scribit Labiēno, ² si reipublicæ commōdo facere posset, cum legiōne ad fines Nerviorum veniat:^e reliquā partem exercitūs, quod paulō abērat longiūs, non putat expectandam;^f equites circiter quadringentos ex proximis hibernis cogit.

47. Horā circiter tertiā ab antecursoribus de Crassi adventu certior factus, eo die millia^f passuum viginti progreditur. Crassum Samarobrīvā^g praeſcit, legionemque ei^h attribuit, quod ibi impedimenta exercitūs, obsides civitātum, ³ litēras publicas, frumentumque omne, quod eō ⁴ tolerandae hiēmis causā devexerat, relinquebat. Fabius, ut imperātum erat, non ita multum morātus, in itinere cum legiōne occurrit. Labiēnus, interitū Sabini et caede cohortium cognitā, cū omnes ad eum Trevirōrum copiae venissent,^h veritus, ne,ⁱ si ex hibernis fugae similem projectionem fecisset, hostium impetum sustinere non posset, praesertim quos^k recenti victoriā efferri sciret, litēras Cæsari remittit, quanto cum periculō legiōnem ex hibernis eductūrus esset:^l ⁵ rem gestam in Eburonibus perscribit: docet, omnes peditātis equitatūsque copias Trevirōrum tria millia^f passuum longē ab suis castris consedissee.

48. Cæsar, consilio ejus probato, etsi, ⁶ opiniōne^m trium legiōnum dejectus, ad duas rediērat, tamen unum commūnis salutis auxilium in celeritate ponebat. Venit magnis itineribus in Nerviorum fines. Ibi ex captivis cognoscit, quæ apud Cicerōnem gerantur,¹ quantōque in periculō res sit.¹ Tum cuidam^g ex equitibus Gallis magnis præmiis persuadet,

^a 90, 4.

^b 19, (*nuncium*.)

^c § 140, 1, 3d.

^d 113, 5.

^e 108, 4.

^f § 132, R.

^g § 123, R.

^h § 140, Obs. 3.

ⁱ § 140, Obs. 6.

^k § 145, R. & 91, 4.

^l § 140, 5.

^m § 136, R. LII.

utl ad Cicerōnem epistolam defērat. Hanc Græcis conscrip-
tam litēris mittit, ne, interceptā epistolā, nostra ab hostibus
consilia cognoscantur.^a ¹ Si adire non possit, monet, ut tra-
gūlam cum epistolā, ² ad amentum deligatā, intra munitiō-
nes castrōrum abjiciat.^b In litēris scribit, se cum legionibus
profectum celeriter affōre: hortātur, ut pristinam virtūtem
retineat. Gallus, pericūlum veritus, ut erat præceptum, tra-
gūlam mittit. Hæc ³ casu ad turrim adhæsit, neque ^c ab
nostris biduo animadversa; tertio die a quodam milite con-
spicitur; demta ad Cicerōnem defertur. Ille ⁴ perlectam in
conventu militum recitat, maximāque omnes lætitiā afficit.
Tum fumi incendiōrum procul videbantur, quæ res omnem
dubitatiōnem adventūs legiōnum ^e expūlit.

49. Galli, re cognitā per exploratōres, obsidiōnem relin-
quunt, ad Cæsārem omnibus copiis contendunt; eæ erant
armatōrum circiter millia ^d sexaginta. Cicēro, datā facul-
tātē, Gallum ab eōdem Verticōne, quem suprā demonstrav-
imus, repētit; qui litēras ad Cæsārem refērat; ^e hunc ^f ad-
mōnet, iter cautē diligenterque faciat: ^g perscribit in litēris,
hostes ab se discessisse, omnemque ad eum multitudinē
convertisse. Quibus ^h litēris circiter mediā nocte Cæsar al-
lātis suos facit certiōres, eosque ad dimicandum animo con-
firmat: postēro die luce primā movet castra, et circiter mil-
lia ⁱ passuum quatuor progressus, trans vallem magnam et
rivum multitudinē hostium conspicātur. Erat magni peri-
cūli ^k res, cum tantis copiis iniquo loco ^l dimicāre. Tum,
quoniam liberātum obsidiōne ^m Cicerōnem sciēbat, eoque
omnino remittendum de celeritātē existimābat, consēdit, et,
quām æquissimō potest loco, ¹ castra commūnit. Atque hæc,
etsi erant exigua per se, vix hominū ^k millium septem, præ-
sertim nullis cum impedimentis, ⁶ tamen angustiis viarum

^a § 140, 1, 2d.^c § 141, Obs. 2 4th.¹ § 132, R. XLII.^b § 140, 1, 3d.^f § 124, R.^k § 106, R. VII.^c § 93, 1.^g § 140, 1, 3d, & Obs. 5.¹ § 136, Obs. 5, (in.)^d § 136, R. XLVIII.^h 38.^m § 126, R. V.

quàm maxime potest, contrahit, eo consilio, ut in summam contemtionem hostibus^a veniat. Interim, speculatoribus in omnes partes dimissis, explorat, quo commodissimo^b itinere vallem transire possit.

50. Eo die, parvulis equestribus praeliis ad aquam factis, utrique sese suo loco continent; ¹ Galli, quod ampliores copias, quæ nondum conveniant, expectabant; Cæsar, si forte timoris simulatione hostes ² in suum locum elicere posset, ut citra vallem pro castris prelio contendere^c; si id efficere non posset, ut, exploratis itineribus, minore cum periculo vallem rivumque transiret.^c Prima luce hostium equitatus ad castra accedit, preliumque cum nostris equitibus committit. Cæsar consulto equites cedere,^d seque in castra recipere^d jubet; simul ex omnibus partibus castra altiore vallo muniri,^d ³ portasque obstrui, atque in his administrandis rebus quàm maxime concursari et cum simulatione timoris agi jubet.

51. Quibus omnibus rebus hostes invitati copias transducunt, aciemque iniquo loco constituunt; nostris verò ⁴ etiam de vallo deductis, propius accedunt, et tela intra munitionem ex omnibus partibus conjiciunt; præconibusque ^e circummissis pronuntiari jubent, "seu quis Gallus seu Romanus velit ante horam tertiam ⁶ ad se transire, sine periculo licere; post id tempus non fore potestatem:" ⁶ ac sic nostros contemsērunt, ut obstructis in speciem portis singulis ordinibus cespitem, quod ⁷ eā non posse introrumpere videbantur, alii vallum manu scindere, alii fossas complere inciperent. Tum Cæsar, omnibus portis eruptione facta equitatuque emissio, celeriter hostes dat in fugam, sic, uti omnino pugnandi causā resistere nemo; magnumque ex eis numerum occidit, atque omnes armis^f exiit.

52. ⁸ Longius prossequi veritus, quod silvæ paludesque intercedebant, neque etiam parvulo detrimento ⁹ illorum locum

^a § 110, Obs. 1.

^c § 140, 1, 2d.

^e 109, 2.

^b § 98, Obs. 10.

^d 90, 4.

^f § 125, R.

relinqui vidēbat, omnibus suis incolumibus copiis eōdem die ad Cicerōnem pervēnit. Institūtas turres, testudines, munitionesque hostiū admirātur: ¹productā legiōne cognoscit, non decimum quemque esse relictum militem sine vulnere. Ex his omnibus iudicat rebus, quanto cum pericūlo et quantā cum virtūte res sint ^a administratæ: Cicerōnem ²pro ejus merito, legionemque collaudat: centuriōnes singillatim tribunosque militum appellat, quorum egregiam fuisse virtutem testimonio Cicerōnis cognovērat. De casu Sabīni et Cottæ certiūs ex captivis cognoscit. Postēro die conciōne habitā ³rem gestam proponit, milites consolatur et confirmat: quōd detrimentum ⁴culpā et temeritatē legātī sit ^b acceptum, hoc ^c æquiorē animo ferendum docet, ^dquōd, beneficio Deōrum immortalium et virtūte eōrum ^eexpīto incommodo, neque hostibus diutīna lætatio, neque ipsis longior dolor relinquantur.^c

53. Intērim ad Labiēnum per Remos incredibīli celeritatē de victoriā Cæsaris fama perfertur, ut, cū ab hibernis Cicerōnis abesset millia passuum circiter sexaginta, eōque ^apost horam nonam diēi Cæsar pervenisset, ante mediam noctem ad portas castrōrum clamor orirētur,^d quo clamōre significatio victoriæ gratulatiōque ab Remis Labiēno ^efiēret. Hāc famā ad Treviros perlātā, Indutiomārus, qui postēro die castra Labiēni oppugnāre decrevērāt, noctu profūgit, copiasque omnes in Treviros reducit. Cæsar Fabium cum legiōne in sua remittit hiberna, ipse cum tribus legionibus circum Samarobrīvam ⁹trinīs hibernis hiemāre constituit; et, quōd tanti motus Galliæ extitērāt, totam hiēmem ipse ad exercitum manēre decrevit. Nam illo incommōdo de Sabīni morte perlāto, omnes ferē Galliæ civitatēs de bello ¹⁰consultābant, nuncios legationesque in omnes partes dimittēbant, et ¹¹quid reliqui consilii ^fcapērēt^a atque unde initium belli fiēret, explorābant, nocturnaque in locis desertis ¹²concilia

^a § 140, 5.^c 77, 5.^e § 126, R. III.^b § 140, Obs. 2.^d § 140, 1, 3d.^f § 106, R. VIII

habēbant. Neque ullum ferè totius hiēmis tempus sine sollicitudine Cæsaris intercessit, ¹quin^a aliquem de conciliis ac motu Gallōrum nuncium accipēret.^a In his ab Lucio Roscio legāto, quem legiōni decimæ tertię præfecerat, certior est factus, magnas Gallōrum copias eārum civitātum, quæ ²Armoricæ appellantur, oppugnandi sui causā convenisse: neque longiūs^b millia passuum octo ab hibernis suis abfuisse, sed nuncio allāto de victoriā Cæsaris, discessisse, adeo ut fugæ similis discessus viderētur.

54. At Cæsar, principibus cujusque civitātis ad se evocātis, aliās^c territando, cū se scire, quæ fiērent, denunciāret, aliās cohortando, magnam partem Galliæ in officio tenuit. Tamen Senōnes, quæ est civitas in primis firma et magnæ inter Gallos auctoritātis, Cavarinū, quem Cæsar apud eos regem constituērat (cujus frater Moritasgus, adventu in Galliam Cæsaris, cujusque majores regnum obtinuērant), interficere publico consilio conāti, cū ille præsensisset ac profugisset, usque ad fines insectūti regno^d domoque expulserunt: et, missis ad Cæsarem satisfaciendi causā legātis, cū is omnem ad se senātum venīre jussisset, ³dicto audientes non fuērunt. ⁴Tantum^e apud homīnes barbāros valuit, esse repertos aliquos principes belli inferendi, tantamque omnibus voluntātum commutatiōnem ⁵attūlit, ut præter Æduos et Remos, quos ⁶præcipuo semper honore Cæsar habuit, ⁷altēros pro vetēre ac perpetuā erga Populū Romānum fide, ⁷altēros pro recentibus Gallici belli officiis, ⁸nulla ferè civitas fuērit non^f suspecta nobis. ⁹Idque adeo haud scio mirandumne sit, cū compluribus aliis de causis, tum maxime,, ¹⁰quod, qui virtute belli omnibus gentibus præferēbantur, tantum se ejus opiniōnis deperdidisse, ut a Populo Romāno imperia perferrent, gravissimè dolēbant.

55. Treviri vero atque Indutiomārus totius hiēmis nullum tempus intermisērunt, quin^a trans Rhenū legātos mittērent,

^a § 140, 3.

^c 124, 12.

^e § 116, Obs. 3.

^b § 120, Obs. 3.

^d § 136, R. LII.

^f § 134, Obs. 3.

civitātes sollicitārent, pecunias pollicerentur, magnā parte exercitūs nostri interfectā, multo minōrem superesse dicērent partem. Neque tamen ulli civitatī^a Germanōrum persuaderi potuit, ut Rhenum transiret, cūm “se bis expertos”^b dicērent, “Ariovisti bello et Tenchtherōrum transitu, non esse ampliūs fortunam tentandam.”¹ Hāc spe^c lapsus Indutiomārus, nihilo minūs copias cogēre, exercēre, a finitūmis equos parāre, exūles damnatosque totā Galliā^d magnis prēmiiis ad se allicēre cōpit. Ac tantam sibi jam iis rebus in Galliā auctoritātem comparavērat, ut undique ad eum legatiōnes concurrērent,^e gratiam atque amicitiam publicē privatimque petērent.

56. Ubi intellexit² ultro ad se venīri, altērā ex parte Senōnes Carnutesque conscientiā facinōris instigāri, altērā Nervios Aduatucosque bellum Romānis parāre, neque sibi^f voluntariōrum copias defōre, si ex finibus suis progrēdi cōpisset: armātum concilium indicit (hoc more Gallōrum est initium belli), quo lege commūni omnes pubēres armāti convenīre consuērunt; qui^g ex iis novissimus venit, in conspectu multitudinis³ omnibus cruciatibus affectus necatur. In eo concilio Cingetorigem,⁴ alterius principem^h factiōnis, genērum suum (quē supra demonstravimus, ⁵ Cēsāris secūtum fidem, ab eo non discessisse), hostem iudicat, bonāque ejus publicat. His rebus confectis, in concilio pronuntiat, arcessitum se a Senonibus et Carnutibus aliisque compluribus Galliæ civitatibus, ⁶huc iter factūrumⁱ per fines Remōrum, eorūque agros populatūrum,¹ ac priūs, quā id faciat, Labiēni castra oppugnatūrum:¹ quæ fiēri velit, prēcipit.

57. Labiēnus, cūm et loci natūrā et manu munitissimis castris sese tenēret, de suo ac legiōnis pericūlo nihil timēbat; ne quam occasiōnem rei bene gerendæ dimittēret, cogitābat. Itaque a Cingetorige atque ejus propinquis ora-

^a § 126, R. III. & 68, 2. ^d § 136, Obs. 5, (ex.) ^e 37, 3.

^b 98, 2.

^c § 140, 1, 1st.

^h § 97, R.

^e § 136, Obs. 5, (de.)

^f § 112, R. I.

ⁱ 94, 1, 2d, & 100, 2

tiōne Indutiomāri cognitā, quam in concilio habuērat, nuncios mittit ad finitimas civitates, equitesque undique evocat: iis^a certum diem conveniendi dicit. Intērim propē quotidie cum omni equitātu Indutiomārus¹ sub castris ejus vagabātur, aliās^b ut situm castrōrum cognoscēret,^c aliās^b colloquendi aut territandi causā: equites plerumque omnes tela intra vallum conjiciēbant. Labiēnus suos intra munitiōnes continēbat, timorisque opiniōnem, quibuscumque^d potērat rebus, augēbat.

58. Cum majore in dies contēptiōne Indutiomārus ad^e castra accedēret, nocte unā, ² intromissis equitibus omnium finitimārum civitātum, ⁴ quos arcessendos curavērat, tantā diligentīā omnes suos custodiis intra castra continuit, ut ⁵ nullā ratiōne ea res enunciāri aut ad Treviros perferri posset.^c Intērim ex consuetudinē quotidianā Indutiomārus ad castra accēdit, atque ibi magnam partem diēi consūmit; equites tela conjiciunt, et ⁶ magnā cum contumeliā verbōrum nostros ad pugnam evocant. Nullo ab nostris dato responso, ubi visum est, sub vespērum ⁷ dispersi^f ac dissipāti^f discēdunt. Subitō Labiēnus duābus portis⁸ omnem equitātum emittit; ⁹ praecepit atque interdicit, proterritis hostibus atque in fugam coniectis (quod⁸ fore, sicut accidit, vidēbat), unum omnes petant^h Indutiomārum; neu quis quem prius vulneret,^h quā illum interfectum vidērit, quod ⁹ morā reliquōrum spatium nactum illum effugere nolēbat: magnā propōnit iis,^a qui occiderint,ⁱ prēmia: submittit cohortes equitibus subsidio. ¹⁰ Comprōbat hominis consilium fortūna; et, cū unum omnes petērent, in ipso fluminis vado deprehensus Indutiomārus interficitur, caputque ejus refertur in castra: redeunt equites, quos possunt, consectantur atque occidunt. Hāc re cognitā, omnes Eburōnum et Nerviorum, quae convenērant, copiæ discēdunt; pauloque habuit post id factum Cæsar quietiōrem Galliam.

^a § 123, R.

^b 124, 12.

^c § 140, 1, 2d.

^d 37, 7, Note 2.

^e § 136, Obs. 7.

^f § 98, Obs. 10.

^g 37, 9, Note 3.

^h § 140, 1, 3d.

ⁱ § 141, Obs. 3

BOOK VI.

GENERAL ARGUMENT.

I. Commotions throughout nearly all Gaul in consequence of the overthrow and death of Tiberius—Chap. 1-8. II. Cæsar's expedition against the Suevi—Chap. 9-28. III. Punishment of Ambiorix and the Eburones—Chap. 29-44.

1. *MULTIS de causis*, Cæsar, majorem Galliæ motum expectans, per Marcum Silanum, Caium Antistium Reginum, Titum Sextium, legatos, ¹ dilectum habere instituit: simul ab Cneio Pompeio proconsule petit, ² quoniam ipse ad urbem cum imperio reipublicæ causâ remaneret, ³ quos ^b ex Cisalpina Galliâ consulis sacramento rogavisset, ^a ad signa convenire et ad se proficisci juberet: ^c magni ^d interesse etiam in reliquum tempus ad opinionem Galliæ existimans, tantas vidēri Italiæ facultates, ^e ut, si quid esset in bello detrimenti acceptum, non modò id brevi tempore ^f sarciri, sed etiam majoribus adaugeri copiis posset. ⁴ Quod ^g cum Pompeius et reipublicæ et amicitie tribuisset, ^h celeriter confecto per suos dilectibus ante exactam hiemem et constitutis et adductis legionibus, duplicatōque earum cohortium numero, quas cum Quinto Titurio amiserat, et celeritate et copiis docuit, quid Populi Romani disciplina atque opes possent.¹

2. Interfecto Indutiomaro, ⁵ ut docuimus, ad ejus propinquos a Treviris imperium defertur. Illi finitimos Germanos sollicitare et pecuniam polliceri non desistunt: cum ab proximis impetrare non possent, ulteriores tentant. Inventis nonnullis civitatibus, jurejurando inter se confirmant, ⁶ obsidibusque de pecunia cavent: Ambiorigem sibi societate et fœdere adjungunt. Quibus rebus cognitis, Cæsar, cum

^a § 141, Obs. 7.

^d § 113, Exc. I.

^e 38.

^b 37, (*militēs*.)

^c § 145, R.

^h 81, 1.

^f § 140, 1, 3d.

^g § 140, 1, 1st.

ⁱ § 140, 5.

undique bellum parāri vidēret, Nervios,^a Aduatūcos, Menapios, adjunctis Cisirhenānis omnibus Germānis, esse^b in armis, Senōnes^c ¹ ad imperātum non venīre, et cum Carnutibus finitimisque civitatibus consilia communicāre, a Treviris Germānos^d crebris legationibus sollicitāri; ^b maturius sibi^e de bello cogitandum putāvit.

3. Itaque ² nondum hieme confectā, proximis quatuor coactis legionibus, de improvviso in fines Nerviorum contendit, et prius, quā illi aut convenire aut profugere possent,^d magno pecoris atque hominum numero capto, atque eā praeda militibus^e concessā, vastatisque agris, in deditiōnem venire atque obsides sibi dare coegit. Eo celeriter confecto negotiō, rursus in hiberna legiōnes reduxit. Concilio Galliae primo^f verē, ³ uti instituērat, indicto, cū reliqui, prāter Senōnes, Carnūtes, Trevirosque, venissent, initium belli ac defectiōnis hoc esse arbitrātus,^g ut ⁴ omnia postponere videretur, concilium Lutetiam Parisiorum transfert. Confines erant hi Senonibus,^h civitatemque patrum memoriā conjunxerant; ⁵ sed ab hoc consilio abfuisse existimabantur. ⁶ Hāc re pro suggestu pronūciatā, eōdem die cum legionibus in Senōnes proficiscitur, magnisque itineribus eō pervēnit.

4. Cognito ejus adventu, Acco, qui princeps ejus consilii fuerat, jubet in oppida multitudinem convenire; ⁷ conantibus,^e priusquā id effici posset,^d adesse Romānos^a nunciatur; necessariō ⁸ sententiā desistunt, legatosque ⁹ deprecandi causā ad Cæsārem mittunt; adeunt per Aeduos, quorum antiquitū erat in fide civitas. Libenter Cæsar petentibus Aeduis dat veniam, excusationemque accipit; ¹⁰ quod aestivum tempus instantis belli, non quæstiōnis, esse arbitrabatur. Obsidibus imperātis centum, hos Aeduis custodiendosⁱ tradit. Eōdem Carnūtes legātos obsidesque mittunt, usi deprecatoribus Remis, quorum erant in clientelā: eādem

^a § 145, R.^d § 140, 4.^e 106, 1.^b 96, 2.^c § 126, R. III.^h § 111, R.^c § 147, R. LXI.^f 17, 1.ⁱ 107, 1.

ferunt responsa. Perāgit concilium Cæsar, equitesque impērat civitatibus.^a

5. Hāc parte Galliæ pacātā, ¹ totus et mente et animo in bellum Trevirōrum et Ambiorigis insistit. Cavarinum cum equitatu Senōnum secum proficisci jubet, ² ne quis aut ex hujus iracundiā, aut ex eo, quod meruērat, odio civitātis, motus existat.^b His rebus constitūtis, quod ³ pro explorāto habēbat, Ambiorigem prælio non esse concertatūrum, ⁴ reliqua ejus consilia animo^c circumspeciēbat. Erant Menapii propinqui Eburōnum finibus,^d ^eperpetuis paludibus^e silvisque muniti, qui uni ex Galliā de pace ad Cæsārem legātos nunquam misērant. Cum iis esse hospitium Ambiorigi^f sciēbat: item per Treviros venisse Germānis^f in amicitiam, cognovērat. Hæc prius ^gilli^g detrahenda auxilia existimābat, quā ipsum bello laccessēret; ne, desperātā salūte, aut se in Menapios abdēret, aut ^hcum Transrhenānis congrēdi cogerētur. Hoc inīto consilio, totius exercitus impedimenta ad Labiēnum in Treviros mittit, duasque legiōnes ad eum proficisci jubet: ipse cum legionibus expeditis quinque in Menapios proficiscitur. Illi, nullā coactā ⁱmanu, ^jloci præsidio^b freti, in silvas paludesque confugiunt, suāque eōdem confērunt.

6. Cæsar, partitis copiis cum Caio Fabio legāto et Marco Crasso quæstōre, celeriterque ¹⁰effectis pontibus ¹¹adit tripartitō, ædificia vicosque incendit, magno pecōris atque hominum numēro¹ potitur. Quibus rebus coacti Menapii, legātos ad eum pacis petendæ causā mittunt. Ille, obsidibus acceptis hostium se habitūrum numēro confirmat, si aut Ambiorigem, aut ejus legātos, finibus suis recepissent. His confirmātis rebus, Commium Atrebātem cum equitatu custōdis loco in Menapiis relinquit; ipse in Treviros proficiscitur.

^a § 123, R. & 5, 1.

^b § 140, 1, 2d.

^c § 129, R.

^d § 111, R.

^e § 112, R. II.

^f § 110, Obs. 1.

^g § 126, R. III. & 5, 1.

^h § 119, R.

ⁱ § 121, R. XXVI.

7. Dum hæc a Cæsare geruntur, Treviri, magnis coactis peditatus equitatusque copiis, Labienum^a cum una legione, quæ in eorum finibus hiemabat, adoriri parabant: jamque ab eo non longius bidui via^b abérant, cum duas venisse^c legiones missu Cæsaris cognoscunt. Positis castris a^d millibus^b passuum quindécim, auxilia Germanorum expectare constituunt. Labienus, hostium cognito consilio, sperans, temeritate^e eorum fore aliquam dimicandi facultatem, præsidio^f cohortium quinque impedimentis relicto, cum viginti quinque cohortibus magnoque equitatu contra hostem profiscitur, et, mille passuum intermisso spatio,^f castra communit. Erat inter Labienum atque hostem difficili transitu^g flumen ripisque præruptis: hoc neque ipse transire in animo habebat, neque hostes transituros existimabat. ¹ Augebatur auxiliorum quotidie spes. ² Loquitur in consilio palam, "quoniam Germani appropinquare dicantur,^h sese suas exercitusque fortunas ³ in dubium non devocaturum, et postero die primâ luce castra moturum." Celeriter hæc ad hostes deferuntur, utⁱ ex magno Gallorum equitatus numero nonnullis ⁴ Gallicis rebus^k favere natura cogebat. Labienus noctu, tribunis militum ⁵ primisque ordinibus coactis, quid sui sit consilii, proponit, et, quo facilius hostibus timoris det^l suspicionem, majore strepitu^e et tumultu, quam Populi Romani fert consuetudo, castra moveri jubet. His rebus^o fugæ similem profectionem efficit. Hæc quoque per exploratores ante lucem, in tantâ propinquitâ castrorum, ad hostes deferuntur.

8. Vix agmen novissimum extra munitiões processerat, cum Galli, cohortati inter se, "ne speratam prædam ex manibus dimitterent; ⁶ longum esse, perterritis Romanis, Germanorum auxilium expectare, neque suam pati dignitâ

^a § 136, R. LII.^d § 132, Obs. 5.^h § 140, 6.^b § 132, R. XLII. &^e § 129, R.ⁱ § 140, Obs. 1.

§ 120, Obs. 3.

^f 109, 2.^k § 112, R. V^o 98, 2, & 94, 1, 2d.^g § 106, R. VII.^l § 140, 1, 2d

tem, ut tantis copiis tam exiguam manum,^a præsertim fugientem atque impeditam, adoriri non audeant;" flumen^a transire et iniquo loco^b prælium committere non dubitant. Quæ^c fore suspicatus Labiēnus, ut omnes citra flumen elicēret, ¹ eādem usus simulatiōne^d itinēris, placidē progrediebatur. Tum, præmissis paulum impedimentis atque in tumulo quodam collocatis, "Habētis," inquit, "milites,^e quam petistis, ² facultatem: hostem impedito atque iniquo loco^b tenētis: ³ præstāte eandem nobis^f ducibus virtutem, quam sæpenumero imperatōri præstitistis: adesse eum et hæc coram cernere, existimāte." Simul signa ad hostem converti^g aciemque dirigi jubet, et, paucis turmis ⁴ præsidio "ad impedimenta dimissis, reliquos equites ad latēra dispōnit. Celeriter nostri clamore sublato pila in hostes immittunt. Illi, ubi ⁵ præter spem, quos^b fugere credēbant, ⁶ infestis signis^h ad se ire vidērunt, impetum modò ferre non potuerunt, ac, primo concursuⁱ in fugam coniecti, proximās silvas petierunt: quos^k Labiēnus equitatu consecratus, magno numero interfecto, compluribus captis, paucis post diebus civitatem recēpit: nam Germāni, qui auxilio^l veniebant, perceptā Trevirōrum fugā, sese domum contulērunt. Cum iis propinqui Indutiomāri, qui defectiōnis auctores fuerant, comitati eos, ex civitate excessere. ⁷ Cingetorigi, quem ab initio permansisse in officio demonstravimus, principatus atque imperium est traditum.

9. Cæsar, postquā ex Menapiis in Treviros venit, duabus de causis Rhenum transire constituit: quarum erat altera,^m quod auxilia contra se Treviris miserant; altera,ⁿ ne Ambiorix ad eos receptum haberet. His constitutis rebus, paulum supra eum locum, quo antè exercitum transduxerat, facere pontem instituit. Notā atque institutā ratione, magno

^a § 116, Obs. 4.^c § 117.ⁱ § 129, R.^b § 136, Obs. 5, (in.) ^f § 123, R^k 38.^e § 145, R. & 38.^g 90, 4.^l § 114, Obs. 4, (illis.)^h § 121, R. XXVI.^j 38, & 91.^m 27, 10.

milītum studio, paucis diēbus opus efficitur. Firmo in Trevīris præsidio ad pontem relicto, ne quis ab iis subīto motus orirētur,^a reliquas copias equitatumque transducit. Ubii, qui antē obsides dedērant atque in deditiōnem venērāt,¹ purgandi sui causā ad eum legātos mittunt, qui doceant,^b “neque ex suā civitatē auxilia^c in Trevīros missa,^d ² neque ab se fidem lēsam:^d” petunt atque orant, “ut sibi parcat,^e ³ ne commūni odio Germanōrum innocentes pro nocentibus pēnas pendant:” si amplius obsidum^f velit, dare pollicentur. ⁴ Cognitā Cæsar causā^g repērit, ab Suēvis auxilia missa esse:^d Ubiōrum satisfactiōnem accipit; adītus viasque in Suēvos perquirir.

10. Intērim paucis post diēbus fit ab Ubiis certior, Suēvos^c omnes unum in locum copias cogēre, atque iis nationibus,^h quæ sub eōrum sint¹ imperio, denunciāre, uti auxilia pedītātūs equitātūsque mittant.^e His cognītis rebus, rem frumentariam providet, castris^h idoneum locum delīgīt, Ubiis^h impērat, ut pecōra dedūcant^e suāque omnia ex agris in opīda confērant, sperans, barbāros atque ⁵imperītos homīnes,^c inopiā cibariōrum afflicto, ad inīquam pugnandi conditiōnem posse dedūci:^k mandat, ut crebros exploratōres in Suēvos mittant,^e quæque apud eos gerantur,¹ cognoscant.^e Illi imperāta faciunt, et, paucis diēbus intermissis, ⁶refērunt, “Suēvos^c omnes, posteaquam certiōres nuncii de exercītu Romanōrum venērīnt, cum omnibus suis sociorumque copiis, quas coēgissent,ⁱ penītus ad extrēmōs fines sese recepisse:^d silvam esse ibi ⁷infinītā magnitudīne, quæ appellātur^m Baccēnis: hanc^e longē introrsus pertinēre, et, pro natīvo muro objectam, Cheruscos ⁸ab Suēvis, Suevosque ab Cheruscis, injuriis incursionibusque prohibēre: ad ejus initium silvæ Suēvos^c adventum Romanōrum expectāre constituisse.”^d

^a § 140, 1, 2d.^e § 140, 1, 3d.¹ § 140, 6.^b § 141, Obs. 2, 4th.^f § 106, R. VIII.^k 87.^c § 145, R.^g 104, 1.¹ § 140, 5.^d 98, 2, & 94, 1, 2d.^h § 123, R.^m § 141, Obs. 5, 1st.

11. Quoniam ad hunc locum perventum est,^a non ¹aliū-
num, esse videtur,^b de Galliæ Germaniæque moribus, et
quo^c differant^d eæ nationes inter sese, ²proponere. In Gal-
liā, non solum in omnibus civitatibus atque ³in omnibus pa-
gis partibusque, sed pæne etiam in singulis^e domibus, fac-
tiones sunt: ⁴earumque factionum principes sunt, qui sum-
mam auctoritatem eorum iudicio habere existimantur, quo-
rum ad arbitrium iudiciumque summa omnium rerum con-
siliiorumque redeat.^f ⁵Idque ejus rei causā antiquitūs insti-
tutum videtur, ne quis ex plebe contra potentiōrem auxilii^g
egēret: ^hsuos enim ⁶quisque opprimiⁱ et circumveniri non
patitur, neque, aliter si faciant, ullam inter suos habent auc-
toritatem. ⁷Hæc eādem ratio est in summā totius Galliæ:
namque omnes civitates in partes divisæ sunt duas.

12. Cū Cæsar in Galliam venit, alterius^k factionis
⁸principes erant Ædui, alterius^k Sequāni. Hi cū per se
minus valērent, quod summa auctoritas antiquitūs erat in
Æduis, magnæque eorum^l erant clientelæ, Germānos atque
Ariovistum sibi adjunxerant, eosque ad se magnis ⁹jacturis
pollicitationibusque perduxerant. Præliis verò compluribus
factis secundis, atque omni nobilitate Æduorum interfectā,
¹⁰tantum potentiā^c antecesserant, ut magnam partem clien-
tium ab Æduis ad se transducērent, obsidesque ab iis prin-
cipum filios accipērent, et publicè jurare cogērent, nihil se
contra Sequānos consilii inituros; et partem finitimi agri,
per vim occupatam, possiderent: Galliæque totius principā-
tum obtinērent. Quā necessitate adductus Divitiācus, aux-
ilii petendi causā Romam ad Senātum profectus, ¹¹infectā
re rediērat. Adventu Cæsaris factā commutatione rerum,
obsidibus Æduis redditis, veteribus clientelis restitutis, no-
vis^m per Cæsarem comparatis (quod hi, qui se ad ¹²eorum

^a 67, 5, Note.^b 26, 5.ⁱ 90.^b 51.^f § 141, Obs. 3.^k 27, 10.^c § 128, R.^g § 121, Exc. 1.^l § 108, R. XII.^d § 140, 5.^h § 140, 1, 2d.^m 19, (clientelis.)

amicitiā aggregavērant, meliōre conditionē^a atque æquidre imperio se^b uti vidēbant),¹ reliquis rebus^c eōrum, gratiā, dignitatē^c amplificatā, Sequāni principātum^d dimisērant. In eōrum locum Remi successērant; ^e quos^d quod adæquāre apud Cæsārem gratiā intelligebātur, ii, qui propter^d vetēres inimicitias nullo modo cum Æduis conjungi potērant, ^e se Remis^e in clientēlam dicābant. Hos illi diligenter tuebantur. Ita et novam et repentē collectam auctoritatē tenēbant. Eo tum statu^f res erat, ut longē principes^e haberentur^h Ædui, secundum locum dignitātis Remi obtinērent.^h

13. In omni Galliā eōrum hominū, qui^e aliquo sunt numēroⁱ atque honōre,ⁱ genēra sunt duo: nam plebes pæne servōrum habētur loco,^f quæ per se nihil audet et nullo adhibētur consilio.^k Plerīque, cū aut⁷ æreⁱ aliēno, aut magnitudīne tributōrum, aut injuriā potentiōrum premuntur, sese in servitūtem dicant nobilībus: ^g in hos eādē omnia sunt jura, quæ dominis^m in servos. Sed de his duobus generibus⁹ altērum est Druīdum, altērum equitum. ¹⁰ Illi rebus^a divinis intersunt, sacrificia publica ac privāta¹¹ procurant, religiōnes interpretantur. Ad hos magnus adolescentium numērus disciplinæ causā¹ concurrīt, magnōque¹² ū sunt apud eos honōre,^f. Nam ferē de omnibus controversiis publicis privatisque constituunt; et, si quod est^o admissum facinus, si cædes facta, si de hæreditatē, si de finibus controversia est,^o iidem decernunt; præmia pœnasque constituunt: si qui aut privātus aut publicus eōrum¹³ decrēto^p non stetit, sacrificiis interdīcunt. Hæc pœna apud eos est gravissīma. ¹⁴ Quibus ita est interdictum, ii numēro impiōrum ac sceleratōrum habentur; iis omnes decēdunt, ¹⁶ aditum eōrum sermonemque defugiunt, ne quid ex contagiōne incommōdi ac-

^a § 121, R. XXVI.

ⁱ § 136, Obs. 5, (in.)

¹ § 129, R.

^b § 145, R.

^e § 103, R. & Obs. 2.

^m § 112, R. II.

^c 109, 2. & § 98, Obs. 4.

^h § 140, 1, 1st.

ⁿ § 112, R. I.

^d 39, & 91.

ⁱ § 106, R. VII.

^o § 140, Obs. 2.

^e § 123, R.

^h § 126, R. III.

^p § 112, R. V.

cupiant: neque iis petentibus jus redditur, neque honos ullus communicatur. His autem omnibus Druidibus præest unus, qui ¹summam inter eos habet auctoritatem. Hoc mortuo, si qui ex reliquis excellit dignitate, succedit; at, si sunt plures pares, suffragio ^a Druidum deligitur, nonnunquam etiam armis ^a de principatu contendunt. Hi certo anni tempore in finibus Carnutum, ²quæ regio totius Galliæ media ^b habetur, considunt in loco consecrato. Huc omnes undique, qui controversias habent, conveniunt. eorumque decretis ^c judiciisque ³parent. ⁴Disciplina in Britannia reperta atque inde in Galliam translata esse existimatur: et nunc, qui ^d ^ediligentius eam rem cognoscere volunt, plerumque illò discendi causâ proficiscuntur.

14. Druides a bello abesse consueverunt, neque tributa unâ cum reliquis pendunt; ⁶militiæ vacationem ⁷omniumque rerum habent immunitatem. Tantis excitati ⁸præmiis, ^aet suâ sponte ^a multi in disciplinam conveniunt, et a parentibus propinquisque mittuntur. Magnum ibi numerum versuum ⁹ediscere dicuntur: itaque annos nonnulli vicenos ^ein disciplinâ permanent. Neque fas esse existimant, ¹⁰ea litèris mandare, cum in reliquis ferè rebus, publicis privatisque rationibus, Græcis utantur ^f litèris. ¹¹Id mihi duabus de causis instituisse videntur; quòd neque in vulgum ¹²disciplinam efferri velint, neque eos, qui discant, ⁵ litèris ^cconfisos, minùs memoriæ ^cstudere: quod ^hferè plerisque accidit, ut præsidio literarum diligentiam in perdiscendo ac memoriam remittant. ¹³In primis hoc volunt persuadere, ¹⁴non interire animas, sed ab aliis post mortem transire ad alios: atque hoc ^amaximè ad virtutem excitari putant, metu mortis neglecto. Multa præterea de sideribus atque eorum motu, de mundi ac terrarum magnitudine, de rerum naturâ, de Deorum immortalium vi ac potestate ¹⁵disputant et juventuti tradunt.

^a § 129, R.^d 37, (ii.)^e § 141, Obs. 3.^b § 103, R. & Obs. 2.^e 26, 1.^h 37, 9, Note 3.^c § 112, R. V.^f § 140, Obs. 3.ⁱ § 140, 1, 4th.

15. *Altĕrum genus est equĭtum.* Hi, ¹ cūm est usus, atque aliquod bellum incĭdit (quod ^a ante Cæsāris adventum ferē quotannis accidĕre solēbat, uti aut ipsi ^b injurias inferrent, aut illātas propulsārent), omnes in bello ² versantur: atque eōrum ut quisque est genĕre ^c copiisque amplissĭmus, ita plurĭmos circum se ³ ambactos clientesque habent. Hanc unam gratiam potentiamque novĕrunt.

16. *Natio est omnĭum Gallōrum admōdum* ⁴ *dedĭta religi-* onĭbus, ⁴ atque ob eam causam, qui sunt affecti gravioribus morbis, quique in prœliis periculisque versantur, aut pro victĭmis homĭnes immōlant, aut se immolatūros vovent, administrisque ad ea sacrificia Druidĭbus utuntur; quōd, pro vitā homĭnis nisi homĭnis vita reddātur, non posse alĭter Deōrum immōrtalium numen placāri arbitrantur: publicēque ejusdem genĕris habent institūta sacrificia. Alii immāni magnitudĭne ^e simulācra habent, quorum ⁵ contexta viminĭbus membra vivis hominĭbus ^f complent, quibus succensis, circumventi flammā exanimantur homĭnes. Supplicia eōrum, qui in furto, aut in latrocinio, aut alĭquā noxā sint comprehensi, ^g gratiōra Diis ⁴ immortalĭbus esse arbitrantur: sed, cūm ⁶ ejus genĕris copia deficit, ad innocentium-supplicia descendunt.

17. ⁷ *Deum maxĭmē Mercurium colunt:* hujus sunt plurĭma simulācra, hunc ^h omnium inventōrem artium ferunt, hunc ^h viārum atque itinĕrum ducem, hunc ^h ad quæstus pecuniæ mercaturasque habĕre vim maxĭmam arbitrantur. Post hunc, ⁸ *Apollĭnem et Martem et Jovem et Minervam:* de his eandem ferē, quam reliquæ gentes, ⁱ habent opiniōnem; Apollĭnem ^h morbos depellĕre, Minervam ^h opĕrum atque artificĭōrum ⁹ initia tradĕre; Jovem ^h imperium cœlestium tenĕre; Martem ^h bella regĕre. Huic, cūm prœlio dimicāre constituĕrunt, ea, quæ bello cepĕrint, plerumque de-

^a 37, 9, Note 3.

^d § 111, R.

^e § 141, Obs. 8.

^b 32, 3.

^c § 106, R. VII.

^h § 145, R.

^c § 128, R.

^f § 125, R.

ⁱ § 101, Obs. 4.

vōvent. ¹ Quæ superavērint,^a animalia capta immōlant; reliquas res in unum locum confērunt. Multis in civitatibus harum rerum exstructos tumūlos locis^b consecrātis conspici cāri licet: neque sæpe accidit, ut, neglectā quispiam religiōne,^c aut capta^d apud se occultāre, aut ² posita^d tollere auderet: gravissimumque ei rei^e supplicium cum cruciātu constitūtum est.

18. Galli se omnes ab Dite patre-prognātos prædicant, idque ab Druidibus proditum dicunt. Ob eam causam, ³ spatia omnis temporis non numēro diērum, sed noctium, finiunt; dies natāles et mensium et annōrum initia sic observant, ⁴ ut noctem dies subsequatur.^f In reliquis vitæ institutis, hōc^g ferè ab reliquis diffērunt, quòd suos libēros, nisi cūm adolevērint, ut munus militiæ sustinere possint, ⁵ palām ad se adire non patiuntur; filiumque puerili ætate in publico, in conspectu patris assistere, turpe^h ducunt.

19. Viri, quantas pecunias ab uxoribus dotis nomīne accepērunt, tantas ex suis bonis, æstimatiōne factā, cum dotibus communicant. Hujus omnis pecuniæ ⁶ conjunctim ratio habētur, ⁷ fructusque servantur: uter eōrum ⁸ vitā superārit, ad eum pars utriusque cum fructibus superiōrum temporū pervēnit. Viri in uxōres, sicut in libēros, vitæ necisque habent potestātem: et, cūm pater familiæ, illustriore loco natus, decessit, ejus propinqui conveniunt, et, de morte si res in suspiciōnem venit, ⁹ de uxoribus in servilem modum quæstiōnem habent, et, ¹⁰ si compertum est, igni atque omnibus tormentis excruciatas interficiunt. Funera sunt ¹¹ pro cultu Gallōrum magnifica et sumtuōsa; omniāque, quæ ¹² vivis cordiⁱ fuisse arbitrantur, in ignem infērunt, etiam animalia: ac paulo supra hanc memoriā servi et clientes, quos ab iis dilectos esse constābat, justis funeribus confectis, unā cremabantur.

^a § 141, Obs. 3.^d 19, (*animalia*.)^e § 128, R.^b § 136, Obs. 5, (*in*.)^c § 126, R. III.^h § 98, Obs. 6.^c 109, 2.^f § 140, 1, 1st.ⁱ § 114, R. & 19

20. Quæ^a civitatēs¹ commodiūs suam rem publicā administrāre existimantur, habent legibus^b sanctum, si quis quid de republicā a finitimis rumōre ac famā accepērit, uti ad magistrātum defērat,^c neve cum quo alio communicet:^e quōd sæpe homīnes temerarios atque imperitos falsis rumoribus terrēri, et ad facinus impelli, et de summis rebus consilium capēre cognitum est. Magistrātus, quæ visa sunt, occultant; quæque^d esse ex usu judicavērint, multitudīni produnt. De republicā nisi³ per concilium loqui non conceditur.

21. Germāni multūm ab hac consuetudinē diffērunt: nam neque Druīdes habent, qui rebus divinis præsint,^e neque sacrificiis^f student. Deōrum numēro eos solos ducunt, quos cernunt, et^g quorum apertē opibus juvantur, Solem et^h Vulcānum et Lunam: reliquos ne famā quidem accepērunt. Vita omnis in venationibus atque in studiis rei militāris consistit: ab parvulis labōri^f ac duritiæ^f student. Qui diutissimē^g impubēres permansērunt, maximam inter suos ferunt laudem: hōc ali statūram,^g ali hōc vires^h nervosque confirmāri, putant. Intra annum verō vicissimūm femīnæ notitiā habuisse, in turpissimis habent rebus: cuius rei nulla est occultatio, quōd et promiscuē in fluminibus perluuntur, et pellibus aut parvis^h rhenōnum tegimentis utuntur, magnā corpōris parte nudā.

22. Agricultūræ^f non student; majorque pars victūs eōrum in lacte, caseo, carne consistit: neque quisquam agri modum certum aut fines habet proprios; sed magistrātus ac principes in annos singulos gentibus^h cognationibusque homīnum, qui unā coiērint, ¹⁰quantum,ⁱ et quo loco visum est, agri attribuunt, atque anno pōst aliō transire cogunt.¹¹ Ejus rei multas affērunt causas; ne assiduā consuetudine capti, studium belli gerendi agricultūrā commū-

^a 37, 4, (civitatēs.) ^d § 141, Obs. 3. ^e § 145, R.

^b § 129, R. ^e § 141, R. II. ^h § 123, R.

^c § 140, 1, 3d. ^f § 112, R. V. ⁱ § 46, 1.

tent; ^a ne latos fines parāre studeant; ^a potentioresque humil-
iōres possessionībus ^b expellant; ^a ne ¹accuratiūs ad frigōra
atque æstus vitandos ^c ædificent; ^a ne qua oriātur ^a pecuniæ
cupiditas, quā ex re factiōnes dissensionēque nascuntur; ut
²anīmi æquitāte plebem contineant, cū suas quisque opes
cum potentissimis æquāri videat.^d

23. Civitatibus ^a maxīma laus est, quā latissimas circum
se vastātis finibus solitudines habēre. Hoc ³propriū virtū-
tis ^f existimant, expulsos agris ^g finitimos ^h cedēre, neque
quenquam ^h prope audēre consistēre: simul hōc se ^h fore tu-
tiōres arbitrantur, repentinæ incursiōnis timōre ⁱ sublāto.
Cū bellum civitas aut illātum defendit, aut infert; magis-
trātus, qui ei bello ^k præsint, ¹ ut vitæ necisque habeant potes-
tatem, deliguntur. In pace nullus est commūnis magistrā-
tus, sed principes regiōnum atque pagōrum inter suos ⁴jus
dicunt, controversiasque minuunt. Latrocinia nullam habent
infamiam, quæ extra fines cuiusque civitātis fiunt; atque ea
juventūtis exercendæ ^m ac desidīæ minuendæ causā fieri præ-
dicant. Atque, ubi quis ex principibus in concilio dixit,
“se ducem fore; ⁵ qui ⁿ sequi velint, profiteantur; ^o” consur-
gunt ii, qui et causam et homīnem probant, suūque auxil-
ium pollicentur, atque ab multitudine collaudantur: qui ex
iis secūti non sunt, in desertōrum ac prodiōrum numēro
ducuntur, omniumque iis ^p rerum postea fides derogātur.
Hospites violāre, fas non putant; qui ⁿ quāque de causā ad
eos venērint, ab injuriā prohibent, sanctosque habent; iis
omnium domus patet, victusque communicātur.

24. ⁶ Ac fuit antea tempus, cū Germānos Galli virtūte
superārent, ⁷ ultro bella inferrent, propter homīnum multitu-
dinem agrīque inopiam trans Rhenum colonias mittērent.

^a § 140, 1, 2d.

^b § 136, R. LII.

^c § 98, Obs. 2, & 112, 7.

^d § 140, Obs. 3.

^e § 110, Obs. 1.

^f § 107, R. IX.

^g § 136, R. LII.

^h § 145, R.

ⁱ 109, 2.

^k § 112, R. I.

¹ § 141, R. II. Obs. 2, 4th.

^m 112, 5.

ⁿ § 141, Obs. 3.

^o § 45, I. 1.

^p § 126, R. V.

Itaque ea, quæ fertilissima sunt, Germaniæ loca circum Hercyniam silvam (quam ^a Eratosthēni et quibusdam Græcis famā notam esse video, quam illi Orcyniam appellant), Volcæ Tectosages occupaverunt, atque ibi consederunt. Quæ ^b gens ad hoc tempus iis sedibus sese continet, ¹ summamque habet justitiæ et bellicæ laudis opiniōnem: nunc quodque in eadem inopiā, egestate, patientiā, quā Germāni, permānent, eodem victu ^c et cultu corpōris utuntur; ²Gallis^d autem Provinciæ propinquitās, et transmarinārum rerum notitia, ³ multa ad copiam atque usus largitur. Paulatim assuefacti superari, multisque victi prœliis, ne se quidem ipsi ^e cum illis virtute comparant.

25. Hujus Hercyniæ silvæ, quæ suprā demonstrāta est, latitudo novem diērum iter^f ⁴expedito^g patet: non enim aliter ⁵finiri potest, neque mensūras itinērum novērunt. Oritur ab Helvetiōrum et Nemētum et Rauracōrum finibus, rectaque fluminis Danubii regiōne ^h pertinet ad fines Dacōrum et Anartium: hinc se flectit ⁶sinistrorsus, diversis ab flumine regionibus, multarumque gentium fines propter magnitudinem attingit: neque quisquam est hujus Germaniæ, qui se aut adisse ad initium ejus silvæ dicat,ⁱ cū diērum iter^f sexaginta processerit,^k aut quo ex loco oriātur,^l acceperit. Multa in eā genēra^a ferārum nasci constat, quæ reliquis in locis visa non sint:^m ex quibus, quæ maxime differant ab ceteris et ⁷memoriæⁿ prodenda^o videantur, hæc sunt.

26. ⁸Est bos cervi figurā,^p cujus a mediā fronte inter aures unum cornu existit, excelsius magisque directum his, quæ nobis nota sunt, cornibus. Ab ejus summo, ⁹sicut palmæ, rami quān latè diffunduntur. Eadem est femiñæ marisque natūra, eadem forma magnitudōque cornuum.

^a § 145, R.^b 38, 2.^c § 121, R. XXVI.^d § 110, R.^e 33, 1.^f § 132, R. XLII.^g § 112, R. XVII.^h § 129, R.ⁱ § 141, R. I.^k § 140, Obs. 3.^l § 140, 5.^m § 141, Obs. 3.ⁿ § 126, R. III.^o 108, 6.^p § 108, R. VII.

27. Sunt item, quæ appellantur ¹Alces.^a Harum est consimilis capreis^b figurâ et ²variêtas pellium; sed magnitudinē^c paulo antecēdunt, mutilæque sunt cornibus,^c et crura sine nodis articulisque habent; neque quiētis causâ procumbunt, neque, si ³quo afflictæ casu concidērint, erigēre sese aut sublevāre possunt. His^d sunt arbōres pro cubilibus: ⁴ad eas se applicant, atque ita, paulum modò reclinātæ, quiētem capiunt: quarum ex vestigiis cū est animadversum a venatoribus, quò se recipēre consuerint,^e omnes eo loco aut a radicibus subruunt, aut accidunt arbōres tantū, ut summa species eārum stantium relinquātur. Huc cū se consuetudinē reclinavērint, ⁵infirmas arbōres pondēre affligunt, atque unā ipsæ concidunt.

28. Tertium est genus eōrum, qui ⁶Uri^a appellantur. Hi sunt magnitudinē^c paulo infra elephantos, specie^f et colōre et figurâ tauri. Magna vis eōrum, et magna velocitas: neque homini,^g neque feræ, quam conspexērint, parcut. Hos studiōsè foveis^h captos interficiunt. Hoc se labōre^h durant adolescentes, atque hoc genēre^h venatiōnis exercent; et, qui plurimos ex his interfecērunt, relātis in publicū cornibus, ⁷quæ sint testimonio,ⁱ magnam ferunt laudem. Sed assuescēre ad homīnes, et mansuefiēri, ⁸ne parvūli quidem excepti possunt. Amplitūdo cornuum et figurâ et species multū a nostrōrum boum cornibus differt. Hæc studiōsè conquisita ab labris argento^k circumclūdunt, atque in ⁹amplissimis epulis pro poculis utuntur.

29. ¹⁰Cæsar, postquam per Ubios exploratōres compērit, Suēvos sese in silvas recepisse,^l inopiam frumenti veritus, quòd, ut suprà demonstravimus, minimè omnes Germāni agriculturæ student, constituit, non progrēdi longiūs: sed, ne omnino metum redītūs sui barbāris^m tollēret, atque ut

^a § 103, R. V.^c § 140, 5.¹ 114, R. & Obs. 4.^b 19, *formis*, § 111, R.² § 106, R. VII.^k § 125, R.^c § 128, R.^e 112, R. V.¹ 98, 2.^d § 112, R. II.^h § 129, R.^m § 123, R. & 19,

eōrum auxilia tardāret, reducto exercitū, partem ultimam pontis, quæ ripas Ubiōrum contingēbat, in longitudinem pedum ducentōrum rescindit; atque in extrēmo ponte^a turrim tabulatōrum^b quatuor constituit, præsidiumque cohortium^c duodēcim pontis tuendi causā ponit, magnisque eum locum munitionibus firmat. Ei loco^c præsidiōque Caium Volcatium Tullum adolescentem præsēcit: ipse, cū maturescēre frumenta incipērent,^d ad bellum Ambiorigis profectus (per Arduennam silvam, quæ est totius Galliæ maxīma, atque ab ripis Rheni finibusque Trevirōrum ad Nervios pertinet, milibusque^e ampliū^f quingentis in longitudinem patet), Lucium Minucium Basilum cum omni equitatu præmittit, ¹ si quid celeritāte itinēris atque opportunitāte temporis proficere possit; monet, ut ignes fieri in castris prohibeat,^g ne qua ejus adventūs procul significatio fiat:^h sese confestim subsequiⁱ dicit.

30. Basilus, ² ut imperātum est, facit; celeriter contrāque omnium opiniōnem confecto itinēre, multos in agris inopinantes deprehendit; eōrum indicio ad ipsum Ambiorigem contendit, quo in loco cum paucis equitibus esse dicebatur.

³ Multum cū^k in omnibus rebus, tum^k in re militāri potest fortuna. Nam sicut magno accidit casu, ut in ipsum incautum atque etiam imparātum incidēret,^l priusque ejus adventus ab hominibus videretur, quā fama ac nuncius adventūs afferrētur:^m sic ⁴ magnæ fuit fortunæ,ⁿ omni militāri instrumento,^o quod circum se habēbat, erepto, rhedis equisque comprehensis, ipsum effugere mortem. Sed hoc eo factum est, quodd, ædificio circumdāto silvā (ut sunt ferē domicilia Gallōrum, qui, vitandi æstūs causā, plerumque silvarum ac flumīnum petant propinquitates), comītes familiaresque ejus

^a 17, 1.^f § 120, Obs. 3.¹ § 140, 1, 4th.^b § 106, R. VII.^g § 140, 1, 3d.^m § 140, 4.^c § 123, R.^h § 140, 1, 2d.ⁿ § 108, R. XII.^d § 140, Obs. 4.ⁱ 94, 3.^o 109, 2.^e § 132, R. XLII.^k 124, 7.

angusto in loco paulisper equitum nostrorum vim sustinuerunt. His pugnantibus, illum in equum quidam ex suis^a intulit: fugientem silvæ texerunt. Sic et ad subeundum periculum, et ad vitandum, multum fortuna valuit.

31. Ambiorix copias suas^a iudiciōne^b non conduxit,^c quoddam prelio dimicandum^d non existimavit, an^b tempore exclusus et repente equitum adventu prohibitus, cum reliquum exercitum subsequi crederet, dubium est: sed certe, dimissis per agros nunciis, sibi^e quemque consulere iussit: quorum pars in Arduennam silvam, pars in continentes paludes profugit: qui proximi Oceanum^f fuerunt, hi insulis sese occultaverunt, quas æstus efficere consueverunt: multi, ex suis finibus egressi, se suaque omnia^g alienissimis crediderunt. Cativolcus, rex dimidiæ partis Eburorum, qui una cum Ambiorige consilium iniierat, ætate jam confectus, cum laborem aut belli aut fugæ ferre non posset, omnibus precibus detestatus Amborigem, qui^h ejus consilii auctor fuisset, taxo,^h cujus magna in Galliâ Germaniæque copia est, se exanimavit.

32. Segni Condrusique ex gente et numero Germanorum, qui sunt, inter Eburones Trevirosque, legatos ad Cæsarem miserunt, oratum,ⁱ ne se in hostium numero duceret, neve omnium Germanorum, qui essent citra Rhenum, unamⁱ esse causam judicaret: nihil se de bello cogitavisse, nulla Amborigi auxilia misisse. Cæsar, exploratâ re^g quæstione captivorum, si qui ad eos Eburones ex fugâ convenissent, ad se ut reducerentur, imperavit: si ita fecissent, fines eorum se violatûrum negavit. Tum copiis in tres partes distributis, impedimenta omnium legionum Aduatucam contulit. Id castelli nomen est. Hoc ferè est in mediis Eburorum finibus, ubi Titurius atque Aurunculeius hiemandi causâ

^a § 107, Obs. 8.^b 124, 13.^c § 140, 1, 4th.^d 113, 5.^e § 112, R. V.^f § 136, Obs. 5, (ad.)^g § 141, R. III.^h § 129, R.ⁱ § 148, R. LXIII.^k § 140, 1, 3d.^l § 103, R. V. & Obs. 2.^m § 140, 2, & 80, 2.

consederant. Hunc cum reliquis rebus locum probabat, tum, quod superioris anni munitiones integræ manebant, ut militum laborem sublevaret.^a Præsidio^b impedimentis legionem quatuordecimam reliquit, unam ex iis tribus, quas proximè conscriptas ex Italiâ transduxerat. Ei legioni^c castrisque Quintum Tullium Ciceronem præficit, ducentosque equites attribuit.

33. Partito exercitu, Titum Labienum cum legionibus tribus ad Oceanum versus, in eas partes, quæ Menapios attingunt, proficisci jubet: Caium Trebonium cum pari legionum numero ad eam regionem, quæ Aduaticis^d adjacet, depopulandam^e mittit: ipse cum reliquis tribus ad flumen Sabim, quod influit in Mosam, extremasque Arduennæ partes ire constituit, quò cum paucis equitibus profectum^f Ambiorigem audiebat. Discédens, ¹ post diem septimum sese reversurum, confirmat; quam ad diem ei legioni,^g quæ in præsidio relinquebatur, frumentum deberi sciebat. Labienum Treboniumque hortatur, si reipublicæ commodo^h facere possint, ad eam diem revertantur;ⁱ ut, rursus communicação consilio, exploratisque hostium rationibus, aliud belli initium capere possent.^k

34. Erat, ² ut supra demonstravimus, ³ manus certa nulla, non oppidum, non præsidium, quod^l se armis defenderet; sed omnes in partes dispersa multitudo. Ubi cuique^c aut vallis abdita, aut locus silvestris, aut palus impedita, spem præsidii aut salutis aliquam offerēbat, consederat. Hæc loca⁴ vicinitatibus^m erant nota, magnamque res diligentiam requirēbat, non in summâ exercitus tuendâ (nullum enim poterat universis ab perterritis ac dispersis periculum accidere), sed in singulis militibus conservandis; quæ tamen ⁵ ex parte res ad salutem exercitus pertinēbat. Nam et prædæ cupid-

^a § 140, 1, 1st.^b § 114, R.^c § 123, R.^d § 112, R. IV.^e 112, 7.^f 98, 2.^g § 126, R. III.^h § 129, R.ⁱ § 140, 1, 3d, & Obs. 5, (ut.)^k § 140, 1, 2d.^l § 141, R. I.^m § 111, Obs. 1, 4th

itas multos longiùs evocābat, et silvæ incertis occultisque itineribus ¹ confertos adire prohibēbant. ² Si negotium confici ³ stirpemque hominum sceleratorum interfici ⁴ vellet, dimittendæ ⁵ plures manus diducendique erant milites: si continere ad signa manipulos vellet, ut ⁶ instituta ratio et consuetudo exercitus Romani postulabat, locus ipse erat præsidio ⁷ barbaris, ⁸ neque ex occulto insidiandi et dispersos circumveniendi singulis ⁹ deerat audacia. At in ejusmodi difficultatibus, quantum ¹⁰ diligentia provideri poterat, providebatur; ut potius ¹¹ in nocendo aliquid omitteretur, etsi omnium animi ad ulciscendum ardēbant, quam cum aliquo militum detrimento noceretur. Cæsar ad finitimas civitates nuncios dimittit, omnes ad se evocat spe prædæ, ad diripiendos Eburones, ut potius in silvis Gallorum vita, quam ¹² legionarius miles, periclitetur; ¹³ simul ut, magnâ multitudine circumfusa, pro tali facinore, stirps ac nomen civitatis tollatur. ¹⁴ Magnus undique numerus celeriter convenit.

35. Hæc in omnibus Eburonum partibus gerebantur, diesque ¹⁵ appetēbat septimus, quem ad diem Cæsar ad impedimenta legionemque reverti constituērat. Hic, quantum ¹⁶ in bello fortuna possit ¹⁷ et ¹⁸ quantos ¹⁹ affērat ²⁰ casus, cognosci potuit. Dissipatis ac perterritis hostibus, ut demonstravimus, ²¹ manus erat nulla, quæ parvam modò causam timoris afferret. ²² Trans Rhenum ad Germanos pervēnit fama, diripi ²³ Eburones, atque ultro omnes ad prædā evocari. ²⁴ Cogunt equitum duo millia Sigambri, qui sunt proximi Rheno, a quibus receptos ex fugâ Tenchthēros atque Usipētes ²⁵ suprâ docuimus: transeunt Rhenum navibus ratibusque, triginta millibus passuum infra eum locum, ubi pons erat perfectus præsidiumque ab Cæsare relictum: primos Eburonum fines ²⁶ adeunt, multos ex fugâ dispersos excipiunt, magno pecoris

^a 94, 3.

19, 1.

^b § 140, 5.^b 108, 2.

• 46, 1.

ⁱ § 141, R. I.^c § 114, R.^f § 140, 1, 2d.^k 96, 6.^d § 112, Obs. 1, &^e 48, 4.ⁱ § 136, R. LII.

numéro, cujus^a sunt cupidissimi barbāri, potiuntur. Invitāti praeda, longiūs procēdunt: ¹ non hos palus, in bello latrocin-
iisque natos, non silvæ morantur: quibus in locis sit^b Cæsar,
ex captivis quærun; profectum longiūs reperiunt, omnem-
que exercitum discessisse cognoscunt. Atque unus ex cap-
tivis, "Quid vos," inquit, "hanc misēram ac tenuem secta-
mīni prædam, quibus licet jam esse fortunatissimis?"^c Tri-
bus horis^d Aduatūcam^e venīre potestis: huc omnes suas
fortūnas exercitus Romanōrum contūlit: ²præsidiū tantum est,
ut ne murus^f quidem cingi possit,^g neque quisquam egrēdi
extra munitiōnes audeat."^h Oblatā spe, Germāni, quam^a
nacti erant prædam, in occulto relinquunt, ipsi Aduatūcam^e
contendunt, usi eōdem ³duce, cujus hæc indicioⁱ cognovērant.

36. Cicēro, qui per omnes superiōres dies præceptis Cæ-
saris summā diligentīā milītes in castris continuisset, ac ne
calōnem^f quidem quemquam extra munitiōnem egrēdi pas-
sus esset, septīmo die, diffīdens de número diērum Cæsārem
fidem servatūrum, quōd longiūs eum progressum audiēbat,
neque ulla de redītu ejus fama afferebātur; simul eōrum
permōtus vocibus, ⁴qui illius patientiam pæne obsessiōnem
appellābant, si quidem ex castris egrēdi non liceret; nullum
ejusmōdi casum expectans, quo, novem oppositis legionibus
maximōque equitātu, dispersis ac pæne delētis hostibus, in
millibus passuum tribus offendi posset; quinque cohortes
frumentātum in proximās segētes misit, quas inter et castra
unus omnīno collis interērat. Complūres erant in castris ex
legionibus ægri relictī; ex quibus ⁵qui hoc spatio diērum
convaluerant, circīter trecenti sub vexillo unā mittuntur:
magna præterea multitūdo calōnum, magna vis jumentō-
rum, quæ in castris ⁶subsedērat, factā potestāte, sequitur.

37. Hoc ipso tempore, ⁷casu Germāni equītes interveni-
unt, protinusque eōdem illo, quo venērant, cursu ab decu-

^a § 107, R. IX.

^b § 140, 5.

^c § 103, Obs. 7.

^d § 131, R. XLI.

^e § 130, 2.

^f 121, Note 2.

^g § 140, 1, 1st.

^h 37, 4.

ⁱ § 129, R.

mānā portā in castra irrumpere conantur: nec prius sunt visi, objectis ab eā parte silvis, quā castris appropinquarent, usque eo, ut, ¹ qui^a sub vallo tendērent mercatōres, recipiendi sui facultatem non habērent. Inopinantes nostri re novā perturbantur, ac vix primum impetum cohors in statione sustinet. Circumfunduntur^b ex reliquis hostes partibus, si quem^c aditum reperire possent. Ægrē portas nostri tumentur, ² reliquos aditus locus ipse per se munitioque defendit. Totis trepidatur castris, atque alius ex alio causam tumultus querit; neque quō signa ferantur,^d neque quam in partem quisque conveniat,^d provident. Alius capta jam castra^e pronunciat; alius, delēto exercitu atque imperatore, victōres barbāros^e venisse contendit: ³ plerique novas sibi ex loco reliquiones fingunt, Cottæque et Titurii calamitatem, qui in eodem occiderint^f castello, ante oculos ponunt. Tali timore omnibus perterritis, confirmatur opinio barbāris,^g ut ex captivo audierant, nullum esse intus præsidium. Perrumpere nituntur, seque ipsi^h adhortantur, ne tantam fortunam ex manibus dimittant.ⁱ

38. Erat æger in præsidio relictus Publius Sextius Baculus, ⁴ qui primum pilum ad Cæsarem duxerat, cuius mentionem ⁵ superioribus præliis fecimus, ac diem^k jam quintum cibo^l caruerat. Hic, diffusus suæ atque omnium sarum^m inermis ex tabernaculo prodit: videt imminere hostes, atque in summo esse remⁿ discrimine: capit arma a proximis atque in portā consistit. Consequuntur hunc centuriones ⁶ sua cohortis quæ in statione erat: paulisper unā ⁷ prælium sustinent. ⁸ Relinquit animus Sextium, gravibus acceptis vulneribus: ægrē per manus tractus servatur. Hoc spatio interposito, reliqui sese confirmant tantum, ut in munitioibus consistere audeant, speciemque defensorum præbeant.

^a 37, 4.^c § 145, R.^l § 140, 1, 3d.^b 116, 6.^e § 141, R. III.^m § 131, R. XLI.^c § 35, (*si quis*.)^g § 110, Obs. 1.ⁿ § 121, R. XXV^d § 140, 5.^h 33, 1.^o § 112, R. V.

39. Intērim confectā frumentatiōne, milītes nostri clamōrem exaudiunt; praecurrunt equītes, quanto sit ^a res in pericūlo, cognoscant. Hic verò nulla munitio est, quā ^b perterritos recipiat: modò conscripti, atque ^c usūs ^e militāris imperiti, ad tribūnum milītum centurionesque ora convertunt: quid ab his praeciātur, ^a expectant. Nemo est tam fortis, quin ^d rei novitate perturbetur. Barbāri, signa procul conspicāti, oppugnationē ^e desistunt: redisse primò legiōnes credunt, quas longiùs discessisse ex captivis cognovērant: postea, despectā paucitāte, ex omnibus partibus impētum faciunt.

40. Calōnes in proximum tumūlum procurrunt: hinc celeriter dejecti se in signa manipulosque conjiciunt: eo magis timīdos perterrent milītes. Alii, ² cuneo facto ut celeriter perrumpant, ^f censent, quoniam tam propinqua sint castra; et, ³ si pars aliqua circumventa ceciderit, at reliquos servārī posse confidunt: alii, ^g ut in jugo consistent, ^f atque eundem omnes ferant ^f casum. Hoc vetēres non probant milītes, quos ^h sub vexillo unā profectos docuimus. Itaque inter se ⁱ cohortāti, duce Caio Trebonio, equite Romāno, qui eis erat praepositus, per medios hostes perrumpunt, incolumesque ad ^j omnes in castra perveniunt. Hos subsequuntur calōnes equitesque eōdem impētū milītum virtūte servant. At ii, qui in jugo constitērant, ^k nullo etiam nūc ^l rei militāris percepto, neque in eo, quod probaverant, consilio permanēre, ut se loco superiōre defendērent, neque eam, ^m quam profuisse aliis ^k vim celeritatemque vidērant, imitārī potuerunt; sed, se in castra recipere conāti, iniquū in locum demiserant. Centuriōnes, quorum ⁿ nonnulli, ex inferioribus ordinibus reliquarum legiōnum, virtutis causā, ^m in superiōres erant ordines hujus legiōnis trans-

^a § 140, 5.^e § 136, R. LII.ⁱ § 28, Obs. 5.^b § 141, R. I.^f § 140, 1, 3d.^k § 112, R. V. 1st.^c § 107, R. IX.^g § 101, Obs. 4, censent. ^l § 107, R. X.^d § 140, 3.^h § 145, R. & 91, 4. ^m § 129, R.

ducti ne antè partam rei militàris laudem amitterent,^a fortissimè pugnantes conciderunt. Milìtum pars, horum virtùte submòtis hostibus,^b pràter spem incolùmis in castra pervēnit; pars a barbàris circumventa periit.

41. Germāni, desperatā expugnationē^b castròrum, quòd nostros jam constitisse^c in munitionibus vidēbant, cum eā praeda, quam in silvis deposuērunt, trans Rhenum sese receperunt. Ac tantus fuit etiam post discessum hostium terror, ut eā nocte,^d cùm Caius Volusēnus missus cum equitatu ad castra venisset,^e ¹ fidem non faceret,^f adesse cum incolūmi Cæsarem exercitū. Sic omnium animos timor praeoccupaverat, ut, ² pæne alienatā mente,^b delētis omnibus copiis equitatum tantum se ex fugā recepisse,^c dicērent,^f neque, incolūmi exercitū, Germānos castra oppugnaturos fuisse contendērent. Quem^g timōrem Cæsaris adventus sustulit.

42. Reversus ille, eventus belli non ignōrans, ³ unum, quòd cohortes ex statione et præsidio essent^h emissæ, questus, ⁴ ne minimo quidem casuⁱ locum relinqui debuisse, multum fortunam in repentino hostium adventu potuisse indicāvit; multo etiam ampliùs, quòd pæne ab ipso vallo portisque castròrum barbāros avertisset. ⁵ Quarum^g omnium rerum^k maxime admirandum videbātur, quòd Germāni, qui eo consilio Rhenum transiērant, ut Ambiorigis fines depopularentur,^f ad castra Romanòrum delāti, ⁶ optatissimum Ambiorigi beneficium obtulērunt.^l

43. Cæsar, rursus, ⁷ ad vexandos hostes profectus, magno coacto numēro^b ex finitimis civitatibus, in omnes partes dimittit. Omnes vici atque omnia ædificia, quæ quisque conspexerat, incendebantur: praeda ex omnibus locis agebātur: frumenta non solùm a tantā multitudīne jumentòrum atque hominū consumebantur, sed etiam anni tempore atque im-

^a § 140, 1, 2d.^b 109, 2.^c 98, 2.^d § 131, R. XLI.^e § 140, Obs. 4.^f § 140, 1, 1st.^g 38.^h § 140, 1, 3d.ⁱ § 126, R. III.^k § 135, R. XLVII.^l § 140, 1, 4th.

brībus procubuērant; ut, si qui etiam in præsentia se occul-
tāssent, tamen iis,^a deducto exercitu, rerum omnium inopiā
pereundum viderētur. Ac sæpe in eum locum ventum est,^b
tanto in omnes partes diviso equitātu, ut modò visum^c ab
se Ambiorigem^d in fugā captīvi, nec planè etiam abisse^e
ex conspectu contendērent, ut, spe consequendi illatā atque
infinīto labōre suscepto, qui se summam ab Cæsāre gratiam^e
initūros putārent,^f ¹pæne natūram studio vincērent,^g sem-
perque paulum ²ad summam felicitātem defuisse viderētur,^g
atque ³ille latēbris aut saltibus se eripēret,^h et noctu occul-
tātus alias regiōnes partesque petēret,^h non majōre equitum
præsidio, quā quatuor, quibus^h solis vitam suam commit-
tēre audēbat.

44. Tali modo vastātis regionibus,¹ exercitum Cæsar duā-
rum cohortium damno Durocortōrum^k Remōrum reducit,
conciliōque in eum locum Galliæ indicto,¹ de conjuratione
Senōnum et Carnūtum quæstiōnem habēre instituit; et de
Accōne, qui princeps¹ ejus consilii fuērat, graviōre senten-
tiā¹ pronunciātā, ⁴more majōrum supplicium sumsit. Non-
nulli judicium veriti profugerunt; ⁵quibus^m cū aquāⁿ at-
que igni^o interdixisset, duas legiōnes ad fines Trevirōrum,
duas in Lingonibus, sex reliquas in Senōnum finibus Agen-
dici in hibernis collocāvit; frumentōque ⁶exercitū^p proviso,
ut instituērat, in Italiam ad conventus agendos profectus est.

^a § 147, R.^b 67, Note.^c 98, 2.^d § 145, R.^e § 136, R. LII.^f § 141, R. III.^g § 140, 1; 1st.^h § 123, R.ⁱ 109, 2.^k § 130, 2.¹ § 103, R. V.^m § 112, R. IV.ⁿ § 136, Obs. 5, (ab.)^o § 15, 7.^p § 126, R. III.

NOTES ON BOOK I.

PAGE 53.—1. *Quarum*, supply *partium*, of these parts.—2. (Ii) *qui appellantur Celtæ ipsorum linguâ, Galli nostrâ* (linguâ, incôlunt*) *tertiam* (partem).—3. *Institūtis*, customs.—4. *Inter se*, among themselves; from each other.—5. Arrange: *Flumen Garumna dividit Gallos ab Aquitānis, Matrōna et Sequāna* (dividunt Gallos) *a Belgis*.—6. *Cultu*, civilization, mode of living—*humanitāte*, refinement, mental culture.—7. *Minimè sæpe*, least often, *i. e.* very seldom.—8. *Eos*, *i. e.* *Germānos*.—9. *Ipsi*, *i. e.* *Helvetii*.—10. *Eōrum* (finium) of those confines, or territories; of that country.—11. *Eōrum*, of them, *i. e.* of the three general divisions of Gaul.—12. *Vergit ad Septentriones*, it inclines, or extends towards the north.

P. 54.—1. *Ab extrēmīs finibus*, from the remotest, or most distant confines of Gaul; meaning the most northern limit of the division then inhabited by the Celtæ, or Gauls, called *Gallia propria*, and here called *extrēmīs*, because farthest distant from Rome.—2. *Speciant*, &c., they look towards—the country faces—the northeast.—3. *Ad Hispaniam*, at—next to—Spain, *viz*: the Bay of Biscay.—4. *Consules*, See Index.—5. *Civitāti*, his state:—*Civitas* means all the people living under one government.—6. *Potiri imperio*, to obtain the government.—7. *Persuāsit id eis facilius hoc*, he persuaded them to that measure more easily, on this account.—8. *Naturâ loci*, by the nature of the place, or, of their situation; by their natural situation.—9. *Pro multitudīne hominū*, for, in proportion to, the number of inhabitants; in proportion to the population.—10. *Belli atque fortitudinis*, for war and bravery.—11. *Qui patebant*, which extended.—12. *Adducti his rebus*, induced by these circumstances.—13. *Ad proficiscendum*, for their departure.—14. *Carrōrum quāmaximū numerū*, as great a number of wagons as possible.—15. *Sementes quāmaximas*, as great sowings as possible.

P. 55.—1. *In tertium annū*, against the third year.—2. *Occupāret*, that he should take possession of:—The imperfect subjunctive here follows the present (*persuadet*) on the principle stated,

* Latin words not in Italics, or enclosed in parentheses, are not in the text, but are here supplied, to shew the full construction of the sentence.

§ 137, Obs. 1.—3. *Principātum*, the highest power or authority.—4. *Probat illis, perfacile esse factu, perficere conāta*, he (Orgetorix) assures them that the accomplishment of their designs would be easily done; that their designs would be easily accomplished.—5. *Totius Gallia, i. e. civitatibus totius Gallia, &c.*, Of the states of all Gaul the Helvetii,—*possent (facere) plurimum*, could do most, *i. e.* were most powerful.—6. *Inter se*, among themselves, to each other, mutually.—7. *Per tres—populos*, viz: the Helvetii, Sequāni, and Ædui.—8. Arrange: *Sperant sese posse potiri (imperio) totius Gallia*.—9. *Ea res*, this design.—10. *Per indicium*, by information.—11. *Ex vinculis*, Out of chains, *i. e.* in chains.—12. Arrange: *Opportebat pānam sequi (Orgetorigem) damnātum, ut cremaretur igni*, it behoved this punishment to follow, overtake, *Orgetorix*, being condemned, that he should be burned with fire.—13. *Fāmiliam*, household—including domestics, slaves, &c.—14. *Ad millia decem*, about ten thousand;—*Ad*, with a numeral, signifies about, near, or towards.

P. 56.—1. *Magistrātus cogērent*, the magistrates (of the Ædui) were collecting.—2. *Quin ipse*, but that he.—3. *Ad*, about.—4. *Trivm mensium*, for three months.—5. *Molita cibaria*, ground provisions, *i. e.* meal or flour.—6. *Usi eodem consilio*, following the same counsel or design; adopting the same resolution.—7. *Boiosque, &c.*,—*receptos ad se, &c.*, having received the Boii, &c., they join them to themselves as allies; Or, they receive, and join to themselves as allies, the Boii, &c. For this use of the perfect participle see Idioms, 104.—8. *Vix quā*, scil. viā, where, or, by which way.—9. *Provinciam nostram*, our province; the Roman province in the south of Gaul, afterwards called Gallia Narbonensis.—10. *Propterea quodd*, because; literally, on this account that.—11. *Isque transitur vado*, and it is crossed by a ford, *i. e.* it is fordable.

P. 57.—1. *Bono animo*, of a good mind, friendly disposition, well affected.—2. *Diem*, see *Dies*, Index.—3. *Ante diem quintum, &c.* The fifth before the Kalends of April, *i. e.* the 28th March. See Gr. App. I.—4. *Lucio Pisqne, &c.*, that was, A. U. C. 696, B. C. 58.—5. *Urbe*, scil. Romā.—6. *Galliam ulteriōrem*, farther Gaul, *i. e.* Gaul beyond the Alps.—7. *Provincia tott*, &c. he orders as many soldiers as possible from the whole province, *i. e.* he levies, &c.—For explanation of this construction see § 123, Exp.—8. *Ad*, near.—9. *Facti sunt certiōres*, were made more certain; were informed.—10. *Esse sibi in animo*, that they had it in design; that it was their intention; literally, that it was in the mind to them.—11. *Voluntāte*, with his consent.—12. *Sub jugum missum*, sent under the yoke:—

Two spears were set upright in the ground, and another was laid across them at top, forming what the Romans called *jugum*. Under this they who were admitted to surrender upon these terms were compelled to pass unarmed, *nudi*.—13. *Concedendum* (esse sibi,) that he ought to yield to their request.—14. *Ante diem Idus Aprilis*, i. e. the 12th April, see App. I.

P. 58.—1. *Qui in flumen*—As the Rhone flows through the lake Lemanus, and of course out of it, it is here said that the lake flows into it. 2. *Ad montem Juram*, towards mount Jura.—3. *Millia passuum novem decem*, nineteen miles in length. See App. VI. Table 5.—4. *Castella communit*, he strongly fortifies castles, or redoubts. § 91, Obs. 1. 5th.—5. *Se invito*, he being unwilling, i. e. against his will, or inclination.—6. *Negat se, more*, &c. he declares that he cannot, consistently with the custom, &c. *Negat* is equivalent to *dicit non*.—7. *Navibus junctis ratibusque*, &c., some by means of boats joined together, and numerous rafts being made; before *navibus* supply *Alii*.—8. *Quà minima*, &c., where the depth of the river was least. 9. *Perrumpere*, break through, force a passage.—10. *Eo deprecatore*, he being intercessor; by his mediation.—11. *Gratiâ et largitione*, by his personal influence and liberality—*poterat facere plurimum*, could accomplish a very great deal.—12. *In matrimonium duxerat*, had married; literally, had led into matrimony. *Ducere uxorem* (domum) “to marry,” is said of the husband, because a part of the ceremony consisted in leading the wife home to his house. *Nubere* (se) *viro*, “to marry,” is said of the wife, (literally, “to veil herself to her husband,”) because during the ceremony she wore a flame-colored veil.—13. *Novis rebus studebat*, desired, wished for, new things; aimed at, plotted, a revolution in the state.

P. 59.—1. *Sequâni* (dent obsides);—*Helvetii* (dent obsides). 2. *Ne prohibeant*, that they would not prevent, or hinder, the *Helvetii* from (using) this route.—3. *Cæsari renunciatur*, Intelligence is brought to Cæsar; § 126, R. III.—4. *Intelligebat*, &c.—he perceived it would be very dangerous to the province—*ut haberet*, to have; (literally, that it should have).—5. *Proximum*, nearest, i. e. shortest.—6. *Quod est extremum* (oppidum) *citerioris Provinciæ*, which is the most distant town (viz: from Rome,) of the hither province, i. e. of Cisalpine Gaul; See Index.—7. *Rogatum auxilium*, to ask assistance.

P. 60.—1. *Necessarii*, &c., friends and relations.—2. *Sibi præter agri*, &c. that nothing was left to them except the soil of their land; except a desolate country.—3. *Flumen est Arar*, The Arar

(now the Saone,) is a river.—4. *Incredibili lenitate*, with surprising smoothness.—5. *In utram partem*, into which part; which way; in which direction.—6. *Id transibant*, were crossing that;—*intribus*, canoes, small boats.—7. *De tertiâ vigiliâ*, at the third watch, i. e. midnight; See App. I.—8. *Impeditos*, encumbered with their baggage.—9. *In proximas silvas*, &c., went into the neighboring forests and hid themselves:—This expresses the force of the accusative after *in*.—10. *Princeps pœnas persolvit*, first suffered punishment; § 98, Obs. 10, i. e. was the first to suffer punishment.

P. 61.—1. Arrange: *Tigurini interfecerunt L. Pisōnem legatum, avum L. Pisōnis ejus* (i. e. Cæsaris,) *soceri eodẽm prælio quo Tigurini interfecerant Cassium*.—2. *Consequi*, come up with, overtake.—3. *Pontem in Arârî*, &c. that a bridge should be made over the Arar.—4. *Cassiâno bello*, in the war with Cassius; See Index, Cassius.—5. *Ita cum Cæsare agit*, thus speaks with, or addresses Cæsar:—This address of Divico is in the form of oblique narration; See § 140, 6, & § 141, R. VI., with explanation, &c.—6. *Vettris incommodi*, the old disaster; alluding to the defeat of Cassius.—7.—*Tribuêrat quidquam magnopere*, &c., should ascribe any thing too greatly to his own bravery.—8. *Ne committêret*, that he should not cause; bring it to pass—*aut prodêret*, &c., or hand down to posterity the memory of such an event.—9.—*Cæsar respondit*, Cæsar replied. All that follows in this chapter is oblique narration; the verb *respondit* being in the perfect indefinite, the leading verb governed by it in the present infinitive is translated as the perfect indicative, and the perfect infinitive as the pluperfect indicative; See Idioms, Nos. 96, 98.—10. *Qui si*, if they, viz. the Roman people.

P. 62.—1. *Non fuisse*, &c., it would not have been difficult to guard against it; the subject of *fuisse* is *cavere*, and strictly rendered is, "that to guard against it would not have been difficult."—2. *Sed eo deceptum esse*, &c., but that they (the Roman people) had been deceived by this, because they did not think anything had been done by them;—Supply *quidquam* before *commisum*. 3. *Timendum* (esse sibi,) that they should fear.—4. *Quodd si vellet*, but if, even although, he were willing.—5. *Num etiam—posse*, &c.? Could he also lay aside, &c.?—6. *Eodẽm pertinere*, were to the same effect; *pertinere* has for its subject the two preceding clauses.—7. *Secundiores res*, more prosperous things; greater prosperity.—8. *Quum ea sint ita*, although these things are so; although this is the case.—9. *Testem ejus rei*, a proof of that custom.—10. *Cupidiùs*, too eagerly.—*Alieno loco*, in a disadvantageous, or unfavorable place.

P. 63.—1. *Novissimo agmine*, the rear, *i. e.* the “last line” met by an opposing enemy.—2. *Satis habebat*, &c., considered it sufficient for the present.—3. *Nostrum primum* (agmen), our van.—4. *Quinis aut sentis*, &c., five or six miles (each day).—5. *Flagitare* (for *flagitabat*,) continued to importune—publicè, in the name of their state.—6. *Frigora*, the cold; the coldness of the climate.—7. *Sub septentrionibus*, under the north; towards the north.—This must be understood in relation to Italy.—8. *Frumento*, corn:—At this time not meal or bread was served out to the Roman soldiers, but raw corn, which they themselves prepared.—9. *Conferri*, &c., that it was collecting, bringing in, at hand.—10. *Diutius*, too long; See Idioms, 22.—11. *Qui summo*, &c., who was invested with the office of chief magistrate.

P. 64.—1. *Tacuerat*, had concealed.—2. *Valuit plurimum*, is very powerful; has great influence.—3. *Privati*, though private individuals.—4. *Necessariò coactus*, compelled by necessity, (*Necessariò* for *necessitate*.)—5. *Designari*, was meant.—6. *Nolebat eas res jactari, multis presentibus*, he was unwilling, he did not wish, that these affairs should be discussed, so many being present; in the presence of so many.—7. *Solo*, (*Lisco*,) of him alone.—8. *Redempta habere*, &c., had farmed the customs, and all the other public revenues of the *Ædui*: *Portoria* means duties on exports and imports,—*vectigalia* means every other kind of tax or revenue. Those who “farmed” them bought them at the lowest price they could, from the government, and collected them for their own use.

P. 65.—1. *Facultates magnas comparasse*, &c., had acquired great means for bestowing presents, namely, for the purpose of extending and strengthening his influence. 2. *Largiter posse*, had great influence—*collocasse* (nuptum), had given in marriage.—3. *Cupere* (for *bene velle*), wished well to.—4. *Si quid* (*adversi*) *accidat*, if any thing unfortunate should happen; if any calamity befall.—5. *Inquirendo*, by enquiry, on enquiring.—6. *Equitatu* (the old dative for *equitatui*; § 16, Exc. 2.) *præerat*, was over, or commanded the cavalry.—7. *Certissimæ res*, most certain; most unquestionable facts.—8. *Injussu suo*, &c without his order and the order of the state (*viz.* of the *Ædui*).

P. 66.—1. *Voluntatem*, affection.—2. *Commonefacit*, reminds him.—3. *Ostendit*, shews him.—4. *Causâ cognitâ*, the cause being tried or investigated.—5. *Nequid gravius*, &c. that he (*Cæsar*) should not determine any thing too severe; that he should not pass too severe a sentence.—6. *Ipsæ*, he himself (*viz.* *Divitiacus*).

7. *Ille*, he (*i. e.* Dumnorix).—8. *Fraterno amore*, by brotherly love; by love or affection for his brother.

P. 67.—1. *Adhibet*, brings in—*propōnit*, lays before him.—2. *Divitiāco fratri*, to his brother, *i. e.* at the request of, and for the sake of his brother, Divitiacus.—3. *Custōdes*, spies.—4. *Consedisse*, had sat down, *i. e.* had encamped.—5. *Facilem* (*ascensum*) *esse*, that the ascent was easy.—6. *Vigiliā*; See Index; also Appendix to Gr. I.—7. See Index, *Legātus*.—8. See Index, *Prator*—*Legātum prætore*, his lieutenant with prætorian powers.—9. *Et iis ducibus*, and with those as guides.—10. *In* (*exercitu*) *M. Crassi*.—11. *Primā luce*, at the first daylight; at the dawn of day.—12. *Ipse*, he himself (*i. e.*) Cæsar.—13. *Equo admisso*, his horse being put to it; spurred up, *i. e.* at full gallop.

P. 68.—1. *Multo die acto*, much of the day being past; when much of the day was past.—2. *Pro viso*, literally, for seen, *i. e.* as if it had actually been seen by him.—3. *Quo consuērat intervallo*, at the distance at which he had been accustomed to follow, *i. e.* at the usual distance. 4. *Exercitu* (the old dative for *exercitui*.) *frumentum metiri*, to measure out, *i. e.* to serve out corn for the army.—5. *Rei frumentariae prospiciendum* (*esse sibi*), that he must provide for a supply of corn.—6. *Decurio*, See Index.—7. *Discedere*, were departing from them.—8. (*Helvetii*) *confidērent* (*Romānos*) *posse*, &c.—9. *Animum advertit*, (same as *animadvertit*.) perceives; § 44. I. 3.—10. *Qui sustinēret impetum*, to sustain the charge.

P. 69.—1. *Citeriōre Galliā*, hither Gaul; the north of Italy. 2. *Compleri*, to be filled, to be covered.—3. *Eum*, it, *i. e.* the place in which the baggage was.—4. *Confertissimā acie*, &c., in very close array—*phalange factā*, a phalanx being made. The German phalanx consisted of a very close body of men with their shields held over their heads, and overlapping so as to form a shed or screen like the Roman testudo, to defend them from the missiles of the enemy. The Macedonian phalanx, on the other hand, consisted of a body of men, sixteen deep and five hundred long.—5. *Sub*, close up to.—6. *Suo* (*equo remōto*).—7. *Periculū omnium* (*i. e.* Imperatoris et militum) *æquātū*, the danger of all being equal; all being exposed to equal danger.—8. *Scutum*, See Index.—9. *Satis commōdè*, conveniently enough; with sufficient ease or readiness.—10. *Nudo*, naked, unprotected.—Their bodies were exposed to the darts of the enemy, from having thrown down their shields.—11. *Pedem referre*, to retreat; literally, to take back the foot.—12. *Claudēbant agmen*, closed up the rear,—13. *Bipartito*, in two parties; in two divisions.

The army was drawn up in three lines, of which the first and second lines, forming one division, made head against those who had been defeated and compelled to retreat, *i. e.* the Helvetians, who were now returning to the attack; and the third line sustained the attack of those advancing (*venientes*,) against them, the fresh troops, *i. e.* the Boii and the Tulingi, who were coming up in the rear.

P. 70.—1. *Ancipiti praelio*, in doubtful battle, *i. e.* victory inclining to neither side.—2. *Alit̄ri*, the one, *i. e.* the Helvetii—*alit̄ri*, the other, *i. e.* the Boii and the Tulingi.—3. *Ab septimā horā*, from the seventh hour, *i. e.* one o'clock p. m.; See Index, *hora*.—4. *Aversum*, turned away; who had turned his back; retreating; flying.—5. *Pugnātum est ad multam noctem*, It was fought till a great part of the night was past; till late at night.—6. *Mat̄ras ac tragūlas*, &c. continued throwing lances and javelins from beneath.—7. *Qui, si juvissent*, for, if they should aid them; See Idioms, 39.—8. Arrange: *Se habitūrum eos* (Lingōnas) *eodem loco quo ille*, (Cæsar,) habēret *Helvetios*.—9. *Qui, cū convenissent*, and they, when they had met; See Ref.

P. 71.—1. *Occultāri*, be concealed. (*viz.* from Cæsar).—2. *Omnino ignorāri*, be altogether unknown; remain altogether unnoticed.—3. *Primā nocte*, at the beginning of the night.—4. Arrange: *Imp̄erat his per quorum fines īerant, ut̄i*, &c.—5. *Habuit*, &c., treated as enemies; *i. e.* either put them to death or sold them as slaves.—6. *Ipsos*, them, *viz.* the Helvetii, Tulingi, and Latobrigi.—7. *Vacāre*, to be empty; to be uninhabited.—8. Arrange, *Concessit Æduis petentibus, ut* (Ædui) *collocārent Boios in suis finibus, quōd* (Boii) *cogniti erant egregiā virtute: quibus* (Scil. Boiis) *illi* (Ædui) *dedērunt agros*.—9. *Tabulæ*, 'lists; literally, tablets:—These were made of wood covered with wax, on which the Romans were accustomed to write with the stylus.—10. *Confecta Græcis lit̄eris*, written in Greek letters.—11. *Ratio*, an account.

P. 72.—1. *Capitum*, literally, "of heads," *i. e.* persons, souls.—2. *Censu habito*, the census having been held; the number having been taken:—This was only a numbering of the army, and consequently very different from the Roman *census*; See Index, *Census*.—3. *Gratulātum*, to congratulate him:—After *gratulātum* supply *dicentes*, expressing past time; See Idioms, 94, 4, and 1, 2d.—4. *Pro veteribus injuriis*, &c., for the ancient injuries done by the Helvetii to the Roman people. Here two genitives are governed by one noun, the one, (*Helvetiorum*) in an active sense, and the other (*Populī Romāni*) in a passive sense; § 106, Obs. 1, & 2.—5. *Ne quis*, &c.

that no one should disclose their deliberations, unless those to whom this charge should be given by the assembly at large.

P. 73.—1. *Non minus*, &c.; See Note 3, preceding page. The statement of the chiefs, and of Divitiacus who spoke for them, it will be perceived, is given in the form of oblique narration—of course, the leading verbs are in the infinitive mood governed by *dicentes*, or *dicens* expressing past time, because agreeing with the subject of verbs in the perfect tense. Hence the present infinitive, with a subject, will be translated in the perfect indicative, and the perfect infinitive, in the pluperfect, as the references show; and also all the verbs in subordinate clauses are in the subjunctive; See § 140, 6, and § 141, R. VI., &c.—2. *Harum* (factionum) &c. that the Ædui were at the head of one of these factions, and the Averni at the head of the other.—3. *Hi cum contendèrent*, &c.; since these (the Ædui and Averni) had contended for the superiority.—4. *Horum*, of the latter, (viz: the Germans).—5. *Copias*; *copia* in the singular means “abundance,” in the plural, commonly “forces,” but here, great abundance; the plural form rendering it emphatic.—6. *Neque recusaturos quo minus essent*, &c. nor refuse to be forever under their sway and government; Idioms, 78, Note, & 7.—7. *Se unum*, that he alone (Divitiacus).

P. 74.—1. *Quibus locus*, &c. for whom a settlement and habitations were to be procured.—2. *Futurum esse*, that it would be; that the consequence in a few years would be.—3. *Neque enim*, &c., For neither was the Gallic territory to be compared with that of the Germans.—4. *Ut semel*. when once, i. e. as soon as.—5. *Omnia exempla cruciatuque*, all manner of cruelties: by Hendiadys (§ 150, 2, 2d,) for *exempla cruciatuum*.—6. *Nisi si*, same as *nisi*, unless.—7. *Ut*, namely, that.

P. 75.—1. *Habita*, being delivered.—2. *Exprimere*, draw, extort.—3. *Hoc*, on this account.—4. *Præ* (fortunâ) *reliquorum*, in comparison with the fortune of the rest; or simply, than the rest.—5. *Fugæ facultas*, the means of escape.—6. *Omnes cruciatus*, all tortures, i. e. all kinds of torture.—7. *Eam rem futuram* (esse) *cura sibi*, that that thing would be a care to him; that he would attend to that matter.—8. *Secundum ea*, &c., besides these things, many circumstances induced him—*quare putaret*, to think; literally, why he should think.

P. 76.—1. *Occurrendum*, &c., he must meet, or thwart, as early as possible.—2. *Placuit ei*, it pleased him, i. e. he resolved.—3. *Et summis utrisque rebus*, matters of the greatest importance to

both.—4. *Si quid ipsi*, &c. if any thing had been wanted by him from Cæsar, i. e. if he had wanted any thing from Cæsar.—5. *Si quid ille se velit*, if he (Cæsar,) wished any thing from him (Ariovistus).—6. *Sine magno commedū atque emolumento*, (better than *emolumento*,) without great expense and trouble.—7. Arrange: *Quid negotii esset aut Cæsari*, &c.

P. 77.—1. *Hanc gratiam referret*, he should make this return—*ut gravaretur*, that he grudged, or, was reluctant.—2. *Neque*. used conjunctively, equivalent to *et non*.—3. *Dicendum sibi et cognoscendum*, &c., that he should not think it necessary for him to speak, and inform himself about a matter of common interest.—4. *Ne quam*, &c. (equivalent to *ne aliquam*,) that he should not lead any, &c.—5. *Injuriā* literally, with injury, i. e. without just cause.—6. *Quod*, i. e. *secundum id quod*, according to that which, i. e. as far as (equivalent to *quantum*) he could do it consistently with the interest of the republic.—7. *Item*, in like manner.—8. *Non oportere se impediri*, that he ought not to be hindered.

P. 78.—1. *Longè iis abfutūrum*, would be far from them. i. e. would do them no good. 2. *Quod sibi*, &c. as to what Cæsar threatened to him, namely.—3. *Inter*, during.—4. *Virtute* (facere) *possent*, could effect by valor.—5. *Ædui* (veniebant) *questum*.—6. *Treviri autem* (veniebant *questum*).—7. *Ne minus facile*, &c., lest—he (Ariovistus) might be less easily resisted.—8. *Re frumentariā comparatā*, having provided a supply of corn; Idioms, 104.—9. *Tridui viam*, a journey of three days.—10. *Contendere*. was hastening—*processisse*, had advanced—*ad occupandum Vesontionem*, to take possession of Vesontio.—11. *Summa facultas*, the greatest abundance. 12: *Ad ducendum bellum*, for protracting the war.

P. 79.—1. *Ut circino circumductum*, as if traced around it with a pair of compasses.—2. *Non amplius* (spatio), not more than the space.—3. *Continet*, closes, occupies.—4. *Murus, circumdatus hunc* (montem,) *efficit arcem, et conjungit* (montem) *cum oppido*, a wall, thrown around, converts this mountain into a citadel, and connects it with the town.—5. *Ex percunctatione*, &c., from the enquiries of our men, and the statements of the Gauls.—6. *Vultum et aciem oculorum*, their look and the fierceness of their eyes.—7. *Tribunis, præfectis*; See Index.—8. *Quorum alius*, &c., of whom one having assigned one reason, another, another reason, which they said was a necessary one, (or rendered it necessary,) for them to return home.—9. *Fingere vultum*, compose their countenance

P. 80.—1. *Qui*, i. e. *ii qui*, those who.—2. *Dicto audiens*, obedient to the order:—*Dicto* is governed in the dative here by *audiens*; § 111, R.: both words together commonly signify obedient, and govern a dative by the same rule; as, *Duct dicto audiens*, obedient to the general.—3. *Consilio convocato*, a council (of war) being called; or, having called a council of war.—4. *Sibi querendum*, that they must enquire, i. e. that it was their business to enquire.—5. *Sibi quidem persuaderi*, that he was even persuaded.—6. *Suis postulatis*, &c. his demands being known, and the fairness.—7. *Sua*, their own—*ipsius*, his.—8. *Factum (esse) periculum*, that trial had been made. 9. *Servili tumultu*, (equivalent to *servorum tumultu*) the insurrection of the slaves.

P. 81.—1. *In suis*, in their own, (i. e. the Helvetii)—*illorum* (i. e. *Germanorum*) *finibus*, in their territories.—2. *Quos*, for *aliquos*, any.—3. *Neque sui potestatem fecisset*, and had not given an opportunity of coming to an engagement with him:—*Facere potestatem sui*, means to allow one's self to be approached.—4. *Ratione et consilio*, by stratagem and cunning.—5. *Qui*, i. e. *ii qui*, those who.—6. *Quod non fore dicto*, &c., As to this, that it was said the soldiers would not be obedient to orders.—7. *Scire enim quibuscumque*, &c., for he knew, to whomsoever, (i. e. in all cases in which; § 99, Obs. 7,) an army would not be obedient, that either, &c.—8. *Itaque se, quod*, &c., that he would therefore do immediately that which he was going to put off to a more distant day.

P. 82.—1. *Prætoriam cohortem*, a body guard.—2. *Confidebat maximè*, trusted most.—3. *Princeps*, first.—4. *Egerunt*, strove—before *se neque*, supply *dicentes* or *dixerunt*; See Idioms, 94, 4.—5. *Satisfactione*, their apology, excuse.—6. *Exquisito*, being reconnoitred.—7. (Supply *qui dicent*,) *quod*, &c., to say that that which, &c.—8. *Fore uti desisteret*, that he would desist; See Ref.

P. 83.—1. *Ne quem peditem*, &c. that Cæsar should not bring any infantry.—2. *Tolli*, should be prevented, thwarted.—3. *Commodissimum*, most expedient.—4. *Omnibus equis*, &c., All their horses being taken from the Gallic cavalry, to mount on them, (literally, thereon).—5. *Si quid opus*, &c. if there should be any need of action; § 118, R. XXII.—6. *Nunc rescribere ad equum*, he now enrolled them among the cavalry.—7. *Ex equis*, on horseback—*denos*, ten each.—8. *Ubi ventum est eò*, when they came to the place appointed; See Ref.

P. 84.—1. *Necessitudinis*, &c., of alliance existed between them and the Ædui.—2. *Nihil sui*, nothing of their own.—3. *Aucti-*

ores, encreased, farther advanced.—4. *Quos amplius*, any more.—5. *Rogatum et arcessitum*, having been asked and sent for.

P. 85.—1. *Quod multitudinem transducatur*, as to his leading, &c.; literally, as to this that he led; See Idioms, 38, Note.—2. *Defendêrit*, had warded it off.—3. *Quid sibi vellet?* (Cæsar) What did he (Cæsar) want?—Here *sibi* refers to Cæsar, *suas* to Ariovistus.—4. *Hanc Galliam*, &c. That this Gaul (viz: Transalpine,) belonged to him (Ariovistus)—*Sicut illam nostram*, just as that Gaul (Cisalpine) belonged to us.—5. *Qui*, Since we.—6. *Quod dicêret*, as to that which he said; or since he said.—7. *Sese facturum esse gratum*, that he would do an agreeable thing, a favor; would oblige.

P. 86.—1. *In eam sententiam*, to this effect.—2. *Esse Ariovisti*, &c., belonged to Ariovistus, rather than to the Roman people.—3. *Quodque tempus*, &c., if all ancient time—the most ancient—the most distant period ought to be regarded.—4. *Voluisset*, had decreed.—5. *Propius* (ad) *tumulum*.—6. *Per fidem*, by relying on his faith.—7. *Vulgus militum*, among the common soldiers.—8. *Quâ arrogantia usus*, &c., using what arrogance, or with what arrogance Ariovistus had interdicted the Romans from all Gaul, and his cavalry had made an attack on our men, and how that affair had broken up the conference:—These subjunctives are all in the same construction, containing an indirect question, the first and second indicated by *quâ arrogantia*, and the third by *ut*; § 140, 5.—9. *Injectum est*, was infused.

P. 87.—1. *Neque perfectæ essent*, and had not been completed; § 93, 1.—2. *Quin conjicerent*, from throwing; See Ref.—3. *In eo peccandi*, &c., and because in him the Germans had no cause of sinning, of committing any act of violence.—4. *Causâ speculandi?* for the sake of spying? on purpose to act as spies?

P. 88.—1. *Ei potestas non deesset*, an opportunity might not be wanting to him, i. e. he might have the opportunity.—2. *Quos ex omni*, &c., literally, whom they had selected from the whole army, each horseman one.—3. *Si quod*, &c. if they had to advance farther than usual in any direction.—4. *Cursum adæquarent*, equalled their speed.—5. *Quo in loco*, &c. in which the Germans had encamped.—6. *Quæ copiæ*, that these forces.

P. 89.—1. *Suo instituto*, according to his custom, or design.—2. *A majoribus* (castris) from the larger camp.—3. *Sortibus et vaticinationibus*, by lots and auguries.—4. *Ex usu esset*, &c., whether or not it would be of advantage that the battle should be joined.—

5. *Non esse fas*, that it was not the will of the gods.—6. *Alarios*, the auxiliaries:—So called from their being in general placed on the wings (*alæ*) of the army when in the order of battle.—7. *Pro*, in front of.—8. *Ad speciem*, for show; for appearance.—9, *Generatim*, by nations.—10. *Rhedis*, carriages,—*carris*, baggage wagons.—11. *Eò*, on them.

P. 90.—1. *Singulis legionibus*, &c., placed a lieutenant and quæstor over each legion.—2. *Minimè firmam*, least firm, weakest. 3. See Note 4, p. 69.—4. *Expediior*, more disengaged; more at liberty.—5. *Neque destiterunt fugere*, nor did they cease to fly; discontinue their flight.—6. *In his*, among these.—7. *Quam duxerat*, whom he had married.—8. *Dux filia*, &c. the two daughters of these,—the one was killed and the other taken captive.

P. 91.—1. *In ipsum Cæsarem*, &c., fell in with Cæsar himself. 2. *Beneficio*, by the favor.—3. *Proximi*, next to; bordering upon.—4. *In citeriorem Galliam*, into hither Gaul:—The northern part of Italy, or that part of Gaul south of the Alps, was called Cisalpine, or hither Gaul, from being on *this side* of the Alps with regard to Rome.—5. *Ad agendos conventus*, to hold the assizes, or courts of justice:—This was usually attended to in the winter, when military operations could not be carried on.

NOTES ON BOOK III.

PAGE 92.—1. *Cum esset Cæsar*, &c.:—The time here indicated was in the year of the city 697, and 57 years B. C.—2. *Crebri rumores*, frequent reports. 3. *Dixeramus*, we had said; B. I. Ch. 1.—4. *Conjurandi*, of the conspiracy.—5. *Partim qui*, some of whom; *ut*, as on the one hand—*ita*, so, on the other.—6. *Partim qui*, while others.—7. *Novis imperiis studebat*, were in favor of a change of government.—8. *Ab nonnullis* (solicitentur).—9. *Qui ad conducendos*, &c., who had the means for hiring troops.—10. *Eam rem in imperio nostro consèqui poterant*, could accomplish that object under our government.—11. *Inita æstate*, in the beginning of summer.—12. *Dat negotium*, he gives a commission, he directs.—13. *Cognoscant*, should learn.

P. 93.—1. *Quin proficiscertur*, but that he should march; about marching.—2. *Celeriusque*, &c., and sooner than the expectation of all, (of any one,) i. e. than all (or any one) expected.—3. *Neque se consensisse*, that they had neither agreed; approved of the design; joined, entered into the confederacy.—4. *Furōrem*, in-fatuation.—5. *Ab his*, from these, viz: the ambassadors from the Remi.—6. *Quantæ*, how powerful.—7. *Omnia se habere explorata*, that they had all things fully examined.

P. 94.—1. *Divitiacum*, Divitiacus—not the Æduan.—2. *Totius belli summam*, the direction of the whole war.—3. *Longissimè ab-sunt*, are very remote.—4. *Qui appellantur uno nomine Germāni*, who are called by one name, Germans—*ad quadraginta millia* about forty thousand.—5. *Liberaliter prosecutus oratione*, having complimented them highly in a speech.—6. *Ad diem*, by the day appointed.—7. *Magno opère*, i. e. *magnopère*, greatly—*quanto opère*, i. e. *quantopère*, how much it concerned.—8. *Ne configendum sit*, that he might not have to contend.

P. 95.—1. *Quæ res*, this position.—2. *Cohortibus*; See Gr. App. V.—3. *Duodeviginti pedum*, (in latitudinem) eighteen feet broad.—4. *Gallorum eadem atque*, &c. of the Gauls as well as of the Belgæ.—5. *Quod tum*, &c. this was then easily done. 6. *Potes-tas consistendi in muro erat nulli*, the power of standing on the wall was to none; no man was able to stand on the wall. 7. *Præerat*, was over; had the command of; was governor of.—8. *De mediâ nocte*, soon after midnight.

P. 96.—1. *Quos*, &c., which, (viz: villages and buildings,) they could reach.—2. *Et ab millibus passuum* &c., at less than two miles distant (viz: *castris*, from the camp).—3. *Prælio supersedere*, to defer a battle.—4. *Solicitationibus periclitabatur*, trial was made in skirmishes.—5. *Ex utraque parte*, &c., had a steep descent on both sides; literally, had descents of the side on both sides.—6. *Et frontem lentiter fastigatus*, and in front gently sloping.—7. *Ad extrêmas fossas*, at the extremities, or ends of the ditches.—8. *Tormenta*, military engines, viz: the *Catapulta* and the *Balista*; See Index.—9. *Quod tantum multitudîne potèrat*, because they could do so much by their great number; were so powerful, or strong, in numbers.—10. *Si quâ opus*, &c. if it should be needful any where.

P. 97.—1. *Non magna palus erat*, there was a small morass.—2. *Expectabant*, continued waiting to see.—3. *Secundiore nostris*, being more favorable to our men.—4. *Demonstratum est*, has been

shewn; See Ch. 5.—5. *Si minùs potuissent*, if they could not do this;—*ad gerendum bellum*, for carrying on the war; for prosecuting the war.—6. *Impeditos*, embarrassed.—7. *Quorum in fines*, into whose soever boundaries, or territory.—8. *Et domesticis copiis*, &c., and enjoy the abundance of provisions which they had at home.

P. 98.—1. *Hæc quoque ratio*, this consideration also.—2. *His persuaderi*,—*non poterat*, these could not be persuaded; See Idioms, 68, 1.—3. *Nullo certo ordine*, in no fixed, determined, regular order. 4. *Cùm sibi quisque*, &c.:—Since each one sought to be foremost on the route.—5. *Insidias veritus*, fearing a stratagem, an ambuscade,—*qui moraretur*, that they might delay; in order to delay.—6. *Cùm (illi) ab extremo*, &c.. when those in the rear, to which they had come.—7. *Tantam multitudinem, quantum*, &c., as great a number as the length of the day allowed.

P. 99.—1. *Vacuum ab defensoribus*, empty, unprotected by defenders.—2. *Vineas agere*, to move forward the vineæ; See Index.—3. *Aggère jacto*, a mound being thrown up; See Index.—4. *Turribus constitutis*, and towers being erected on it; See Index, *Turris*.—5. *Petentibus Remis*, the Remi requesting it; at the request of the Remi.—6. *Impetrant*, they obtain it; viz: that they should be preserved.—7. *Majores natu*, greater by birth, i. e. older, more advanced in age.—8. *Passis manibus*, with extended hands.—9. *Facit verba*; literally, makes words, i. e. speaks,—present tense for the past; § 44, I. 3:—The pupil may here note the difference between *facere verba*, and *dare verba*,—the first means “to make a speech;” the last, “to put off with words,” i. e. “to deceive.” 10. *In fide*, &c., under the protection, and in the friendship of, &c., i. e. had always been protected and befriended by.

P. 100.—1. *Non solùm Bellovācos*, &c., that not only the Bellovaci themselves, but also the Ædui for them, entreated that he would use.—2. *Cùm quæreret*, when he enquired; on enquiry.—3. *Nihil vini*, no wine.—4. *Increpitāre*, &c., that they inveighed against and accused.—5. *Confirmāre*, asserted, declared; were determined, it was their fixed resolution.—6. *Conditionem*, offer, proposal.—7. *Expectāre*, were expecting, were waiting.—8. *Expectāri*, were expected, were waited for.

P. 101.—1. Arrange: *Conjecisse, mulières (et homines) qui viderentur inutiles*, &c.—2. *Eòrum dièrum*, &c., the custom of those days in respect of the march:—*Exercitùs* is governed by *itinèris*.—3. *Neque esse quicquam*, &c., literally, and that when the first legion

had come into the camp, &c.,—to attack this legion under its baggage would be a matter of no great difficulty; *i. e.* there would be no great difficulty in attacking, &c.—4. *Quâ (legiōne) pulsâ, reliquæ (legiōnes)*.—5. *Ei rei*, to this subject, *viz.* the training of cavalry.—6. *Valeat (efficere)*.—7. *Incisis atque inflexis*, being cut in, and bent over.—8. *Crebris in latitudinem*, &c., numerous branches, and briars, and thorns, intervening in a lateral direction:—The young trees being gashed but not separated from the root, still continued to grow, and when bent over, their branches stood out in a lateral direction; the interstices were filled with briars and thorns, so that the whole formed a strong and impervious barrier.—9. *Loci—quem locum*, of the place which.

P. 102.—1. *Infimâ (parte) apertus*, &c., open, clear at the bottom, woody towards the top.—2. *Secundum flumen*, along the river,—*Stationes equitum*, troops of horse on guard.—3. *Aliter se habebat ac*, literally, had itself otherwise than; *i. e.* was different from what.—4. *Expeditas*, free from all encumbrance, *i. e.* without the load of baggage which the soldier was accustomed to carry, generally amounting in all to sixty pounds besides his arms.—5. *Idemdem*, from time to time.—6. *Quâm quem ad finem*. *i. e.* *ad finem ad quem*, to the limit to which; as far as.—7. *Quod tempus*, &c., which had been agreed upon as the time of joining battle.—8. *In manibus*, close at hand.—9. *Adverso colle*, up the hill, *viz.* the hill opposite that on which they had stood.

P. 103.—1. *Vexillum proponendum*, the standard had to be displayed.—2. (ii) *qui processerant paullo longius causâ petendi aggeris*, (erant) *arcessendi*, those, who had gone to a greater distance, in order to fetch materials for the rampart were to be recalled.—3. *Successus et incursus*, the near approach and onset.—4. *Erant subsidio*, were of advantage.—5. *Singulisque legionibus*, and from their respective legions,—*singulos legatos*, every lieutenant.—6. *Nihil*, equivalent to *non* or *nullum*;—the construction is *quod ad nihil*, did not now at all wait for any order from Cæsar.—7. *Per se*, of themselves, of their own accord.—8. *Videbantur (illis)*, seemed to them proper; they thought best.—9. *Quam in partem*, into whatever part.—10. *Neu perturbarentur animo*, nor be agitated in their minds.—11. *Exiguitas*, the shortness.

P. 104.—1. *Dejectus*, declivity.—2. *Necessitas*, urgency.—3. *Prospectus impediretur*, and the view in front was obstructed.—*Neque certa*, neither with certainty; § 98, Obs. 10.—4. *In tantâ inequitâte rerum*, in such an unequal situation of affairs.—5. *In sinis*.

trā parte acie, on the left part of the line; (*acie*) an old form of the genitive for *aciei*; § 17, Exc. If *acie* be regarded as the ablative, it will then be rendered "in the line on the left part."—6. *Exanimātos*, out of breath, panting,—*confectos*, spent, exhausted.—7. *Nam his ea pars obvenērat*, that party had fallen to their lot; had been accidentally opposed to them.—8. *In fugam dederunt*, put to flight.—9. *Diversæ legiōnes*, other legions, different from those mentioned before.—10. *At tum*, but at this time.—11. *Summum locum castrōrum*, literally, the top of the place of the camp, i. e. the summit on which the camp stood.—12. *Levisque armaturæ pedites*, foot soldiers of the light armor; the light armed infantry.—13. *Quos pulsos (esse)*, who had been routed.—14. *Adversis hostibus occurrēbant*, met the enemy in front, face to face.

P. 105.—1. *Calōnes*, the soldiers' servants.—2. *Decumāndā portā*, the decuman or rear gate of the Roman camp:—So called because the tenth cohorts were situated there.—3. *Versāri*, were actively engaged.—4. *Mandābant sese præcipites fugā*, committed themselves headlong to flight.—5. *Diversos dissipatosque*, scattered in every direction.—6. *Urgēri*, were overpowered.—7. *Primopilo*; See Index, *Primopilus*.—8. *Confecto*, i. e. *ita confecto ut*.—9. *A fronte*.—10. *Subeuntes*, advancing.

P. 106.—1. *Signa inferre*, to carry forward the standards; i. e. to advance,—*laxāre manipulos*, to extend the maniples.—2. *Cujus adventu*, by his arrival; 38.—3. *Pro se quisque*, they, each one for himself; i. e. to the best of his ability.—4. *Legiōnes sese conjungēnt et inferrent conversa signa*, that the legions (viz: the seventh and twelfth,) should advance with the standard turned two ways; i. e. with double front.—5. *Ne aversi*, that when turned away.—6. *Versarētur*, were.—7. *Nihil ad celeritatem*, &c.; Arrange: *fecerunt nihil reliqui esse sibi*, they caused that nothing remaining was to them; they did all they could as to speed; they made all the haste they could.—8. *Omnibus in locis*, &c., in every quarter of the fight they thrust themselves before the legionary soldiers; i. e. they strove to surpass them in valor.—9. *Præstitērunt*, displayed.

P. 107.—1. *Qui superessent*, those who survived.—2. *Utī ex tumulo*, as if from an eminence.—3. *Redegērat*, had rendered.—4. *Prope ad interneciōnem*, almost to extermination.—5. *Æstuarīa*, &c., the low grounds and marshes.—6. *Nihil (esse) impedītum*, that nothing was a hindrance.—7. *Quos Cæsar*, &c., Cæsar, that he might appear to have exercised mercy towards the unfortunate and suppliants, preserved them, &c., (39).—8. *Altissimas rupes despec-*

tusque, very steep rocks and commanding views of the country below.—9. *Non amplius* (quàm ad mensuram) *ducentorum pedum*.

P. 108.—1. *Iis impedimentis*, to that baggage.—2. *Cum* (hi) *aliàs inferrent bellum* (finitimis), *aliàs defendèrent* (bellum) *illatum* (sibi a finitimis), when they at one time made war on their neighbors, at another time resisted the war made on themselves by their neighbors; when, at one time they acted on the offensive, at another time, on the defensive.—3. *Duodécim pedum*, of twelve feet.—4. *Vineis*; See Index.—5. *Quò*, for what purpose?—6. *Præ*, in comparison of.—7. *Movèri et appropinquare*, moving and approaching; See Idioms, 89, 1.—8. *Ad hunc modum*, after this manner.—9. *Tantæ altitudinis*, of so great height.—10. *Et ex propinquitatè*, &c., and fight close at hand.—11. *Unum petère ac deprecâri*, that they begged and earnestly entreated one thing (supply *eum*) from him.

P. 109.—1. *Sibi præstare*, that it was better for them;—in *eum casum*, to that state.—2. *Priusquam aries*, &c., before the battering ram should touch their wall; See Index, *Aries*.—3. *In Nervii*, in the case of the Nervii.—4. *Muri aggerisque*, of the wall (of the town) and the agger of the Roman camp; See Index, *Agger*.—5. *Sub vespèrum*, towards evening.—6. *Tertiâ vigiliâ*; See Appendix I.—7. *Ignibus*, by signal fires.

P. 110.—1. *Ita acriter ut*, &c., as fiercely as it ought to have been fought; See Idioms, 88, 7.—2. *Ad* (used adverbially) about.—3. *Sectionem*, booty:—So called, because divided into small sections or portions, to be sold.—4. *Capitum numerus millium*, &c. the number of fifty-three thousand souls.—5. *Océanum*, the Atlantic.—6. *Certior factus est*, he was informed.—7. *Dies quindécim supplicatio decreta est*, a thanksgiving of fifteen days was decreed.

NOTES ON BOOK III.

PAGE 111.—1. *Quo* (itinère) by which (road).—2. *Cum magnis portoriis*, with heavy duties, or imposts:—The duty levied on goods in harbor, (*in portu*) was called *portorium*. This term was afterwards extended, as here, to denote the duty paid for liberty to carry goods through a particular country, or the tax paid at bridges.—3. *Hic vicus*, this village.—4. *Eum locum*, this part, i. e. the part of the village in which the cohorts were to pass the winter.

P. 112.—1. *Neque eam plenissimam*, and that not very full: See Index, *Legio*.—2. *Singillatim*, individually.—3. *Decurrerent*, should run down.—4. *Ne primum quidem posse*, &c., they thought that that legion could not withstand even the first onset:—With *posse* supply *illam legionem*.—5. *Accedebat*, to this was added; another reason was.—6. *Sibi persuasum habebat*, literally, they had it persuaded unto themselves; they were firmly persuaded.—7. *Neque satis provitum esset*, nor had it been sufficiently provided; nor had a sufficient supply been provided.—8. *Nihil de bellum timendum*, he had thought that nothing was to be feared, *i. e.* that he had nothing to fear concerning the war.—9. *Neque subsidio ventri*, literally, neither could it be come to them with assistance, *i. e.* neither could assistance come to them.—10. *Placuit majōri parti*, it pleased the greater part; it was the opinion of the majority.

P. 113.—1. *Collocandis atque administrandis* (the dative of the end or design,) for arranging and executing.—2. *Gæsæque*, and javelins (the Gallic iron javelin).—3. *Intēgris viribus*, with fresh strength.—4. *Frustra*, in vain, without effect.—5. *Sed hoc (nostri) superāri*, but in this they (our men) were overcome, were inferior.—6. *Paucitatem*, their fewness.—7. *Non modo*, &c., an opportunity was not given not only to the wearied.—8. *Perducta ad extremum casum*, brought to an extreme case, to the last extremity.—9. *Quem confectum (esse)*, &c., who, we have said, was worn out; See Idioms; 96, 2, & 94, 1st).—10. *Convocatis centurionibus celeriter* (per eos) milites, &c. the centurions being called together, he quickly, through them, directs the soldiers;—*excipērent*, to take up.—11. *Omnibus portis*, from all the gates of the camp:—Of these there were four; See Index, *Castra*.

P. 114.—1. *Ex (numēro) hominum amplius quā mille tribus triginta*, literally, from a number of men more than thirty thousand; *i. e.* from more than thirty thousand men.—2. *(Parte) plus tertiā parte*, &c. literally, a part more than the third part being slain.—3. *Fusis* &c., being routed, and stripped of their arms:—Here *exultis* agrees with *copiis*, and governs *armis* in the ablative, by § 126, R. V.—4. *Alio*,—*alius*, &c., with one view,—they had encountered things very different.—5. *Cæsar existimāret, de omnibus causis*, Cæsar supposed, from all reasons; Cæsar had every reason to suppose.—6. *(Ad) mare Océanum*, to the Atlantic Ocean.—7. *Præfectos tribunosque militum*; See Index, *Legio*.

P. 115.—1. *Scientiā atque usu*, knowledge and experience.—2. *In magno impetu maris atque aperto*, in the great and open vio-

lence, force, swell (or surge) of the sea.—3. *Ipsi*, (Venēti,) they themselves, (the Veneti).—4. *Consueverunt uti*, are accustomed to use; use to trade in; or usually trade in.—5. *Vectigales*, tributary. 6. *Ut consilia Gallorum*, since the designs (resolves) of the Gauls. 7. *Omnis*; Accusative plural for *omnes*, the subject of *laturos* (esse). 8. *Suos*, his (Crassus') countrymen; § 28, Exc.;—*sibi*, to them, (the Veneti) the main subject of discourse.—9. *Naves longas*, ships of war,—so called from their being much longer than the ships of burden (*naves onerariae*).—10. *Remiges*, rowers,—*institutui*, to be raised. 11. *Pro magnitudine*, in proportion to the greatness.—12. *Hoc* (faciunt), this they do.—13. *Pedestria itinera*, roads, or approaches by foot; i. e. by land.

P. 116.—1. *Navigatiōnem*, access by sea.—2. *Neque nostros*, &c., and they were confident that our army could not, &c. *Neque* here is copulative, and means “and not.”—3. *Opiniōnem*, the expectation.—4. *Longè aliam atque*, &c. that the navigation was far other in a confined or inland sea (such as the Mediterranean,) than, &c.—5. *Hæ erant difficultates*, such were the difficulties; &c.—6. *Injuria retentorum equitum* (the genitive passive; § 106, Obs. 1.) 7. *Rebellio*, a renewal of hostilities,—*defectio*, a revolt, a refusal of obedience.—8. *Ne arbitrentur*, in order that they might not think; § 140, 1, 2d.—9. *Idem* (facere) *sibi licere*, that to do the same thing would be permitted to them.—10. *Novis rebus studere*, are fond of changes.—11. *Naturâ libertati studere*, are naturally fond of liberty. 12. *Condiçãonem servitutis*, a state of slavery.

P. 117.—1. *Auxilio* (sibi) &c., who were said to have been sent for by the Belgæ as aid to themselves.—2. *Qui eam manum*, &c., that he should take care that that body should be kept apart.—3. *Situs*, the situations.—4. *In extremis lingulis*, on the extreme points or tongues of land.—5. *Cum ex alto*, &c., when the tide had flowed in from the deep; i. e. when it was full tide, or high water. 6. *Minuente* (eese) *æstu*, the tide ebbing, or when the tide ebbs.—7. *Naves in vadis*, &c., the ships aground on the shallow places would be dashed with the waves.—8. *In utraque re*, in either case.—9. *Aggère ac molibus*, by a mound and dams.—10. *Appulso*, being brought up.—11. *Magnis æstibus*, &c., on account of the great tides, and there being few or almost no harbors.—12. *Factæ armatæque erant*, were built and equipped.—13. *Aliquanto planiores*, considerably flatter.

P. 118.—1. *Excipere*, withstand, or admit of.—2. *Ad quamvis vim*, for enduring any violence and shock.—3. *Pedalibus*, &c.,

of planks a foot in breadth.—4. *Digiti pollicis crassitudine*, of the thickness of one's thumb; *i. e.* an inch thick.—5. *Pelles pro velis*, &c., for sails there were to them (*i. e.* they had) raw hides and thin dressed skins;—*lini*, of linen, of canvass.—6. *Regi*, to be managed. 7. *Cum his navibus*, &c., the meeting of our fleet with these vessels was of such a nature, that the former had the advantage in swiftness only, and the sweep of the oars.—8. *Reliqua*, other things.—9. *Neque enim his*, &c. for our ships could not hurt them with the beak.—10. *Copulis*, grappling irons.—11. *Sævre*, to blow hard.—12. *Catus*, the chances or dangers.—13. *Neque his noceri posse*, and that they could not be hurt.—14. *Paratissimæ atque*, &c., in the best order, and equipped in the best manner, with every kind of tackling.

P. 119.—1. *Bruto*, &c., nor was it sufficiently clear to Brutus. 2. *Aut quam rationem*, &c., or what mode of fighting they would adopt.—3. *Ut*, so that.—4. *Gravius acciderent*, fell with greater force. 5. *Falces præacutæ*, hooks with sharpened edges towards the points. 6. *Muralium*, mural hooks; *i. e.* hooks used to pull down the walls in a siege; or their defenders.—7. *Comprehensi adductique*, were grappled and pulled towards us.—8. *Latere posset*, could escape notice; could pass unnoticed, or unobserved.—9. *Cum singulas*, &c., when two or three of our ships had surrounded each one of the enemy's.—10. *Transcendere in naves hostium*, to climb over into the ships of the enemy; to board the enemy's ships.—11. *Quò ventus ferebat* (naves), where, to which the wind carried them (*the ships*); *Singulas nostri* &c., our men having pursued, took them one by one.

P. 120.—1. *Gravioris ætatis*, of heavier, *i. e.* of more advanced age.—2. *In quos*, &c., on these Cæsar resolved to inflict severer punishment, on this account that, &c.—3. *Vendidit reliquos sub coronâ*, he sold the rest under the crown; *i. e.* he sold the rest for slaves:—Prisoners taken in war wore a chaplet (*coronâ*) on their heads when exposed to public sale. At sales by auction a spear was set up; hence, *vendere sub hastâ*, to sell by auction.—4. *Atque his paucis diebus*, and within these few days.—5. *Perditorum hominum*, of ruined men; *i. e.* men of desperate fortunes.—6. *Nonnihil carparetur*, was in some degree carped at, railed at:—*Nihil* and *nonnihil* in such sentences may be considered as accusatives governed by *quod ad*; § 128, Exc.

P. 121.—1. *Eo absente qui tenebat summam imperii*, he being absent who held the supreme command; in the absence of the commander in chief.—2. *Hâc confirmatâ opinione timoris*, (the enemy's)

opinion of his fear being confirmed.—3. *Propōnit*, he lays before them, tells them of.—4. *Neque longius abesse*, &c.; and that it was not farther off, but that on the next night; i. e. at no greater distance of time than the next night.—5. *Ad castra iri oportere*, literally, that it ought to be gone to the camp; See Idioms, 67.—6. *Perfugæ confirmatio*, the assertion of the deserter.—7. *Quibus*, with which, i. e. that with these.—8. *Quàm minimum spatii*, as little space of time as possible.—9. *Exanimāti*, out of breath.

P. 122.—1. *Intēgris viribus*, with strength still fresh.—2. *Sabtinus* (factus est certior) *de*, &c.—3. *Minimē resistens*, by no means firm.—4. *Ex tertiā parte*, as the third part,—an unusual expression, and probably the text is incorrect.—5. *Non mediocrem*, &c., that more than ordinary diligence must be used by him.—6. *Quo plurimum valēbant*, in which they were very powerful.

P. 123.—1. *Cujus rei*, &c., in which art the Aquitani are by far the most expert.—2. *Ærarie secturæ* copper mines.—3. *Nihil his rebus profici posse*, that they could be profited nothing by these things.—4. *Quorum hæc est conditio*, the condition of whom (i. e. of whose association) is this.—5. *Sibi mortem consciscant*, or make away with themselves.—6. *Barbāri*, the barbarians (referring to the Vocates and Tarusates).—7. *Et naturā loci et manu*, both by natural situation and by art.

P. 124.—1. *Citeriōris Hispaniæ*; See Index.—2. *Loca capere*, to select proper ground.—3. *Facilē*, easily; i. e. with safety.—4. *In dies*, every day; literally, from day to day.—5. *Hæc re delatā ad consilium*, this matter or plan being laid before a council (of war).—6. *Sentire idem*, thought the same thing; were of the same opinion, viz: with himself.—7. *Duplici acie*, a double line:—The Romans usually drew up their army in three lines; on the present occasion only two were formed, probably on account of their being inferior in number to the enemy.—8. *Auxiliis*, &c., the auxiliaries being placed in the centre,—their usual place was on the wings.—9. *Cum suā cunctatiōne*, &c., when the enemy had by their own delay, and the opinion which was now entertained of their cowardice, made our soldiers the more eager for battle.

P. 125.—1. *Constanter et non timidē*, steadily and boldly.—2. *Decumānā portā*, at the decuman, or rear gate; See Index, *Castra*.—3. *Intritæ*, not worn out, not fatigued.—4. *Longiōre itinēre*, by a longer route than usual.—5. *Posset planē vidēri ab iis*, it could be distinctly seen by them.—6. *Intendērunt*, strove.

P. 126.—1. *Multâ nocte*, late at night,—or *multâ nocte actâ*, much of the night being spent.—2. *Supererant*, (supply *solî*, evidently implied,—hence the subjunctive following *qui*; § 141, R. V.) alone remained.—3. *Qui longè aliâ ratione ac*, &c., and they resolved to prosecute the war in a very different manner from the rest of the Gauls.—4. *Continentesque silvas*, &c., and because they had extensive, uninterrupted forests:—Before *continentes* supply *quodd*.—5. *Longius*, too far.—6. *Inermibus*, &c., on the soldiers unarmed.—7. *Materiam*, timber.

P. 127.—1. *Conversam*, &c., turned towards, facing, the enemy.—2. *Confecto*, being cleared.—3. *Extrêma*, the last of the baggage.—4. *Sub pellibus*, literally, under skins; i. e. in their tents:—The tents of the Roman soldiers were covered with skins. It does not appear that they ever used canvass for that purpose.—5. *Quæ proximè*, &c., which had made war upon him last.

NOTES ON BOOK IV.

P. 128.—1. *Ed hieme*, &c., the winter which followed; the next or following winter.—2. *Cneio Pompeio*, &c.:—Before Christ, 55, A. U. C. 699.—3. *Quo Rhenus*, &c. where the Rhine flows into it: near the mouth of the Rhine.—4. *Qui domi manserint*, since or because they remain at home.—5. *Nec ratio atque usus belli intermittitur*, nor are the art and practice of war disused, discontinued, forgotten.—6. *Maximam partem*, for the most part; See Ref.—7. *Nullo officio*, &c., they are trained by no duty or discipline.

P. 129.—1. *Ut quæ bello cepèrint*; Arrange: *ut habeant (eos) quibus vendant (ea) quæ cepèrint bello*.—2. *Jumentis importâtis*, imported cattle.—3. *Quotidiânâ exercitatiône hæc prava atque deformia (jumenta) quæ sunt nata apud eos, ut (hæc jumenta) sint summi laboris*:—*Ut*. &c. that they, (these beasts) are capable of the greatest labor, i. e. of enduring the greatest labor.—4. *Audent adire ad quemvis numèrum*, they dare to go to any number; they have courage to advance against, to attack, any number.—5. *Publicè*, to the nation.—6. *Significâri*, that proof is given.—7. *Vacâre*, to be empty, desolate, uninhabited.—8. *Ad altèram partem*, on the other side.—9. *Ut est captus Germanôrum*, as the state of the Germans is; i. e.—

considering the condition of the Germans.—10. *Amplitudinem gravitatemque civitatis*, the extent and populousness of their state (viz: the Ubii).

P. 130.—1. *In eadem causâ*, in a similar case.—2. (In regiones) *quas regiones*, to the regions which.—3. *Clam*, privately, unobserved.—4. *Tridui viam*, a journey of three days.—5. *Reliquam partem hiemis*, the remaining part of the winter; the rest of the winter;—*aluerunt*, maintained, supported.—6. *Infirmiâtem*, the fickleness.—7. *Nihil his committendum (esse)*, that nothing should be trusted to them.—8. *Est autem hoc*; &c., for this belongs to Gallic custom; this is one of the customs of the Gauls.

P. 131.—1. *De summis rebus*, &c., they enter into designs, concert measures, respecting the most important affairs.—2. *E vestigio*, literally, out of the footstep; i. e. speedily, instantly.—3. *Cum incertis rumoribus serviant*, since they are mere slaves to uncertain rumors.—4. *Ne graviôri bello occurreret*, that he might not meet with a more formidable war (viz: than he expected).—5. *Facta (esse)*, had been done already.—6. *Dissimulanda sibi*, should be concealed by him.—7. *Resistere (iis)*, to resist them and not to sue for peace.—8. *Suam gratiam*, their (the Germans') favor.—*Sibi*, to them, the Germans.—9. *Eos (agros) quos*, those lands which; i. e. such lands as; See Ref.—10. *Concedere*, yielded, acknowledged themselves inferior to.—11. *In terris*, upon the earth.

P. 132.—~~1. Arrange:~~ *Cæsar respondit ad hæc, quæ visum est (ei respondere)*.—2. *Exitus*, the conclusion.—3. *Verum*, just, reasonable, proper, right:—*Verus* has this sense chiefly when joined to the verb *esse*; as *verum est*, it is proper.—4. *Neque ullos in Gallid, &c.*, nor were there any lands vacant in Gaul.—5. *Et parte, &c.*:—This is the reading of the Bipont edition. It is adopted by Anthon, and is manifestly better than the common text.—6. *In plures diffuit partes*, divides into several branches.—7. *Multis capitibus*, by many heads, or mouths.

P. 133.—1. *Sibi jurejurando, &c.* should give them security by an oath.—2. *Eodem illo pertinere*, tended to the same end:—*Eodem* and *illo*, here used adverbially, are properly old forms of the dative from *idem* and *ille*.—3. *Sustinent*, should stand their ground.

P. 134.—1. *Amplissimo genere natus*, descended from a very illustrious family.—2. *Intercluso*, intercepted.—3. *Se obtulit*, presented himself; rushed against.—4. *Summæ dementiæ esse judicabat*, he judged it to be the greatest folly; literally, to belong to, or to be

the part of, the greatest folly.—5. *Ne quem diem*, &c., not to let a day pass without a battle.—6. *Omnibus principibus*, &c., all the leading men and elders being brought along; literally, being taken unto them.—7. *Sui purgandi*, for the sake of clearing, excusing themselves.—8. *Contra atque*, otherwise than; contrary to what had been said.—9. *Quos sibi Cæsar*, &c. Cæsar rejoicing that these had been cast in his way.

P. 135.—1. *Perturbantur*, &c., are thrown into confusion, so that they were at a loss whether it would be best, &c.—2. *Significatur*, was discovered, was evident.—3. *Pristini diei*, of the day before;—for *pridie*.—4. *Clamöre*, a shout or noise, (either of the Roman cavalry attacking those with whom they came up in the rear,—or the wailing of those attacked).—5. *Ad confluentem*, at the confluence.—6. *Reliquâ fugâ desperatâ*, despairing of making good their flight any farther.—7. *Ex tanti belli timöre*, &c., from the alarm of so great a war, since the number of the enemy had been about four hundred and thirty thousand:—Before *capitum*, supply *ad numerum*.—8. *Discedendi potestatem*, the liberty of departing.

P. 136.—1. *Suis quoque rebus eos timere voluit*, wished they should be alarmed for their own possessions.—2. *Et posse et audere*, had both the power and the courage.—3. *Accessit etiam*, it was added also; i. e. another reason was.—4. *Cur sui quicquam*, &c., why should he (Cæsar) demand that any command or authority should belong to him beyond the Rhine?—5. *Occupationibus reipublicæ*, by the business of the republic.—6. *Neque sui neque Populi Romani*, and thought that it became neither his own dignity nor that of the Roman people.—7. *Proponebatur*, was placed before him, was manifest.

P. 139.—1. *Instituit*, &c., he determined on this plan of a bridge.—2. He joined together at the distance of two feet, *tigna bina*, beams, or piles, two by two, (or in pairs,) sharpened a little at the lower end, and measured, (or proportioned) to the depth of the river.—3. *Hæc cum machinationibus*, &c., when he had fastened these, being let down into the river by machines, and had driven them down with rammers (*fistūcis*).—4. *Non sublitæ*, &c., not perpendicularly after the manner of a stake, but bending forward and sloping (downward, or down the stream).—5. *Iis item contraria*, &c., likewise opposite to these, at the distance of forty feet down the river, (*ab infœore parte fluminis*,) he placed two others joined in the same manner, but turned (up the stream) against the force and current of the river.—6. *Hæc utraque insuper*, &c., both these

(viz: the pair above and the pair below,) were kept apart (or from falling towards each other,) by beams let in from above, two feet thick, being as much as the joining of these piles was apart, (i. e. as the piles, joined by the braces, were apart,)—each having two brāces, one on each side near the end.—7. *Quibus disclusis*, &c., these (pairs) being kept apart, and (at the same time,) bound together in the contrary direction.—8. *Ea rerum natūra*, such the nature of the materials.—9. *Quo major vis*, &c., literally, by how much a greater force of water urged itself on; i. e. that the more the force of the current pressed on, the more closely were they held bound together.—10. *Hæc* (tigna, i. e. beams of two feet square, reaching from one pair of piles to the other below it,) *directa materie*, &c., were fastened together with timbers laid lengthwise (*directa*) of the bridge; i. e. from beam to beam.—11. *Longuriis*, &c., and covered over with long poles and hurdles.—12. *Ac nihilo secius*, &c., and besides all this, piles were driven in obliquely at the lower part of the stream.—13. *Pro pariète*, for a buttress, or support.—14. *Et aliæ item*, and likewise others.—15. *Dejiciendi opēris* (causâ), for the sake of throwing down (destroying) the work,—the bridge.—16. (Ex) *Quibus materia*, &c., after the days in which, or, after that the materials had been begun to be brought together:—*Quibus*, i. e. *ex diebus quibus*, is here used instead of the more common expression, *postquam*, or *ex* (tempore) *quo*;—See also B. III. Chap. 23d. and Gr. § 131, Obs. 3d.—17. *Ad utramque partem*, at each end.

P. 140.—1 *Iis hortantibus*, by the advice of those.—2. *In solitudinem ac silvas abdidérant*, had gone into the deserts and forests to conceal themselves;—This rendering gives the force of the accumulative after *in*, which is evidently a better reading than *in solitudine*, &c., which excludes the idea of going to;—So also, *in silvas deponeret*, below.—3. *Hunc esse delectum*, that this was selected as nearly the middle, or centre.—4. *Ulcisceretur*, that he might punish.—5. *Satis et ad laudem et ad utilitatem profectum*, that enough had been done, both for his honor and for utility, (*profectum* is from *proficio*, and means the same as *perfectum*).—6. *Matūræ*, early.—7. *Inde*, thence, i. e. from Britain.

P. 141.—1. *Temèrè*, rashly, without good reason.—2. *Neque tū ipsīs quicquam notum est*, nor is any thing known even by them. 3. *Quem usum belli*, &c., what experience they had in war, or what customs they followed.—4. *In eā sententiā*, in that mind, resolution. 5. *Horteturque*, and that he should urge them.—6. *Fidem sequantur*,

to embrace the alliance; literally, should follow the faith.—7. *Quantum ei facultatis*, &c., as far as opportunity could be given; literally, with so much of opportunity as, &c.; See Idioms, 46, 1.—8. *Qui*, since he.

P. 142.—1. *De superiōris*, &c., for their past conduct.—2. *Has tantulārū*, &c., these engagements in such trifling affairs. 3. (Tot) *navibus onerariis*, so many ships of burden, &c.,—quot, as; See Index, *Naves*.—4. *Tertiā fere vigiliā*, near the third watch, or midnight.—5. *Solvit* (naves), looses his ships, sets sail.—6. *Conscendere naves*, to go on board; to embark.—7. *Horā quartā*, the fourth hour, i. e. 10 o'clock, A. M.; See Gr. App. I.—8. *Expositas*, drawn out, displayed.

P. 143.—1. *Ad eo angustis*, so steep.—2. *Ad egrediendum*, for disembarking, for landing.—3. *Ad nonam horam*, till the ninth hour, i. e. 3 o'clock P. M.—4. *Monuitque*, &c., and warned them that all things should be done at a beck, and in a moment, as the principles, &c.—5. *Et essedariis*, and the essedarii, i. e. those who fought from the essedum, or two wheeled chariot.—6. *Prohibebant*, attempted to hinder; See § 44. II. 2.—7. *Militibus—desiliendum*, &c. the soldiers had to leap down from the ships.—8. *Omnibus membris expediti*, having the free use of all their limbs.—9. *Insuefactos*, accustomed to such exercise.—10. *Quarum et species*, both the appearance of which.

P. 144.—1. *Remis incitari*, to be pushed on, rowed briskly forward, with the oars.—2. *Tormentis*, engines (for throwing heavy darts or stones, namely, the balista and catapulta).—3. *Quæ res*, this expedient.—4. *Ac paulum modò*, &c. and retreated only a little, a very little.—5. *Qui* (he), who.—6. *Ea res*, that thing (viz: which he was about to do).—7. *Magnâ voce*, with a loud voice.—8. *Ex navi se projecit*, he threw himself out of the ship, overboard.—9. *Singulâres*, one by one, one after another.—10. *Quod cū antimum, vertisset*, i. e. *Cū vertisset antimum ad quod*.—11. *Scaphas longarum navium*, the boats belonging to the vessels of war.—12. *Speculatoria navigia*, spy vessels.

P. 145.—1. *Cursum tenere*, hold on their course;—*atque insulam capere*, and reach the island.—2. *Suprà*, viz: Ch. 21.—3. *Modo oratōris*, in the character of an ambassador.—4. *Culpam contulerunt*, laid the blame.—5. *In continentem*, to the continent, i. e. to Gaul.—6. *Imprudentiæ*, their indiscretion.—7. *Arcessitam* (esse), had been sent for.—8. *Post diem quartum*, after the fourth day i. e.

on the fourth day after.—9. *Suprà*; See Ch. 23,—*sustulérant*, had taken on board.—10. *Quæ cum appropinquárent*, and when they were drawing near.—11. *Quæ est propiùs solis occásus*, which is more to the west.—12. *Quæ*, these.—13. *Necessariò adversâ nocte in altum provectæ*, from necessity, being carried out to sea in an unfavorable, stormy, night.

P. 146.—1. (*Dies*) *qui dies*, a day which (*viz.*: the day of the full moon.—2. *Nostris id incognitum erat*, to our men this (*viz.*: the great rising of the tide,) was unknown:—The phenomena of the tides were but little known to the Romans, as the tides in the Mediterranean with which they were most familiar, are scarcely observable.—3. *Quæ deligatæ erant ad anchóras*, which had been tied to the anchors; which had been riding at anchor.—4. *Afflictabat*, dashed violently against; drove from their moorings.—5. *Quòd omnibus constabat*, because it was evident to all.—6. *His in locis*, in these places (*viz.*: in Britain).—7. *Rem producère*, to prolong the war.—8. *Ex eventu navium*, from what happened to, from the disaster of, the ships (the genitive passive).—9. *Et ex eo quòd*, &c., and from this, because they had intermitted; *i. e.* and from their having intermitted.

P. 147.—1. *Ad omnes casus*, for every emergency; against all contingencies.—2. *Reliquis ut navigári*, that it could be navigated with the rest.—3. *Dum ea geruntur*, whilst these things are carrying on, doing; during these transactions.—4. *In statione*, on guard.—5. *Quàm consuetúdo ferret*, than custom brought; *i. e.* than was usual. 6. *In stationibus*, on guard.—7. *In statione succedere*, to succeed on guard.—8. *Et, confertâ legiõne tela*, &c., and that the legion being crowded together, weapons were hurled upon it from all quarters. 9. *Quòd*, because, inasmuch as.—10. *Incertis ordinibus*, on account of not knowing their ranks, (They had been scattered about, reaping, and being attacked while thus employed, they could not find their ranks.—11. *Genus hoc est*, &c., the manner of fighting from the chariots was this.—12. *Ipo terróre equòrum*, by the very terror occasioned to the horses (the genitive passive); and the noise, *rotarum*, of the wheels (the genitive active); § 106, Obs. 1.

P. 148.—1. *Insinuavérint*, when they have wrought themselves in.—2. *Aurigæ*, the charioteers, or drivers:—Each chariot contained a driver called *auriga*, and one who fought, called *essedarius*.—3. *Atque ita curru se collocant*, and place themselves with the chariot in such a situation.—4. *Præstant mobilitatem equitum*, &c., they perform, unite the swiftness of cavalry and the steadiness

of infantry.—5. *Ac efficiunt tantum*, and they acquire such dexterity.—6. *Inciatōs equos sustinēre*, to rein in their horses when at full speed.—7. *Et brevi* (tempore), and in a moment.—8. *Continuos plures dies*, many days in succession.—9. *Suis* (civibus), to their own countrymen.—10. *Quanta facultas*, &c., how favorable an opportunity was presented of getting booty, and of regaining their independence forever.

P. 149.—1. *Antè dictum est*, viz: Ch. 21, & 27.—2. *Omnibus afflictis incensisque longè latèque*, having destroyed and burned every thing far and wide; See Idioms, 104, 1.—3. *Die æquinoctii*, the equinox.—4. *Hiēmi navigationem subjiciendam*, that his voyage ought to be exposed to a storm (viz: the equinoctial storm).—5. *Eosdem quos reliquæ portus capere*, to make the same harbor which the rest made.—6. *Quibus ex navibus*, &c., had been landed from these ships.—7. *Non ita magno*, with not so great. i. e. with no very great number.—8. *Si nollent*, if they did not wish.—9. *Orbe facto*, forming themselves into a circle; See above, Note 2.—10. *Vertērunt terga*, turned their backs; fled.

P. 150.—1. *In densissimas silvas abdidērunt*, had gone into the thickest parts of the forests to hide themselves; See Note 2, page 140.

NOTES ON BOOK V.

P. 151.—1. *Lucio Domitio*, i. e. A. U. C., 700,; B. C. 54.—2. *Quam plurimas possent*, &c., that as many new ships as possible should be built, and old ones repaired.—3. *Ad celeritatem onerandi*, &c., for despatch of lading and drawing them on shore, he builds them a little lower than those which, &c.—4. *Nostro mari*, in our sea, viz: the Mediterranean.—5. *Actuarias*, light, easily driven; See Index, *Naves*.—6. *Adjūvat multum*, contributes much.—7. *Ad armandas*, for equipping.—8. *Omnibus rationibus*, in every proper way.

P. 152.—1. *Qui litem æstiment*, to estimate the damage (Idioms, 83, 2,) and fix the compensation.—2. *Conventibus*, the assizes.—3. *Instructas*, got ready finished.—4. *Neque multum abesset*, &c., nor was much wanting but that they could be launched in a few

days; i. e. there was so little to do that they could, &c.—5. *Transmisum*, &c., the passage across into Britain was the most convenient, being a passage of about thirty miles.—6. *Expeditis*, unincumbered with baggage.—7. *Alter*, the one (viz: Cingetorix).—8. *In silvam*, &c., having gone and concealed themselves in the forest of Arduenna; See Note 2, p. 240.

P. 153.—1. *Civitāti consulere*, take measures for the state, for the common good.—2. *Laberttur*, should fall off, revolt.—3. *Permisum* (esse) would give up.—4. *Suam gratiam*, that his influence.—5. *Exarsit multo gravius hoc dōlōre*, he was much more exasperated at this affront.—6. *Non potuisse tenere cursum*, could not keep their course; could not proceed on their voyage.

P. 154.—1. *Antea dictum*; B. I. Ch. 3.—2. *Cupidum novarum rerum*, fond of changes, of insurrections, of a revolution in the state.—3. *Id factum*, this fact.—4. *Petere contendit*, endeavored to obtain,—*religionibus*, religious obligations.—5. *Non sine causā fieri*, that it was not done without some secret motive; that Gaul was stripped of all her nobility.—6. *Fidem reliquis interponere*, that he pledged his word to the rest.—7. *Quod esse ex usu*, &c., whatever they should understand to be for the interest of Gaul.—8. *Quōd tantum dignitātis*, because he had always shewn so much respect.—9. *Longius progredi*, was going too far.—10. *Prospiciendum*, that he ought to take care.

P. 155.—1. *Ne quid sibi*, &c. lest he (Dumnorix) should not be able, have it in his power, to do any injury to him and the state. 2. *Corus*, the northwest wind.—3. (Ut) *cognosceret*, that he should find out.—4. *Omnium animis impeditis*, the minds of all being engaged.—5. *Hunc pro sano*, that he, as a man in his senses.—6. *Ille enim*, but, or nevertheless he.—7. *Consiliumque pro tempore*, &c., and that he might take measures, (form his plans,) according to time and circumstances.—8. *Pari numero equitum quem*, &c. with a like number of cavalry which; i. e. with a number of cavalry equal to that which he left.—9. *Longius delātus aestu*, being carried down by the tide farther than usual.—10. *Secutus*, taking advantage of.

P. 156.—1. *Virtus*, the valor, i. e. the efforts, the exertions, 2. *Vectoriisque navigiis*, in transports and heavy laden vessels.—3. *Accessum est* (ab illis) *ad*, they (the Romans) reached, arrived at.—4. *Cum annotinis*, with the ships of the previous year.—5. *Veritus navibus*, fearing for the ships,—instead of *de navibus*.—6. *In littore molli atque aperto*, on a smooth and open shore.—

7. *Præclusi*, blocked up.—8. *Testudine factâ, et aggere, &c.*, a *testudo* being erected and a mound thrown up against their fortifications.

P. 157.—1. *Tripartitû*, in three divisions,—*milites*, the foot soldiers, the infantry.—2. *Superiøre nocte*, in the former night.—3. *Afflictas atque, &c.*—had been dashed against each other, and driven on shore.—4. *Subsistrent*, could hold out.—5. *Ex eo concursu*, from that rencounter of the ships; from the ships running foul of one another.—6. *Incommôdum*, injury, damage.—7. *Coram*, openly, with his own eyes.—8. *Res*, a work.—9. *Subdûci*, to be drawn on shore.—10. *Summa imperii, &c.* the chief command and administration of the war.—11. *Superiøre tempöre*, at a former period.

P. 158.—1. *Quos natos, &c.*, “who, they say it was handed down by tradition, were born on the island,”—an opinion prevalent among many ancient nations respecting themselves.—2. *Bello illâto*, the war having been waged, being over.—3. *Creberrîma*, very thick, close together.—4. *Fere Galltîcis consimilia*, almost like; *i. e.* closely resembling those of the Gauls.—5. *Taleis ferreis ad certum pondus, &c.*, pieces of iron tried by, *i. e.* of, a certain weight.—6. *Plumbum album*, tin (literally, white lead).—7. *Copia*, the quantity.—8. *Materia*, wood, timber.—9. *Causâ animi voluptatisque*, for the sake of amusement and pleasure.—10. *Loca*, places, climate.—11. *Remissioribus*, less intense.—12. *Triquetra*, triangular.—13. *Ad Cantium*, in Kent:—from Land’s end to the eastern extremity of Kent, is about 344 British miles, or 356 Roman miles in a straight line. It would be much more to follow the irregularities of the coast.—14. *Ad Hispaniam*:—This statement is erroneous, as Spain lies to the south, not to the west of Britain.—15. *Dimidio minor*, less by one half:—Great Britain is computed at 77,370 square miles,—Ireland at 30,370.—16. *Sed pari spatio transmissus*, but the passage across to Britain is the same distance as from Gaul.—17. *Mona*, the Isle of Man.—18. *Dies continuos, &c.*, that there is night for thirty successive days at the winter solstice, *i. e.* the 22d December:—This is not true in fact, unless the dark, cloudy, and foggy weather, at that season, is here improperly called “night.”—19. *Nisi certis ex aquâ, &c.* but we perceived, by accurate water measures, that the nights were shorter than on the continent.—The “water measure” is the *Clypsedra*, or water-clock,—an invention similar to the sand-glass.

P. 159.—1. *Septingentorum millium*, seven hundred miles:—The true length of the western coast is 590 British or 610 Roman

miles.—2. *Contra septentriones*, opposite the north.—This is not correct; the east is much nearer the truth.—3. *Octinginta millia passuum*, eight hundred miles:—This exceeds the true estimate 230 Roman miles.—4. *Humanissimi*, most civilized.—5. *Se vitro inficiunt*, stain themselves with woad.—6. *Capillōque sunt promisso*, and are with, i. e. they have, long hair.—7. *Deni et duodeni*, parties of ten and twelve,—*habent uxōres commūnes inter se*.—8. *quo primum virgo*, &c., by whom each female, when a virgin, was first married. 9. *(Ita) tamen ut*, in such a way however that.—10. *Submissis*, being sent to their aid,—*atque his*, and these.—11. *Constitissent*, had taken their ground.

P. 160.—1. *Cūm*, since, or as; § 140, Obs. 3.—2. *Intellectum est (a nobis) nostros*, we perceived (Idioms 67,) that our men.—3. *Cedentes*, those giving way.—4. *Cederent*, gave way, yielded.—5. *Pedibus dispāri prālio*, on foot, in an unequal contest; i. e. with great advantage (against us).—6. *Conferti*, close, in a close body;—*rari*, scattered here and there.—7. *Alios alii deinceps exciperent*, &c., and they continued one to relieve another in succession, and the vigorous and the fresh succeeded (took the place of) those fatigued.—8. *Lenius*, with less spirit.—9. *Utī non absterrent ab*, that they kept not far from, i. e. close to, &c.—10. *Neque post id tempus*, &c., nor after that time did the enemy ever engage us with all their forces; nor did the enemy, after that time, ever come to a general engagement with us.

P. 161.—1. *Acūtis sudibus præfixis*, with sharp stakes fixed in front.—2. *Cūm capite*, &c., when they (the soldiers) were above the water with the head alone; i. e. were up to the neck in the water.—3. *Ut suprā*, &c.; Ch. 17.—4. *Dimissis amplioribus copiis*, the greater part of the forces being dismissed.—5. *Ex viā excedēbat*, withdrew from the road.—6. *Relinquēbātur*, &c., it remained that Cæsar did not suffer;—*discēdi* (ab militibus) that the cavalry should go; Idioms, 67.—7. *Hostibus nocertur*, &c., that the enemy were injured by laying waste their lands and setting fire to their property, as far as the legionary soldiers could effect it in the midst of labor and on their march, i. e. on a laborious march.

P. 162.—1. *Atque mittat* (eum, i. e. Mandubratium,) *qui præsit*, &c., and send him (Mandubratius) into the state that he might rule over it, and hold the government.—2. *Ad numērū*, to the number,—*imperātū*, required,—*frumentāque*, and abundance of corn:—"Abundance" is expressed by the plural term, *frumenta*.—3. *Prohibitis*, being protected.—4. *Vocant oppidū*, call it a town

5. *Ad mare*, on the sea shore; Ch. 13.—6. *Adoriantur atque oppugnant*, should attack and storm; take by assault.

P. 163.—1. *Motus*, disturbances, commotions, insurrections
2. *Refectas*, repaired,—*his* (navibus) *deductis* (in mare), these ships being brought down into the sea; *i. e.* being launched.—3. *Captivorum*, of prisoners.—4. *Commeatibus*, embarkations.—5. *Navigationibus*, voyages, trips.—6. *Desideraretur*, was missing, lost.—7. *Et prioris commeatus*, both those of the previous convoy,—*et quas*, and of those which.—8. *Perpaucæ locum caperent*, very few reached their destination.—9. *Necessariò angustius milites collocavit*, from necessity stowed his soldiers more closely (than usual).—10. *Subductis navibus* (in aridum), the ships being drawn on shore.
11. *Frumentum provenerat angustius*, corn, grain had (come forth) been produced more scantily; the crop had been less abundant.—12. *In plures civitates*, among a greater number of states than usual.

P. 164.—1. *Mederi*, cure, remedy.—2. *Milibus passuum*, &c., were contained within the space of a hundred miles:—(Probably an error as to the extent.)—3. *Natus summo loco*, descended from a very noble family; of very noble birth.—4. *Tertium jam annum*, &c. killed him, (Tasgetius) now reigning the third year, many belonging to the state being the instigators.—5. *Quòd ad plures*, &c., because it pertained to more than one; *i. e.* more than one were concerned in it.—6. *In hiberna perventum* (esse), that they had arrived at winter quarters; literally, it had been come by them to winter quarters.

P. 165.—1. *Qui cum ad fines*, &c., and when they had met Sabinus and Cotta at the borders of their kingdom.—2. *Desperatâ re*, having despaired of success.—3. *De communi re*, concerning their common interests.—4. *Minui posse*, could be adjusted; literally, diminished.—5. *Missu Cæsaris*, by the sending of Cæsar; *i. e.* being sent by Cæsar.—6. *Ad hunc modum*, to this purpose.—7. *Sese*, that he (Ambiorix):—This speech is given in oblique narration; § 141, R. VI. Exp.—8. *Plurimum ei debere*, that he was under very great obligations to him.—9. *De oppugnatione castrorum*, respecting the attack on the camp.—10. *Suâque esse*, &c., that his authority was of such a nature,—*multitudo*, the people.—11. *Ex humilitate suâ*, from his weakness, slender circumstances.—12. *Esse Galliæ commûne consilium*, &c., that it was the purpose of the whole of Gaul, that this day had been appointed by them for attacking (at once) all the winter quarters of Cæsar; so that no legion could bring aid to another.

P. 166.—1. *Quibus quoniam pro pietate, &c.*, since he had done justice to them so far as affection (to his country) required, that he now had regard to the claims of duty for the kindnesses of Cæsar to him.—2. *Pro hospitio*, by the ties of friendship.—3. *Ipsorum esse consilium*, it belonged to them (Titurius and Cotta,) to consider,—*velintne*, whether they should.—4. *Quod cum faciat*, since he was doing this, i. e. in doing this he consulted, &c.—5. *Existit*, arises.—6. *Sustineri*, could be withstood, resisted.—7. *Rem esse testimonio*, that fact was for proof; i. e. that facts proved this.

P. 167.—1. *Levius aut turpius*, weaker or more cowardly.—2. *Auctore hoste*, an enemy being the author; on the information of an enemy.—3. *Clamitabat*, kept crying out; § 44, II. 2.—4. *Cæsarem arbitrâri profectum in Italiam*, that he supposed that Cæsar had gone into Italy.—5. *Non hostem auctorem, &c.*, that he did not look at the enemy's being the adviser, but at the thing itself.—6. *Ardere*, burned with resentment.—7. *Sine certâ re*, without certain information.—8. *Si nil sit durius*, if nothing occurred more difficult than ordinary.—9. *Unam salutem*, their only security.—10. *Præsens*, immediate.—11. *Hæc in utramque, &c.*, this dispute being maintained on both sides.—12. *Primisque ordinibus*, and the chief centurions.—13. *Vincite*, prevail, carry your point:—This is spoken in the direct discourse; § 141, R. VI. Exp.—14. *Et id*, and that, i. e. *et dixit id*.—15. *Hi* (milites), these (referring to the Roman soldiers within hearing,) will understand;—*abs te rationem*, will demand satisfaction from you (Cotta); will call you to account.—16. *Nec rejecti nec relegati, &c.*, and not perish with either the sword or famine, as if forced away and banished far from the rest.

P. 168.—1. *Consurgitur*, they arise, break up.—2. *Utrumque*, both; viz: Cotta and Titurius.—3. *Res disputatione ad mediam noctem*, the affair is protracted by their dispute; i. e. the subject is debated till midnight.—4. *Dat manus*, gives his hands; i. e. yields,—a mode of expression borrowed from the form of making a surrender by stretching forth, or holding up the hands.—5. *Pronunciatur*, it is published; orders are given,—*vigiliis*, without sleep.—6. *Quid*, i. e. *spectans*, or *visurus quid*, to see what.—7. *Omnia excogitantur, &c.*, every reason is suggested to show,—*quare*, why.—8. *Vigiliis*, want of sleep.—9. *Ut quibus persuasum esset*, since they were persuaded.—10. *Se demisisset*, had gone down.—11. *Ut qui*, since he, or because he.—12. *Hæc tamen ipsa* (fecit) these very things however (he did),—*atque* (ita) *ut*, and so that; in such a way that.—13. *In ipso negotio, &c.*, to deliberate in the very moment of action.

P. 169.—1. *Auctor*, an adviser.—2. *Possent minùs facillè obire omnia per se*, they could less easily perform every thing themselves; every part of their duty could not be performed by them in person (viz: Cotta and Titurius).—3. *Jussérunt* (duces) *pronunciàre* (militibus).—4. *In orbem consistèrent*, and form (Idioms, 85,) themselves into a circle.—5. *Incommòdè accidit*, it proved unfortunate.—6. *Vulgò*, every where:—7. (Ut) *quæ quisque*, &c. that whatever things any one of them considered the most valuable, these he hastened, &c.—8. *Consilium non defuit barbaris*, prudence was not wanting to the barbarians; the barbarians were not deficient in prudence, skill.—9. *Illòrum esse prædam*, &c., that the booty belonged to them, (the Gauls) and that whatever the Romans should leave would be reserved for them; (Idioms, 94, 3.)—10. *Erant et virtùte*, &c., both in valor and number, our men were a match for them in fighting.—11. *Cedant*, they should give way before them.—12. *Nihil iis nocèri posse*, that they could not be hurt:—For *nihil* see § 116, Obs. 3.

P. 170.—1. *Locum tenère*, to keep his place (in the circle).—2. *Ad horam octāvam*, till the eighth hour (2 o'clock, P. M.).—3. *Utrumque femur tragulâ transigitur Tìto Balventio*, each thigh is pierced through with a dart, to T. Balventius, a brave, &c.; a dart transfixes both the thighs of T. Balventius.—4. *Subvénit*, is bringing aid; is endeavoring to rescue.—5. *In adversum os*, full in the mouth.—6. *Ipsi vero nihil nocitum iri*, but that he should not be hurt; that no harm should be done to himself;—*se interponère*, that he pledged.—7. *Atque in eo constitit*, and persisted in it.—8. *In presentia* (tempóra), at present.

P. 171.—1. *Victoriam conclāmant*, shout victory.—2. *Illi*, they, viz, those who had retreated to the camp.—3. *Ad unum*, to a man.—4. *Sublātos*, being elated.—5. *Nihil esse negotiì*, that it was an easy matter.—6. *Se profitètur*, he offers himself.—7. *Huic quoque accidit*, to him, to this officer (Cicero) it happened.

P. 172.—1. *Ægrè is dies sustentātur* (a nostris), that day is maintained by our men with difficulty; i. e. our men hold out that day with difficulty.—2. *Propositis*, being offered.—3. *Turres admòdum*, &c., one hundred and twenty towers in all, altogether.—4. *Præustæ sudes*, stakes burned at the end.—5. *Turres contabulantur*, towers of several stories are raised;—*pinnæ loricaque*, &c., battlements and parapets are constructed of interwoven hurdles.—6. *Cùm esset tenuissimâ valetudine*, though he was in a very feeble state of health.—7. *Sibi parcère*, to spare himself.—8. *Aliquem*

aditum sermonis, any intimacy.—9. *Factâ potestâte*, leave being given.

P. 173.—1. *Ambiorigem ostentant*, &c., for the sake of gaining credit, they ostentatiously point to Ambiorix; i. e. they tell of his arrival.—2. *Eos*, that they; viz: Cæsar and his army.—3. *Hoc animo*, of such a disposition; are so favorably disposed.—4. *Licere illis*, that it would be permitted to them (the Romans),—*per se*, by them (the Nervii).—5. *Adjutore*, as an intercessor.—6. *Pro ejus justitiâ*, through his regard for justice.—7. *Sed nullâ ferramentorum copiâ*, but there being no quantity (or abundance) of iron tools.—8. *Sagulis* (dim. of *sagum*), short cloaks.—9. *Terram exhaurire*, to remove the earth.—10. *Millium* (passuum).—11. *Falces testudinesque*, mural hooks and sheds; See Index, *Vineæ* and *Testudo*.—12. *Ferventes glandes ex fusili argillâ*, red hot balls of cast clay.—13. *Fervefacta jacula*, fiery javelins.—14. *Distulerunt*, spread the flames.—15. *Agere*, advance.

P. 174.—1. *Demigrandi*, of retiring from the fight, yielding.—2. *Acerrimè fortissimèque*, with the greatest ardor and bravery.—3. *Recessumque primis*, &c., and the last (the farthest off) did not give a retreat, (an opportunity of retreating,) to the foremost.—4. *Turri*, a tower, (of the enemy,)—*vallum* (our) rampart.—5. *Quorum*, of whom; viz: the enemy;—*progrèdi*, to come forth; viz: from the tower.—6. *Deturbâti*, &c., they were dislodged and the tower set on fire.—7. *Qui jam primis ordinibus*, &c., who were advancing (rising) to the first ranks.—8. *Spectas*, do you look for.—9. *Quaque*, and where.—10. *Procurrentem*, running forward (to engage him).—11. *Hunc*, him (the wounded enemy).

P. 175.—1. *In illum*, at him (Pulfiô).—2. *Succurrit inimicus*, &c. Varenus, though his rival, runs up and assists him in danger.—3. *Hunc*, him, (Varenus).—4. *Illum*, that he (Pulfiô).—5. *In locum dejectus*, &c., stumbling, he fell; or, he stumbled and fell into a hollow place.—6. *In contentiône et certamine*, in this honorable rivalry and contest;—*utrumque versavit*, &c., employed, directed, both, that the one, though the rival, alternately brought aid and security to the other.—7. *Quanto gravior*, &c., the more severe and difficult,—*tanto crebriores*, the more frequently; § 98, Obs. 10.—8. *Unus Nervius*, a certain Nervian.—9. *Honesto loco*, of an honorable family.—10. *Servo* (suo) a slave of his.—11. *Periculis*, the great danger (literally, the dangers).—12. *Undecimâ horâ*, the eleventh hour, 5 o'clock, P. M.; see Gr. App. I.

P. 176.—1. *Quà sibi iter faciendum sciēbat*, where he knew he would have to pass.—2. *Si reipublicæ commōdo*, &c. if he could do it with advantage to the state.—3. *Litēras publicas*, the public documents.—4. *Tolerandā hiēmis causā*, for the sake of enduring the winter; for a winter supply.—5. *Rem gestam*, the things done, the course pursued.—6. *Opiniōne dejectus*, disappointed in his expectation; literally, cast down from his expectation.

P. 177.—1. *Si adtre non possit*, if he could not gain access (to the camp).—2. *Ad amentum deligātā*, tied to the thong, or strap: The *amentum* was a strap fastened to the middle of a spear or javelin, by means of which it was thrown with greater force.—3. *Casu*, by chance.—4. *Perlectam*, being read over; after he had read it over himself.—5. *Expūlit*, dispelled, put an end to.—6. *Tamen angustis viarum*, nevertheless, by the narrowness of the ways (or passages) between the tents.

P. 178.—1. *Galli* (hoc faciunt) *Cesar* (hoc facit).—2. *In suum locum*, to his own ground; *i. e.* ground favorable to him.—3. *Portasque obstrui*, &c., the gates to be blocked up, and in doing this, that they should run to and fro as much as possible:—This was designed to lead the enemy to believe that there was great trepidation and fear in the camp.—4. *Etiā de vallo deductis*, &c., and being drawn back, even from the rampart, they (the enemy,) approach nearer.—5. *Ad se*, to them, viz: from the Roman camp.—6. *Ac sic nostros contemserunt*, and to such a degree did they show their contempt of us.—7. *Eā* (viā), in that way.—8. *Longiūs*, too far.—9. *Illōrum*, of them, viz: the enemy.

P. 179.—1. *Legiōne productā*, &c., having led forth the legion; having reviewed the legion, he finds; (Idioms, 104,).—2. *Pro ejus merito*, according to his merit; as he deserved;—*appellat*, he addresses by name.—3. *Rem gestam propōnit*, he lays before them (viz: Cotta and Sabinus) the matter as it took place.—4. *Culpā*, by the misconduct.—5. *Hoc*, on this account.—6. *Quōd*, seeing, since.—7. *Incommōdo expiāto*, &c., the loss being retrieved; the disaster having been remedied by the kindness, &c.—8. *Post horam nonam*, after 3 o'clock, P. M.; See Gr. App. I.—9. *Trinis hibernis*, in three several winter quarters; *i. e.* in three different places.—10. *Consultābant*, were consulting, deliberating; § 44, II. 2.—11. *Quid consilii reliqui caperent*, &c., what measures the rest were adopting, and when a beginning of the war would be made.—12. *Concilia*, assemblies, meetings.

P. 180.—1. *Quin aliquem*, &c., but he heard, (that he did not hear,) some intelligence.—2. *Armorica*, states lying along the north of Gaul, now Bretagne.—3. *Dicto audientes*, obedient:—In this phrase *audientes* governs *dicto*, by § 112, R. V.; again, the words *audientes dicto*, together, are equivalent to *obedientes*, and often govern another dative by the same Rule; as, *Nobis dicto obediens*, obedient to us.—4. *Tantum valuit*, prevailed so much; had so much influence.—5. *Attulit*, produced, caused.—6. *Præcipuo semper honore habuit*, treated always with special honor.—7. *Aliëros*,—*aliëros*, the former,—the latter.—8. *Nulla fere civitas*, &c., almost every state was suspected by us.—9. *Idque adeo*, &c., and I do not know whether this is to be wondered at.—10. *Quòd, qui*, &c., because they grieved most bitterly that they who were accustomed to be ranked before all nations in valor, had lost so much of that reputation that they should endure the commands of the Roman people.—*Qui* has for its antecedent *se* in the next clause.

P. 181.—1. *Lapsus hâc spe*, having fallen from this hope; *i. e.* being disappointed in this hope.—2. *Ultro ad se ventri* (ab hominibus, 67, 7,) that men were coming to him of their own accord.—3. *Omnibus cruciatibus*, by every species of torture.—4. *Alterius factionis*, of the opposite faction.—5. *Secutum fidem Cæsaris*, having put himself under the protection of Cæsar.—6. *Huc*, to them.

P. 182.—1. *Sub castris*, close up to the camp.—2. *Quibuscumque poterat rebus*, by whatever means he could.—3. *Intromissis*, being let in (to the Roman camp).—4. *Quos arcessendos*, &c., who he had taken care should be sent for.—5. *Nullâ ratione*, in no way.—6. *Cum magnâ contumeliâ*, with great insult of words; with most abusive language.—7. *Dispersi ac dissipâti* in a dispersed and scattered manner.—8. *Præcipit atque interdicit*, commands and forbids, —*præcipit* has for its object, *unum omnes petant Indutiomârum*; and *interdicit*, the next clause, *neu quis*, &c.—9. *Morâ reliquorum*, by the delay (of pursuing) the rest.—10. *Comprobat*, favors.

NOTES ON BOOK VI.

P. 183.—1. *Dilectum habere*, to hold a levy; to raise forces.—2. *Quoniam ipse ad urbem*, &c., since he (Pompey) remained near the city with military command, on account of the republic (The

laws did not allow a person invested with military powers to enter the city,) that he would order those troops which he had raised in Cisalpine Gaul (and had bound) by the oath of fidelity to the consul.—3. *Sarciri*, &c., be repaired, but even be more than compensated by greater forces.—4. *Quod cum Pompeius*, &c., Pompey having granted this.—5. *Ut docuimus*, as we have shewn.—6. *Obridibusque de pecuniâ cavent*, secure the payment of the money by means of hostages.

P. 184.—1. *Ad imperdum*, to the thing commanded; *i. e.* to do the thing commanded.—2. *Nondum hieme confectâ*, the winter being not yet ended, *i. e.* before the end of winter.—3. *Utî instituerat*, as he had been accustomed.—4. *Omnia* every thing else.—5. *Sed ab hoc consilio abfuisse existimabantur*, but were supposed to be absent from, (not concerned in) this scheme (plot).—6. *Hâc re*, &c., this thing (the adjournment) being published from the tribunal; (an elevated place formed of turf or other material heaped up together, *suggestus*).—7. *Conantibus*, &c., to them attempting to do this.—8. *Sententiâ*, from this design.—9. *Deprecandi*, of excusing their conduct.—10. *Quod æstivum*, &c., because the summer was the time for prosecuting the war, not for legal investigations.

P. 185.—1. *Totus et mente et animo*, wholly with his mind and soul; *i. e.* with his whole heart and soul.—2. *Ne quis aut ex hujus iracundiâ*, &c., that no commotion might arise, either from this man's violent temper, or from that hatred on the part of the state which he had incurred (in consequence of having been made king over it by Cæsar).—3. *Pro explorâto*, for certain.—4. *Circumspicebat ejus* (*Ambiorigis*) *reliqua consilia animo*, watched his other plans in his mind (*i. e.* with attention).—5. *Perpetuis paludibus*, continued, uninterrupted marshes.—6. *Illi*, from him (*Ambiorix*),—*ipsum*, (*Ambiorix*) himself.—7. *Congrêdi cum Transrhenânis*, to unite with those beyond the Rhine.—8. *Manu*, an army.—9. *Præsidio loci*, to the protection of the place, the strength of their position.—10. *Effectis*, erected, built.—11. *Adit tripartito*, marches against them in three divisions.

P. 186.—1. *Augebatur* (*hostibus*) was increased to the enemy.—2. *Loquitur*, he (*Labienus*) speaks.—3. *In dubium non devocaturum*, would not endanger, involve in doubt.—4. *Galliciis rebus*, the interest, the affairs of the Gauls.—5. *Primis ordinibus*, the chief centurions.—6. *Longum esse*, that it would be long, too long, too late.

P. 187.—1. *Usus eâdem simulatione itinêris*, practising the same deception respecting his march.—2. *Facultatem*, opportunity. 3. *Præstâre*, display.—4. *Præsidio ad impedimenta dimissis*, being detached to the baggage for a guard; i. e. to guard the baggage.—5. *Præter spem*, contrary to expectation.—6. *Infestis signis*, with hostile standards.—7. *Cingetorigi—traditum est*, was conferred on Cingetorix; See B. V. Ch. 3. and 56.—8. *Ne Ambiorix ad eos receptum haberet*, that Ambiorix might not have a retreat to them; a place of refuge among them.

P. 188.—1. *Causâ purgandi sui*, on purpose to clear, to justify themselves.—2. *Neque abs se fidem lesam*, nor had their promise been violated by them.—3. *Ne communi odio*, &c., lest in his common hatred of the Germans.—4. *Causâ cognitâ*, on enquiry.—5. *Imperitos* ignorant.—6. *Refêrunt*, report.—7. *Infinitâ*, of vast extent.—8. *Ab Suevis*, on the side of the Suevi.

P. 189.—1. *Alienum*, improper, foreign to the purpose.—2. *Proponere*, to treat of, lay before, to give some account of.—3. *In omnibus pagis partibusque*, in all the cantons and parts of cantons.—4. *Principes eârum factionum*, &c., the heads of these factions are (persons) who in their opinion are considered to have the greatest interest, on whose will and decision all their most important affairs and resolutions hinge, depend.—5. *Idque ejus rei causâ*, &c., and this custom seems to have been instituted from early times, for this reason.—6. *Quisque non patitur*,—*neque habent*, each leader (patron),—neither do they have:—The pupil may here notice the transition from the singular, *patitur*, with *quisque*, to the plural, *habent*; § 102, Obs. 5.—7. *Hæc eâdem ratio est*, &c., this same principle exists, prevails, in the government of all Gaul.—8. *Principes*, chief, at the head of.—9. *Jactûris*, expenses, gifts:—This is a pure use of the word, which denotes a present loss in expectation of future benefit.—10. *Tantum potentiâ antecesserant*, they (the Sequani) so far excelled (the Ædui) in power.—11. *Re infectâ*, the business, his object, being accomplished.—12. *Eôrum amicitiam* their (the Ædui's) friendship.

P. 190.—1. *Reliquis rebus*, &c., here the participle, *amplificatâ*, agrees with the nearest noun; See § 98, Obs. 4.—2. *Dimiserant*, (for *amiserant*,) had lost.—3. *Quos quodd adæquâre*, &c., and because it was understood that they (the Remi) equalled the Ædui in Cæsar's favor; i. e. had an equal share of Cæsar's favor with the Ædui; stood as high in &c.—4. *Vetêres inimicitias*, ancient feuds.—5. *Dicabant se Remis in clientelam*, gave up themselves to the Re-

mi for protection; put themselves under the protection of the Remi, 6. *Aliquo número*, of any note;—*genera*, classes.—7. *Aere alieno*, by debt, literally, the money of another.—8. *In hos eodem*, &c., over these the nobles have all the same rights as masters have over their slaves.—9. *Alterum est Druidum*, one is that of the Druids (See Index)—the other, that of the knights.—10. *Illi*, the former;—*ad hos*, to the latter.—11. *Procurant*, have charge of.—12. *Hi (Druides) sunt apud eos* (adolescentes) they (the Druids) are in great honor among them, viz: their pupils.—13. *Non stetit decreto*, &c., has not stood by, has violated their decree,—they exclude them from the public rites, excommunicate them.—14. *Hi quibus ita interdictum est*, those who are thus excommunicated (Idioms, 66,).—15. *Defugiunt aditum eorum*, &c., shun their company and conversation.

P. 191.—1. *Habet summam auctoritatem*, possesses the supreme authority; whose authority is absolute.—2. Arrange: *Quæ regio habetur media* (regio) *totius Galliæ*, which is esteemed the middle, or central region of all Gaul.—3. *Parent*, obey, abide by, acquiesce in.—4. *Disciplina*, &c. this institution is thought to have originated in Britain.—5. *Diligentiùs*, more accurately.—6. *Militiæ vacationem*, exemption from military service.—7. *Immunitatem omnium rerum*, immunity, privilege, free use, enjoyment, of all things; all immunities.—8. *Præmiis*, rewards, advantages, privileges.—9. *Ediscere*, to learn by heart; to commit to memory.—10. *Ea literis mandare*, to commit these things to writing.—11. *Instituisse id*, to have instituted this custom.—12. *Disciplinam efferri*, that their doctrine should be spread abroad.—13. *In primis hoc volunt*, &c., they (the Druids) in particular wish to inculcate this idea; it is a favorite maxim of the Druids.—14. *Animas non interire*, &c., that souls do not die, but pass from one body to another.—15. *Disputant*, &c., they reason and impart their reflections to the young.

P. 192.—1. *Cum est usus*, when there is need.—2. *Versantur*, are engaged.—3. *Ambactos*, retainers.—4. *Dedita religionibus*, given, addicted to religious rites, to superstitions.—5. *Contexta viminibus*, interwoven with twigs.—6. *Ejus generis* (nocentium), of this class of offenders.—7. *Deum maxime Mercurium colunt*, they (the Gauls) worship chiefly the god Mercury; i. e. Mercury is the chief or favorite deity of the Gauls:—Not however the Mercury of the Grecian mythology, but a Gallic deity.—8. (Colunt) *Apollinem*, &c.—9. *Initia*, the beginnings, the first knowledge.

P. 193.—1. *Quæ superaverint*, &c. they sacrifice the captured animals which remain.—2. *Posita*, deposited (in sacred places).—3. *Spatia omnis temporis*, all their periods or divisions of time.—4. *Ut noctem dies subsequatur*, that the day follows the night; i. e. their day is from sunset to sunset as among the Jews.—5. *Palam*, openly; i. e. publicly, in public.—6. *Conjunctim ratio habetur*, a joint account is kept.—7. *Fructusque servatur*, and the interest is laid up.—8. *Vitâ superârit*, shall survive the other.—9. *Habent questionem de uxoribus in servilem modum*, they examine their wives by torture, after the manner of slaves; like slaves.—10. *Si comperit est*, if any discovery is made.—11. *Pro cultu*, considering their mode of life.—12. *Vivis cordi fuisse*, to have been pleasing to them living.

P. 194.—1. *Commodius*, to greater advantage than others; more judiciously.—2. *Quæ visa sunt*, what seemed proper to them; i. e. what they thought proper.—3. *Per consilium*, through, or during; i. e. in the time of the council.—4. *Neque student*, nor do they pay attention to.—5. *Optibus quorum*, &c., by whose power they are manifestly benefited.—6. *Vulcânus*, fire.—7. *Constitit*, is spent.—8. *Impubères*, chaste.—9. *Rhenonum*, of deer's hides.—10. *Quantum et quo loco*, &c., as much land as, and where they think proper.—11. *Afferunt multas causas ejus rei*, they produce many reasons for this practice.

P. 195.—1. *Accuratiùs*, with greater care.—2. *Animi æquitate*, in evenness of mind, contentment.—3. *Proprium virtutis*, peculiar to, or a proof of, their valor.—4. *Dicunt jus, controversiasque minuunt*, administer justice and decide controversies.—5. *Qui velint sequi profiteantur*, let those who wish to follow signify it, give their names.—6. *Ac tempus fuit antea*, but there was a time formerly.—7. *Ultrò bella inferrent*, they (the Gauls) without provocation brought war:—*Germânis*, upon the Germans.

P. 196.—1. *Summam opinionem*, a very high character, reputation for justice, and military glory.—2. *Gallis autem*, &c., the nearness of the (Roman) province to the Gauls, and their acquaintance with foreign commodities.—3. *Largitur multa ad copiam atque usus*, supplies many articles of luxury and convenience.—4. *Expedito*, to a traveller without baggage; to an expeditious traveller.—5. *Fintri*, be measured.—6. *Sinistrorsus*, to the left hand (viz: of the Danube,) stretches northward from the Danube.—7. *Memoria prodenda videantur*, seem worthy to be handed down to remembrance.—8. *Bos*, See Index, *Bison*.—9. *Sicut palma*, like palms.

P. 197.—1. *Alces*, elk; See *Alce*.—2. *Varietas pellium*, the spots, varied color, of their skins.—3. *Si afflictæ quo casu conciderint*, if, being thrown down by any accident, they have fallen.—4. *Applicant se ad eas*, they lean themselves against these.—5. *Infirmas*, being weakened.—6. *Uri*; See *Urus*.—7. *Quæ sunt testimonio*, to serve as a proof.—8. *Ne parvuli quidem excepti*, not even those caught young.—9. *Amplissimis*, their most splendid.—10. *Cæsar*:—Cæsar having finished his digression, respecting the manners of the Gauls and Germans, (Ch. 11—28,) here resumes his narrative.

P. 198.—1. *Si quid celeritate*, &c., to see if he may be able to gain any thing by rapidity of march and favorable opportunity.—2. *Ut imperdûm est*, as was ordered.—3. *Fortuna potest* (facere) *multum*, &c. fortune can do much; *i. e.* has great influence, not only, &c.—4. *Magnæ fuit fortûnæ*, it was a piece of great good fortune.

P. 199.—1. *Multum fortuna valuit*, fortune can do much, has great power or influence.—2. *Judicio*, from choice, designedly.—3. *Exclusus tempore*, prevented by want of time.—4. *Sed certè*, but it is certain.—5. *Alienissimis* to total strangers.—6. *Omnibus precibus*, with every sort of execration.—7. *Taxo*, with yew; *i. e.* with a decoction of the leaves or berry, both of which were regarded as poisonous.—8. *Causam omnium Germanorum esse unam*, that the cause of all the Germans was one and the same.—9. *Questione captivorum*, from an examination of the captives.

P. 200.—1. *Post diem septimum* (inchoatum), after the seventh day was begun; *i. e.* on the seventh day;—2. *Ut supra*, Ch. 31.—3. *Nulla certa manus*, no regular force.—4. *Vicinitatibus*, to the neighborhoods; *i. e.* to the people in the neighborhood:—a very common mode of speech in our own language.—5. *Ex parte*, partly, in a measure.

P. 201.—1. *Confertos*, in large parties.—2. *Si vellet*, if he (Cæsar) wished.—3. *Instituta ratio*, established discipline.—4. *Ut potius in nocendo*, &c., that some opportunity of injuring the enemy should be omitted, rather than that this injury should be inflicted with any danger to his soldiers.—5. *Legionarius miles*, the legionary soldiery; the soldiers of the legion; *i. e.* the regular troops.—6. *Appetebat*, was drawing near.—7. *Quantos casus affert*, how great accidents she brings; *i. e.* how great changes she brings about.—8. *Manus erat nulla*, there was no collected body.—9. *Suprà docuimus*, we have shewn above; B. IV. Ch. 16.

P. 202.—1. *Non palus non silvæ morantur hos*, &c., no marsh, no woods hinder these men, &c.—2. *Tantum præsidii ut ne*, &c., so little of garrison that not even the walls could be surrounded with men; i. e. could be manned.—3. *Duce*, guide,—*indicio*, information. 4. *Qui illius patientiam pæne obsessiõnem*, &c., who called his forbearance almost a siege, since they were not permitted to go out of the camp.—5. *Qui convalescerant*, &c., those who had recovered during this interval.—6. *Subsiderat*, had remained.—7. *Casu*, by chance, by accident.

P. 203.—1. *Mercatores qui sub vallo tenderent*, the suttlers who pitched their tents close to the ramparts.—2. *Reliquos aditus*, and other places of Entrance.—3. *Plerique novas sibi*, &c., most of them form to themselves strange superstitious notions from the place; and they place before their eyes the disaster of Cotta and Titurius, since they were overthrown in that fort.—4. *Qui primum pilum*, &c., who had led the first rank with Cæsar; i. e. who had been his chief centurion.—5. *Superioribus præliis*; See B. II. Ch. 25, and B. III. Ch. 5.—6. *Relinquit animus Sextium*, Sextius faints.

P. 204.—1. *Imperiti usus militaris*, not acquainted with the usages of war.—2. *Cuneo facto*, a wedge being made; being drawn up in the form of a wedge.—3. *Si*, if, even if:—*at*, still, yet.—4. *Nullo usu militaris rei percepto*, &c., no, experience in military affairs being yet acquired.

P. 205.—1. *Non faceret fidem*, he did not gain credit, was not believed.—2. *Pæne alienatâ mente*, with a mind almost alienated; devoid of reason.—3. *Questus unum*, having complained of only one thing.—4. *Locum debuisse relinqui, ne minimo quidem casu*, that a place, or occasion, ought not to have been left, for even the smallest accident; See § 16, Exc. 2.—5. *Quarum omnium rerum maxime*, &c., of all these things it seemed the most astonishing.—6. *Obtulerint optatissimum beneficium Ambiorigi*, rendered the most acceptable service to Ambiorix.—7. *Ad vexandos hostes*, to annoy the enemy.

P. 206.—1. *Pæne naturam studio vincerent*, they almost overcame nature by exertion.—2. *Ad summam felicitatem*, to complete success.—3. *Ille eriperet*, &c., he continued to snatch himself from them; to escape from them by the aid of lurking places and forests: 4. *Sumpsit supplicium more majorum*, he inflicted punishment according to the practice of their ancestors.—5. *Cum interdixisset quibus aquâ atque igni*, when he had interdicted them from water and fire;

i. e. had banished them:—This was the Roman judicial mode of inflicting the sentence of banishment, "To forbid the use of water and fire."—6. *Frumento provisto exercitui*, having provided corn for the army.

[END OF NOTES.]

INDEX,

HISTORICAL, GEOGRAPHICAL AND ARCHÆOLOGICAL,

FOR THE FIRST SIX BOOKS OF CÆSAR'S COMMENTARIES ON THE GALLIC WAR.

Acco, ðnis, a general of the Gauls, who was at the head of the confederacy formed against the Senðnes, Carnðtes, and Treviri. Cæsar, by the rapidity of his marches, prevented the execution of his plans, and ordered a general assembly of Gaul to inquire into the conduct of these nations, in which he pronounced sentence of death on Acco, who was instantly executed; B. VI. Ch. 4, and 44.

Adcantuannus, Adiomátus, vel, Adbuátus, i, the chief man, for many years, among the Allobrðges.

Aduatũca, æ, f. a fort nearly in the middle of the country possessed by the Eburðnes,—a different place from Aduatũcum, the capital of the Aduatũci, now called *Tongres*, with which it appears to have been confounded by Ptolemy;—A small part of the town only may have been built when Cæsar was in that country. Hence he mentioned it as a castle, or fort. It stood near the river Mosa, (*Mæse*,) between Liege and Mæstricht.

Aduatũci, ðrum, m. a people of Gallia Belgica, whose country lay on the west bank of the Mosa, (*Mæse*,) between Namur and Liege.

Ædui, ðrum, (sing. Æduus, i.), v. Hedui, ðrum, one of the most powerful and wealthy nations of Gallia Celtica. Their territory lay on the W. of the Arar, (*Soane*,) between that river and the Ligðris, (*Loire*,) a little to the N. of the junction of the former with the Rhodānus, (*Rhone*.) At an early period they became the allies of Rome, to which, in some degree, their influence among the other nations of Gaul may be attributed. See Sequāni.

Æmilius, i, (Lucius), an officer in Cæsar's army, who commanded a part of the Gallic cavalry.

Æquinoctium, i, n. (from *Æquus*, equal, and *Nox*, night,) the Equinox, or time when the days and nights are equal, all over the globe. This happens twice a year, on 22d March, and 22d September. The former is called the Vernal, the latter the Autumnal Equinox. The circle, which passes through the place of the sun at these two periods of the year, has, from the phenomenon above mentioned, received the name of the Equinoctial, or Equinoctial Line, and is directly over the Equator.

Agendicum, i, n. (now *Sens*,) the chief city of the Senones, a brave and powerful people of Gaul, who inhabited the left bank of the Sequana, (*Seine*). It stood below the confluence of the Vanne and Icauna, vel, Itumna, (*Yonne*,) a southern branch of the Seine.

Agger, is, the name of a mound raised by the Romans in besieging cities. It was composed of earth, wood, hurdles, stone, &c. The agger commenced at a distance from the walls, gradually advanced towards the town, always increasing in height, till it equalled or overtopped the walls. This mound was secured by towers of different stories, (See *Turris*,) from which showers of missiles were discharged on the defenders by means of engines, and from which, when advanced near enough, a temporary platform or bridge was sometimes thrown to the top of the wall, on which the soldiers marched into the city.

Ala, æ, the wing of an army, properly the cavalry, so called from being placed on the right and left of the infantry. In the plural this term is often used to designate the troops of the allies, which (both infantry and cavalry,) were stationed on the right and left of the Roman army.

Alarii, òrum, those belonging to the *Alæ*, or wings.

Allobroges, um, (sing. *Allobrox*, ògis,) a people of Gaul, whose country lay between the Isära, (*Isere*,) and the river Rhodanus, (*Rhone*.) They bravely, and for a long time, resisted the power of the Roman legions, but were at last defeated by Pomtinus. Cicero extols them for their fidelity to his countrymen, of which they gave a remarkable proof in Catiline's conspiracy (See *Sallust*, B. C.) Horace censures them for their love of novelty, which seems characteristic of the inhabitants of that country, both in ancient and modern times. Cæsar De Bel. Gal. IV. 5. The chief town of the Allobroges was Vienna, (*Vienne*,) on the left bank of the Rhone, 13 miles below Lugdunum, (*Lyon*.)

Alpes, ium, a chain of mountains separating Italy from Gaul and Germany. They are in the form of a crescent, and extend from the Sinus Flanaticus, (the gulf of *Quarnero*,) at the top of the

gulf of Venice, to Vada Sabatia, (*Savona*), on the gulf of Genoa, a distance of 600 miles. They have been divided into different portions, the principal of which are the following: 1. *Alpes Maritimæ*, (or Maritime Alps,) extending from the vicinity of Nice to Monte Viso. 2. *Alpes Cottæ*, (or Cottian Alps,) from Monte Viso to Mont Cenis. 3. *Alpes Graiæ*, (or Graian Alps,) between Mont Iseran and Little St. Bernard. 4. *Alpes Penninæ*, (or Pennine Alps,) from Great St. Bernard to the sources of the Rhone and Rhine. To this range belongs Mt. Blanc, 14,676 feet high. 5. *Alpes Rhætica*, (or Rætian Alps,) from St. Gothard to Mount Brenner in the Tyrol. 6. *Alpes Noricæ*, (or Noric Alps,) from Mount Brenner to the head of the river Plavis. 7. *Alpes Carnicæ*, sive *Julia*, (the Carnic or Julian Alps,) from the head of the river Plavis to the confines of Illyricum. Over these mountains there are several passes, of which the principal are, that over the Great St. Bernard, that over Mont Simplon, and that over Mont St. Gothard.

Ambarri, ōrum, a people of Gaul, related to the Ædui, supposed to have lived on the Arar, (*Saone*), a little to the N. of its Junction with the Rhodanus, (*Rhone*.)

Ambianum, i, n. anciently Samarobriva, now *Amiens*, a town of the Belgæ.

Ambiani, ōrum, the inhabitants of Ambianum. They entered into a conspiracy against Cæsar, (B. G. II. 4,) and appear to have held a considerable rank among the Belgic tribes.

Ambiliati, ōrum, m. a nation of Gallia Celtica whose geographical position is not precisely ascertained. They are mentioned (B. G. III. 9,) along with the Osismii, Lexovii, Nannètes, &c., and therefore their country must have been included in the province of Bretagne or Normandy. Some editions have Ambiani.

Ambiōrix, Igis, king of the Eburōnes, was a great enemy to the Romans. After many narrow escapes, he at last evaded the pursuit of Cæsar's men who followed him too closely, when only four of his attendants remained.

Ambivariti, ōrum, a nation of Gaul, between the Mosa, (*Mæse*), and the Rhēnus, (*Rhine*), who were subject to the Ædui. B. IV. Ch. 9.)

Anartes, ium, et Anarti, v. Anartii, ōrum, a people of Dacia, who inhabited the east bank of the river Tibiscus, (*Teisak*, or *Teyss*), one of the northern branches of the Danube. Their country now forms part of Hungary.

Ancalites, ium, a people of South Britain, who were neighbors to

the Trinobantes. Some have thought the Atrebatæ of Ptolemy and Antonine's Itinerary, the same with the Ancalites of Cæsar. See Horsley's *Brittania Romana*, p. 17, and Gale's *Anton. Itiner.* p. 105, 106.

Andes, ium, ïbus, a nation of the Celtæ in Gaul. Their territory lay on the north bank, and near the mouth, of the river Ligëris, (*Loire*.)

Annus, i, m. a year. See *Gr. App. I.*

Antebrogius, i, m. a man of great influence amongst the Rhemi, who was sent ambassadör to Cæsar in the second year of the Gallic war.

Antesignāni, ðrum, (*Ante* and *signum*,) a name given to the soldiers who fought *before* the standards, or in the first line, as those who were stationed behind the standards were called *Postsignāni*, or *Subsignāni*.

Antistius, i, (Caius A. Rheginus), one of Cæsar's lieutenants in Gaul. Cæsar, in consequence of his expecting greater commotions in that country, gave orders in the sixth year of the war, to Marcus Silānus, C. Antistius Rheginus, and T. Sextius, to levy troops. We find him, at other times, appointing this lieutenant to honorable commissions.

Antistius, (See *Turpio*.)

Apollo, inis, the son of Jupiter and Latōna, the god of music, medicine, augury, painting, poetry, and all the fine arts. He was born at the same birth with his sister Diāna, near the foot of Cynthus, a mountain in Delos, an island in Mare Ægeum, (*Archipelago*.) Hence he was called Cynthius and Delius; and Diana, Cynthia and Delia. Among beasts, the wolf; among insects, the grass-hopper; among birds, the cock, the crow, the swan, and the hawk; and among trees, the palm, the olive, and the laurel, were sacred to Apollo. He was represented as a tall beardless young man, of handsome shape, holding in his hand a bow, hence called *Deus Arcitēnens*, or a lyre, and his head surrounded with rays of light.

Aquila, æ, m. an eagle, also the standard of a Roman Legion. From the second consulship of Marius, and under the Emperors, the standards were most commonly of silver, seldom of gold, in the form of an eagle, from which the name is derived. The preference was given to the former metal, according to Pliny, because it is seen at a greater distance than the latter. But though the figure of the Roman ensigns was always that of an eagle, they were not always precisely alike. Sometimes they resembled an

eagle in a standing posture, at others, with outstretched wings, which was the most common form, and not unfrequently with a turret on their backs. The Roman standard, at first, was a bundle of hay fixed to a pole, *Manipulus*,—a term afterward used to denote the third part of a cohort, then of wood, sometimes of silver, and more rarely of gold, in different forms. Marius, during his second consulship, introduced into the Roman army the eagle, which continued to be ensign till the destruction of the empire. The merit of originality does not belong to the Romans, for we have the authority of Xenophon to maintain, that it was first used as a military standard by the Persians.

Aquilifer, féri, m. standard-bearer, whose office seems, in some degree, to correspond to that of ensign with us. His place was in the first line. To allow the standard to fall into the hands of the enemy was reckoned highly disgraceful to the whole legion, which is still the case in modern times, but particularly to the person who carried it. In one instance recorded by Livy, the standard-bearer was, for this crime, put to death. But the centurions suffered the same punishment at that time, and the army was decimated for cowardice and treachery.—It does not appear from Roman history, that recourse was had to such severity, unless in instances of wilful dereliction of duty, proceeding either from unmanly timidity or treacherous intention.

Aquilëia, æ, f. a famous seaport belonging to the Venëti on Mare Hadriaticum, (*Gulf of Venice*.) Strabo says it was built by the Romans, to repel the inroads of the barbarians, when their territory on that coast did not extend farther north. The name has been thought to be derived from an eagle, *Aquila*, flying over the site at the time the foundation was laid; but more probably from the Roman standard, in consequence of two legions having been long stationed in that place. From its splendor and magnificence, it was sometimes called *Roma Secunda*. Atilla, king of the Huns, after a long and obstinate siege, plundered it, A. D. 452, and so completely was the city destroyed, that the next generation could scarcely discover its ruins. Since that time, a few fishermen's huts point out the place near which it stood. Aquilëia, according to Pliny, was at the distance of 1500 paces from the coast.

Aquitania, æ, f. one of the three principal divisions of Gallia, (*France*,) bounded on the east by Provincia, (*Languedoc, Provence*, and *Dauphiné*; on the north by the river Garumna, (*Garonne*,) which separates it from Gallia Celtica, on the west by Oceanus Cantabricus, (*Bay of Biscay*), and on the south by Py-

rensei Montes, (*Pyrenees*, or *Pyrenean Mountains*,) which divide Gallia from Hispania, (*Spain*.) As Aquitania was much less than either of the other two divisions, Augustus extended its northern boundary to the river Ligëris, (*Loire*.)

Aquitani, ōrum, (sing. Aquitānus, i,) the inhabitants of Aquitania. Arar, āris, m. (*Saone*,) a smooth flowing river of Gaul, which takes its rise near Mount Vosëgus, (*Vosge*,) runs southward, and after receiving several streams, falls into the river Rhodānus, (*Rhone*,) at Lugdūnum, (*Lyon*, or *Lyons*.) B. I. Ch. 12.

Arduenna, æ, f. *Ardennes*, a forest of Gaul, the largest in that country, reaching, according to Cæsar, from the Rhenus, (*Rhine*,) to the territory of the Remi, upwards of fifty miles in length. Others make the extent of this forest much larger. If it reached from the territory of the Treviri to that of the Remi, it would greatly exceed fifty miles. The ground is now in many places cleared, and cities built upon it. Strabo says, the trees of this forest were not of a great height, and its length did not exceed forty miles.

Arecomīci, ōrum, a people of Gaul, who lived on the Gallīcus Sinus, (*Gulf of Lyons*,) to the west of the river Rhodānus, (*Rhone*.) See Volcæ.

Aries, ëtis, m. a ram:—also a military engine for battering down walls. It is said to have been first used by the Carthaginians at the siege of Gades, (*Cadiz*.) This instrument was originally very simple. To the end of a beam, varying in length and thickness according to circumstances, was affixed a piece of iron in the form of a ram's head, to which it owes its name. This powerful engine of war rested on the arms of the soldiers who worked it. The first improvement made on the battering ram, was to suspend it by a chain or a rope from the top of two logs of wood, having the lower ends fixed firmly in the ground at a considerable distance from each other, and terminating in a point at the upper, by which contrivance the men who wrought it were wholly relieved of its weight. To protect them from the destructive weapons thrown by the besieged, a shed or mantlet, with a strong roof, was formed around it. The whole stood on wheels, so that the besiegers easily moved the engine at pleasure. It does not appear from ancient history, that the battering ram received any important improvement after the one just stated. The discovery of gunpowder and introduction of artillery have quite superseded the use of this military engine, which the Romans long held in great esteem.

The number of men employed at once in working the ram, and the length of time they continued, would vary according to the number of the troops, the magnitude of the beam, the thickness of the wall, &c. It is certain that in some instances, upwards of fifty men plied on each side, and from the severity of the labor, they must, in ordinary cases, have been frequently relieved. The following wood cut represents the battering ram protected by the *Testudo*, or *vineæ*, under which the men employed in working it were protected from the missiles of the enemy.

ARIES.



Ariovistus, i, king of the Germans, who invaded Gallia, (*France*), conquered a considerable part of that country, and subjected the inhabitants to the most cruel and oppressive treatment. Cæsar marched up to his very camp, compelled him to fight, and gained such a complete victory, that a very few only, among whom was

Ariovistus himself, escaped. These continued their flight, until they reached the banks of the Rhine, which they crossed, some by swimming, others by boats. Ariovistus, in a little vessel, got safely to the other side. From this period nothing of his history is known.

Armoricæ civitates, *Armoric States*, namely, those of the *Rhedōnes*, *Namnētes*, *Venēti*, *Curiosolītes*, *Osismii*, *Corisopiti*, *Unelli*, *Ambrincatui*, *Bajocasses*, *Viducasses*, and *Lexovii*, who inhabited the western part of the countries, between the *Ligēris*, (*Loire*,) and the *Sequāna*, (*Seine*,) They had this name from their situation on the sea coast; *Armor* signifying, in the language of the ancient Gauls, *on the sea*.

Armorici, *ōrum*, the inhabitants of *Armoricæ*.

Arpinus, *i*, (*Caius*,) a Roman knight whom Cæsar sent along with *Quintus Junius* to *Ambiōrix*, after he himself had declined an interview with that prince.

Arverni, *ōrum*, a people of *Gallia Celtica*, whose territories lay between the sources of the *Eleāver*, (*Allier*,) and *Duranus*, (*Dordogne*,) branches of the *Ligēris* and *Garumna*. From the numerous wars which they had carried on against the Romans, *Strabo* infers their power and resources must, in former ages, have been very great. Like the Romans, they boasted of being descended from the Trojans.

Atrebatēs, *ium*, a people of *Gallia Belgica*, the neighbors of the *Morīni* whose country lay along the English Channel, opposite to *Dover*.

Atrius, *i*, (*Quintus*,) an officer to whom Cæsar gave the command of the shipping, which had carried him and his army to the coast of Britain.

Atuatūci, *v. Aduatūci*, *ōrum*, a people of *Belgic Gaul*, whose territories lay between the rivers *Mosa*, (*Meuse*,) and the *Scaldis*, (*Scheld*,) adjoining to those of the *Nervii* and *Toxatūri*. Their capital was *Atuatūca*, *æ*, *f. Tongres*, in *Brabant*.

Aulerci, *ōrum*; of this name Cæsar mentions four nations of Gaul—*Aulerci Brannovices*, whose territories, (*Morienne*,) were adjoining to those of the *Ædui*, *Segusiani*, and *Ambivariti*; *Aulerci Cenomanni*, whose country, (*Mans*,) lay between the rivers *Sarta* (*Sarte*,) and *Lædus*, two of the northern branches of the *Loire* *Suindinum*, vel, *Subdinium*, afterwards *Cenomanni*, on the *Sarte* was their chief city; *Aulerci Eburovices* inhabited the left bank of the *Sequāna*, (*Seine*,) below *Lutetia*, (*Paris*,) Their chief town was *Mediolanum*, afterwards *Eburovices*, (*Evreux*,)

The *Aulerci Diablintes*, *Diablitiæ*, et *Diaulitiæ*, lived between the two last mentioned nations. Neodunum, afterwards Diablintes, (*Jublens*,) was their largest town. These three, probably, formed but one people, and might, with more propriety, have been denominated tribes, than separate or distinct nations.

Aurunculeius, i, (Lucius A. Cotta) one of Cæsar's lieutenants in the Gallic War: He opposed the rash measure of his colleague, in wishing to leave their winter quarters, at the deceitful suggestion of Ambiorix, but at last yielded to the timidity of Titurius, which cost him his life. He is frequently called L. Cotta, and sometimes Cotta.

Ausci, ōrum, a people of Aquitania in Gaul. Their capital was Climberris, v. Climberrum, Augusta, and at a latter period, Auci, (*Auch*,) which stood on the west branch of the Ger, one of the southern branches of the river Garumna, (*Garonne*.)

Auxilia, ōrum, troops sent by foreign kings and states. They usually received pay and clothing from the republic, although sometimes they were supported by those who sent them.

Axōna, æ, m. (*Aine*, or *Aisne*,) a river of Gaul, which Ausonius calls *Præceps*, from its rapidity. Its source was in the territories of the Rhemi, which form the department of the Meuse. It runs in a southwest direction, joins the Isāra, (*Isere*,) a little below Campaigne, and both fall into the Sequāna, (*Seine*,) about five miles south of Pointoise.

B.

BACENIS, is, f. a forest of Germany, forming part of the Hercynia Silva, or *Black Forest*. Cæsar says it was of prodigious extent, (*infinitæ magnitudinis*,) and like a natural wall, prevented the mutual incursions of the Suævi and Cherusci.

Baculus; See Sextius.

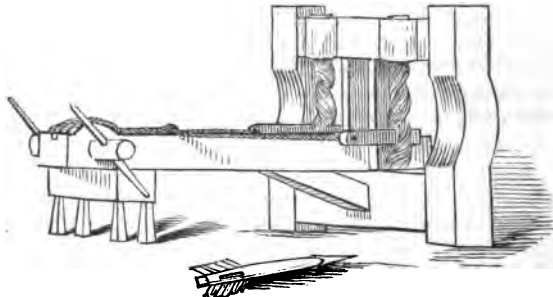
Baleares, ium, a name anciently given to the islands of *Majorca* and *Minorca* off the coast of Spain, the inhabitants of which were celebrated for their skill in the use of the sling.

Baleāris, e, adj. of or belonging to the Balearic isles.

Balista, æ, (from the Greek βάλλω to throw,) a species of military engine used by the Romans for throwing darts, arrows, and stones. These were of different sizes, and were used with great effect both in battles and sieges. Stones of great weight were often

thrown by these engines to a great distance, by which battlements were thrown down and whole files of men swept from the deepest phalanx. Their effect is said to have been little inferior in sieges to that of artillery. The balista used for throwing darts or javelins, represented in the following wood cut, taken from Folard's commentary on Polybius, resembled in its operation an immense crossbow, the two ends of which consisted of two levers so twisted in coils of ropes as to acquire a powerful spring. The extreme ends were united by a strong rope which was drawn back by means of a windlass after the manner of a bowstring, bringing the ends of the lever back and closer together, thereby twisting the coils of ropes to their greatest tension. When thus drawn back, the javelin or dart was placed in the shaft, directed to the object aimed at, and, at the pleasure of the operator, letting go the rope, was hurled with prodigious force from the engine by the recoil of the levers.

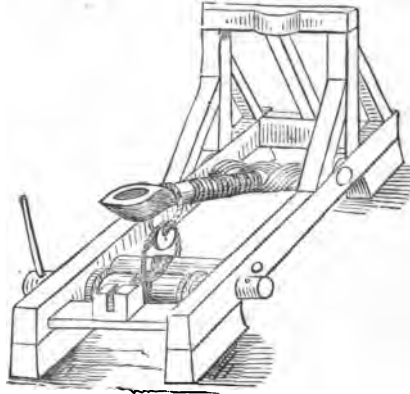
BALISTA FOR THROWING DARTS AND JAVELINS.



The balista for throwing stones, (represented in the following wood cut,) consisted of a strong lever, one end of which was made fast in a twist of ropes, and the other scooped out in the form of a spoon, for containing the stone &c. to be thrown. When unbent the lever stood perpendicular. In working it, the end of the lever was brought down, by means of a windlass, to a horizontal position, by which the ropes were twisted to their greatest tension; the stone or missile was laid on in its proper place and thrown by the recoil of the lever to a great distance, often with tremendous effect. Engines of both kinds, of a larger size, were

more commonly called *Balistæ*, those of a smaller size, *Catapultæ*, which see

BALISTA FOR THROWING STONES OR OTHER HEAVY BODIES.



Balventius, i, (Titus, i,) a man of distinguished courage, who had both his thighs pierced with a dart, in the attack which *Ambiōrix* made upon the legions which he had deceitfully persuaded to leave their camp.

Basīlus; See *Minucius*.

Batavia, æ, f. v. *Insula Batavōrum*, (*United Provinces*,) often called *Holland*, from its being the largest of them; a country at the mouth of the Rhine. It was denominated an island, from being bounded on two sides, by the southern and northern branches of the Rhine, and on the third by the sea. B. IV. Ch. 10.

Batāvi, ōrum, the people of *Batavia*, originally a branch of the *Catti*, a German nation.

Belgæ, arum, a people originally of German extraction, who inhabited the third division of Gaul, which was bounded on the south by the *Matrōna*, (*Marne*,) and the *Sequāna*, (*Seine*;) on the east and north by the *Rhēnus*, (*Rhine*,) and on the west by *Fretum Britannicūm*, (*English Channel*.) Strictly speaking, *Fretum Britannicūm*, v. *Gallicūm*, was confined to the *Straits of Dover*, but seems generally to have had a more extended signification, and to have nearly corresponded to the modern appellation, the *English Channel*. *Cæsar* calls it *Ocæanus*, i. e. *Atlanticus*, of which the

English Channel and the German Sea form only a very small part. In the division of Gaul made by Augustus, whose object was to render the different provinces more equal in point of extent, the countries of the Helvetii and Sequani, which till that time were included in Gallia Celtica, were added to Gallia Belgica. According to Cæsar, the Belgæ were, of all the Gauls, the most warlike; and he attributes their superiority in arms to their being strangers to luxury and refinement. B. I. Ch. 1.

Belgium, i, n. is, in general, used by Cæsar to denote a part of Gallia Belgica, not the whole country. See Belgæ.

Bellovaci, ðrum, a numerous and powerful tribe of the Belgæ, adjoining the Bellocassi. Calæti, Ambiani, Veromandui, and Silvanectes.

Bibracte, is, n. afterwards Angustodunum, i, n. (*Aulun*), a town of the Ædui, upon the Arroux, one of the northern branches of the Ligëris, (*Loire*), towards the source of that river. At this town in the 7th year of the Gallic war a general assembly of the whole country was held, to choose a commander in chief, on whom the uncontrolled direction of all their military operations should be conferred. The Ædui, who claimed that honor, had to submit to the unanimous election of Vercingetorix, q. v.

Bibrax, acis, f. (*Bierre*), a town of the Remi on the Axona, (*Aisne*.)

Bibröci, ðrum, a British nation, inhabiting what now forms the N. W. part of Berkshire. Their chief town was Bibracte, (*Bray*.) At the time Cæsar invaded Britain, they, with the Cenomagni, Ancalites, and Cassii, seem to have been subject to Cassivelaunus.

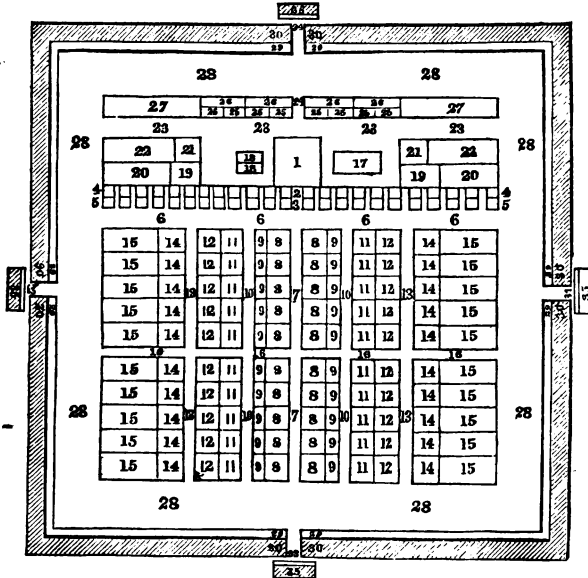
Bigerriones, v. Bigerrones, ium, a people of Aquitania, who, with several other adjoining tribes, surrendered to Crassus, one of Cæsar's lieutenants. Their territory was bounded on the south by the Pyrenees, and was nearly at equal distances from the Mediterranean and the Bay of Biscay.

Bison, ontis, v. ðnis, m. a buffalo, a kind of wild ox, of which Cæsar has given the best description to be found in the writings of the ancients, (B. G. VI. 25.) The natural history of this animal is unknown.

Bituriges, um, a nation of Gallia Celtica, on the west side of the river Ligëris, (*Loire*.) Their chief city, Avaricum, was afterwards called by the name of its inhabitants, (now *Bourges*.)

Boduognatus, i, the commander of the Nervii, at the time they attacked the Roman army under Cæsar.

GROUND PLAN OF THE ROMAN CAMP.



1. The *Prætorium*, or general's tent, with a sufficient space around for the tents of his suite.
2. Ground behind the tents of the *Tribunes*, for their horses, baggage, &c.
3. The tents of the *Tribunes*.
4. Ground behind the tents of the *Præfects of the Allies*, for their horses, baggage, &c.
5. The tents of the *Præfects of the Allies*.
6. A cross street, one hundred feet wide, called *Principia*. (*Vid. PRINCIPIA.*)
7. A cross street, fifty feet wide, on both sides of which were the tents of the *Roman horse*.
8. The *Horse* of two Roman legions, in ten *turmæ* or troops each.
9. The *Triarii* of two Roman legions (*Vid. TRIARI*), in ten maniples each, facing on two different streets.

10. Two streets, each fifty feet wide, between the *Triarii* and *Principes* of two legions.

11. The *Principes* of two Roman legions (*Vid. PRINCIPES*), in ten maniples each.

12. The *Hastati* of two Roman legions (*Vid. HASTATI*), in ten maniples each.

13. Two streets, each fifty feet wide, between the *Hastati* of the two Roman legions and the Horse of the Allies.

14. The *Horse of the Allies*, wanting the *Extraordinarii* (*Vid. No. 25*), and placed in two different parts of the camp. The forces of the allies, both cavalry and infantry, were always separated in this manner, to prevent plotting, as remarked above.

15. The *Infantry of the Allies*, wanting the *Extraordinarii*, and, like the horse, placed in two different parts of the camp.

16. The *Quintāna* (scil. *via*), a street fifty feet wide, running across the camp, between the fifth and sixth maniples of each line. Hence, as it comes after the fifth maniple, reckoned from the *Principia*, it received the name of *Quintāna*.

17. The *Quæstorium*, or Quæstor's tent.

18. The tents of the *Legāti*. The space in front of these and the *Quæstorium* was called the *Forum*, where things were sold, &c.

19. *Evocāti Equites*, or Veteran Horse. (*Vid. EVOCATI*.)

20. *Evocāti Pedites*, or Veteran Foot.

21. *Ablecti Equites* (*Vid. No. 25*), or Horse of the Consular life-guards.

22. *Ablecti Pedites*, or foot of the Consular life-guards.

23. A cross street one hundred feet wide.

24. A street fifty feet wide.

25. *Extraordinarii Equites*. A third part of the allied horse, and a fifth part of the allied foot, were selected, and posted near the consul, under the name of *Extraordinarii*, and one troop of horse, and maniple of foot, called *ABLECTI*, or *Selecti*, to serve as his life-guard.

26. *Extraordinarii Pedites*.

27. Quarters for strangers coming to the camp.

28. A space two hundred feet broad, between the outermost tents and the rampart.

29. Rampart, or *Vallum*.

30. Ditch, usually nine feet deep and twelve feet broad.

31. *Porta Principālis Dextra*.

32. *Porta Principālis Sinistra*.

33. *Porta Decumāna* (i. e. *Dectmāna*, from *decem*, ten,) so called because all the *tens* of the maniples end here.

34. *Porta Prætoria*.

35. A traverse breastwork, with a ditch, opposite to, and protecting, each of the gates. (*Anthon's Cæsar*.)

Catapulta, a military engine for discharging stones, arrows, and other missiles. (*Vid. BALISTA*.)

Catamantalēdes, is, a nobleman of the nation of the Sequāni, who, for many years, enjoyed the supreme authority over that people.

Cativolcus, i, a nobleman of the nation of the Eburōnes. He and Ambiōrix, at the instigation of Indutiomārus, excited the people to take up arms against the Romans. Having made an unsuccessful attack upon the Roman camp under the lieutenants, Titurius Sabinus, and L. Aurunculēius Cotta, they demanded a conference, in which Ambiōrix stated, that from gratitude to Cæsar, he considered himself bound to inform his lieutenant, that all the states of Gaul had agreed to attack the Roman camp in one day, that a great body of Germans had passed the Rhine, and that no time was to be lost in joining Cicēro or Labiēnus, neither of whom were fifty miles distant. At the same time, he gave his solemn promise, that they should have a secure retreat through his territories. This artifice, through the folly or cowardice of Sabinus, succeeded. They left their camp, were attacked by a powerful army under Ambiōrix and Cativolcus, and were almost to a man cut in pieces. Cæsar afterwards completely routed them; and Cativolcus, from his great age, being unable to bear the fatigues of war, poisoned himself by drinking the juice of the yew-tree.

Caturiges, gum, a people of Gaul, who lived near the Alpes Maritimæ, at the S. E. extremity of Dauphiné.

Cavarinus, i, a nobleman whom Cæsar, in prejudice of his brother Moritasgus, the reigning sovereign, appointed king over his countrymen, the Senōnes, an honor which his ancestors had long enjoyed. The Senōnes formed the design of publicly assassinating him, but having received intelligence of the plot, he saved his life by fleeing to the camp of Cæsar.

Celtæ, ārum, the most powerful and numerous of all the nations of Gaul, who occupied nearly one-half of the country, and from whom that division was called *Celtica*. Their territories were bounded by the river Garumna, (*Garonne*), on the south; the Sequāna, (*Seine*), and the Matrōna, (*Marne*), on the north; by Mount Jura on the east; and Mare Atlanticum, (*Atlantic Ocean*), on the west.

Cenimagni, *Grum*, an ancient people of Britain, who, with the *Segontiaci*, *Ancalites*, *Bibröci*, and *Cassi*, followed the example of the *Trinobantes*, and submitted to *Cæsar*. These nations are supposed to have inhabited the counties of *Essex*, *Middlesex*, *Norfolk*, *Hertford*, *Buckingham*, *Oxford*, and *Berkshire*.

Censor, is, a *Censor*, a Roman magistrate whose number from first to last was uniformly two. They were appointed (A. U. 312,) to take an account of the number of the people, and the value of their fortunes, and superintend the public morals. They were chosen from the most reputable persons of consular rank, at first only from the patricians but afterwards likewise from the plebians. They were chosen every five years, but continued in office only a year and a half. For any dishonorable action they had the power to erase the name of a Senator from the list, deprive an eque of his horse and ring, and any other citizen they could degrade and deprive of all the privileges of a Roman citizen, except liberty.

The title of *Censor* was even more honorable than that of *Consul*, though attended with less power. No one could be elected a second time, and those who filled it were remarkable for leading an irreproachable life; so that to be descended from a censorian family was considered a distinguished ornament of nobility.

Census, *ûs*, *m*. was a general review of the people, estimating their estates, and proportioning their share of the public taxes. Every man was obliged to give in to the *Censors* his own name, residence and occupation, his wife's name, and the names of his children with their ages, the number of his slaves, and a minute and accurate account of his property. The goods of the person, who made a false return, were confiscated, and he himself, after being scourged, was sold for a slave. By that act he had, in the opinion of the state, deemed himself unworthy of the privileges and honors of a Roman citizen. *Servius Tullius*, the 6th king of Rome, appointed the *Census*, in order to ascertain the number of men able to bear arms, and the amount of the whole wealth possessed by the citizens, and consequently what sums could be levied from them. It was held in the *Campus Martius*, where the *Censors*, seated in curule chairs, attended by their clerks and public officers, commanded the citizens to be called before them, each in his own tribe. If nothing immoral or improper could be charged against a senator or knight, they passed without remark; but if otherwise, the senators were expelled the senate, and the public horse taken from the knight. The other citizens were raised to a higher tribe, if their wealth had increased, or sunk to a lower

tribe, if diminished; improper conduct deprived them of their right of voting, or subjected them to be taxed like strangers. A minute register of the whole was kept, and must have been of great advantage to the whole community, as determining with precision not only their number, but also their wealth. It ought to have been held at the end of every five years; but it is manifest from Roman history, that this period was not pointedly observed. At the end of this survey of the people they were ordered to attend a lustration, called, from sacrificing, a sow, a sheep, and a bull, *Suovetaurilia*. The precedency at this sacrifice was decided by lot, and he on whom the lot fell was at the conclusion said "*lustrum condere*."

Centurio, *ōnis*, *f*, (from *centum*, a hundred,) a centurion or commander of a *hundred* men. The constitution of the Roman legion admitted of a gradation from the lowest centurion of the *Hastati*, up to the first of the *Triarii*, who was called *Primpilus*, *q. v.* To the first captaincy, the meanest common soldier might aspire. Promotion in the Roman army could be obtained only by merit; appointments by purchase were unknown. This wise regulation produced the happiest effects. Besides each cohort having six centurions, and consequently each legion sixty, opened a wide field for promotion, and suggested numerous excitements to valor and heroism.

Centrōnes, *um* (*B. G. I. 5.*), a nation of Gaul in the *Alpes Graiæ*, who, along with the *Garocēli* and *Caturīges*, were defeated by *Cæsar* in several engagements. There was another tribe, or horde, of this name, who were subject to the *Nervii*, a nation of *Gallia Belgica*, (*B. G. Ch. V. 38.*)

Cherusci, *ōrum*, *m.* a nation of Germany, between the rivers *Albis*, (*Elbe*), and the *Visurgis*, (*Weser*.)

Cicēro, *ōnis*, (*Quintus Tullius*), the brother of *Marcus Tullius Cicēro*, the celebrated orator, was, after the expiration of his prætorship, proconsul of Asia for three years. He gained considerable reputation as one of *Cæsar*'s lieutenants in Gaul. At the commencement of the civil war, he, in opposition to the advice of his brother, attached himself to *Pompey*. After *Cæsar* had defeated the republicans at *Pharsalia*, both *Quintus* and his son solicited the favor of the conqueror, by unjustly imputing their misconduct to the orator. So far was *Cicero* from resenting this injustice, that he used his utmost efforts for their safety and interest. Both perished in the proscription of the second triumvirate.

Cimberius, i, the brother of Nasua, who headed the 100 cantons of the Suëvi, who had left their native country, and encamped on the banks of the river Rhenus, (*Rhine*,) with the view of crossing that river, and settling in Gaul.

Cimbri, örüm, (sing. Cimper, ri,) a German nation, supposed to be descended from the Asiatic Cimmerians, whose country was, from them, called the Chersonesus Cimbrica, (*Jutland*,) which now forms part of the kingdom of Denmark. About 113, B. C. the Cimbri, leaving their territories, which were both narrow and barren, and being joined by the Teutönes, a neighboring people, defeated several German nations, and a Roman consul with his army, who had been sent against them. They invaded, and seem to have overrun, a great part of Gaul; and being strengthened by the accession of many of the tribes who inhabited that country, marched against Rome. After slaughtering the whole army of Cæpio and Mallius, except ten men and two generals, C. Marius marched against them, slew 120,000 and took 60,000 prisoners. Though only an inconsiderable people in the days of Tacitus, it is manifest, that the sagacity of that profound historian was apprehensive of the final destruction of the Roman state by the hordes of Germany, which actually happened about 300 years after his death.

Cingetörix, igis, a nobleman who headed that party in the state of the Treviri, which was formerly attached to Cæsar. In consequence of his fidelity to the Romans, he was, by means of his father-in-law, Indutiomærus, declared a public enemy, and his estate confiscated.

Cingetörix, igis, one of the four kings of Cantium, (*Kent*,) who, by order of Cassivelaunus, made an attack on Cæsar's naval camp. Clepsydra, æ, f. an instrument contrived to measure time by water. The merit of this invention belongs to the Egyptians, as well as the discovery of the sun-dial.

There were different kinds of Clepsydræ among the ancients; which, however, were all constructed on this principle, that the water ran through a narrow passage from one vessel to another, and that on the surface of the water in the lower vessel, to the side of which a scale of hours was affixed, floated a piece of cork, which shewed the hour. It is manifest the water would be discharged with a rapidity proportioned to the quantity, and that, of course, it ran fastest when the vessel was full, and gradually became slower as the less water remained. Hence if the upper vessel discharged its water in twelve hours, and the under one

was an exact cylinder having its height divided into 144 equal parts, the water in the first hour would rise twenty-three of these parts, in the second hour, twenty-one, in the third, nineteen, &c., and the last or twelfth hour only one part. The state of the atmosphere would have considerable influence on the clepsydra, a defect which the ingenuity of a modern French philosopher, William Amontons, has completely remedied. By means of several important inventions he also freed it from other less inconveniences to which it was subject; and rendered it a very accurate divisor of time.

Cocosates, um, a people of Aquitania in Gaul, whose country lay along the coast of *Océanus Cantabricus*, (*Bay of Biscay*.) to the north of the territories of the Tarbelli. Their chief town was Cocösa.

Clypeus, i. a round shield of a smaller size than the *Scutum*, which see.

Cohors, tis, a division of the Roman legion. See *Legio*.

Comius, i, one of the nation of the Atrebatés, hence called Comius Atrebas, whom Cæsar appointed king over that people in return for his important services. He afterwards fell under the suspicion of Labiénus, who employed C. Volusénus Quadrátus to kill him in an interview. This perfidious design did not succeed. But in the scuffle, Comius was wounded in the head. He was, from that period, a violent enemy to the Romans. Being at last defeated, he was obliged to submit to Antony, which he did, on condition that he should not appear before any Roman. On these terms, Antony granted him peace.

Condrüsi, örum, a people of Belgic Gaul, who lived on the river Mosa, (*Mæse*, or *Meuse*,) north of Silva Arduenna.

Considius Longus, (Caius, i,) a partisan of Pompey, who was at one time the governor of Adrumétum. He committed several acts of enormous cruelty. Considius afterwards commanded at Tisdra a garrison of Gætulians, and, on hearing of the defeat of his party, fled from that town with his treasures. Escaping from these barbarians and taking the road for Numidia, he was pursued by them, and to obtain possession of his money, they put him to death.

Consul, ülis, a consul; the official title of the two chief magistrates of the Roman state. They were first created after the expulsion of the kings, A. U. 244. They had the same badges as the kings, except the crown, and nearly the same power. In time of war they had supreme command; one accompanied the army as com-

mander-in-chief, and the other remained at Rome; or, if necessary, commanded another army, leaving the government in charge of the *Prætor*. They levied soldiers, appointed the greater part of the officers, and provided what was necessary for their support.

When any dangerous conjuncture arose, the consuls were armed with absolute power by the Senate, which solemnly decreed that they should take care that the republic received no harm. If any serious tumult or sedition occurred, they called the citizens to arms by proclaiming "Let those who wish to save the republic follow me;" and this was usually sufficient to check it.

The authority of the consuls was first impaired by the creation of Tribunes of the people, and afterwards by the Emperors. The office however was retained, and the consuls, after their power was gone, were still employed in consulting the Senate, administering justice, managing the public games and the like; and the year was usually characterized by their names.

At first the consuls were chosen from the Patricians only, but afterwards from the Plebians also. They were elected annually, and to be a candidate it was necessary to be forty-three years of age,—to have gone through the inferior offices of *Quæstor*, *Ædile*, and *Prætor*,—and to be present in a private station.

Proconsul, *ûlis*, a proconsul, a person invested with consular authority for the government of a conquered country. The consuls, at the expiration of their offices, were generally appointed proconsuls, and soon after quitted the city to take charge of their province. Their powers, though subject to the will of the senate and authority of the people, were very extensive. They had the appointment of the taxes and of the contributions imposed on the country, and it cannot be denied, that avarice and rapacity too often trampled on the principles of justice and humanity. To the honor of the Senate it must be mentioned, that they frequently punished acts both of extortion and cruelty. These crimes, however, were generally very flagrant before they became the subject of prosecution.

Proconsularis, is, e, of or belonging to a proconsul, or the proconsulship, proconsular.

Consularis, e, adj. of or belonging to a consul; consular; one who had been a consul; a man of consular rank.

Cotta, æ, (Lucius Aurunculeius,) a lieutenant in Cæsar's army, who suspected the stratagem of Ambiorix, and therefore endeavored to convince his colleague Sabinus of the impropriety of following the treacherous advice of that crafty Gaul, but without

effect. Unwilling that any enmity, from difference of opinion, should exist between them, he at last yielded, and his compliance cost him his life. Ambiorix, at the distance of two miles from the camp, lay in ambuscade, and when crossing a large valley, made a furious attack on the Roman forces, in which Cotta, after displaying singular bravery, was killed, and almost the whole of the two legions.

Crassus, i, (Marcus Licinius,) surnamed *Dives*, on account of his prodigious wealth, was, in early life, very poor, but by trafficking in slaves, and by other dishonorable practices, soon acquired great riches. To escape the cruelties of Cinna, he fled to Spain, where he had formerly passed some years with his father, when governor of that country; and remained eight months concealed in a cave. On hearing of Cinna's death, he raised 2,500 men, for whom he procured shipping, sailed to Africa, and attached himself to Metellus Pius. The friendship of Crassus with Metellus was not of long continuance. He then formed an alliance with Sulla, and was of great service to him in the civil war. The military talents of Crassus were greatly inferior to those of Pompey, who, on that account, necessarily stood higher in the favor of Sulla. Hence the enmity of these two powerful citizens, which all the address and eloquence of Cæsar could scarcely subdue. The great object of Crassus seems to have been the accumulation of wealth. Besides buying the estates of the proscribed, he had recourse to other base and scandalous means in order to increase his overgrown fortune.

Crassus was not however, destitute of bravery or generosity. He was honored with an ovation for putting an end to the war with Spartacus by a decisive engagement, in which 12,000 of the slaves were killed. He used frequently to lend money to his friends without interest. After entertaining the populace at 10,000 tables, giving to every citizen corn to support him for three months, and consecrating the tenth part of his property to Hercules, he was worth 7,100 talents. He used to say that no man, who could not maintain an army ought to be called rich. His slaves whom he had ingenuity enough to employ so profitably that they not only defrayed their own expenses, but added greatly to the wealth of their master, were, in number, equal to an army.

A reconciliation between Crassus and Pompey was, at last, effected by Cæsar. The iniquitous combination of these three men to destroy the liberties of their fellow-citizens, was called the first triumvirate. Less solicitous for honor than riches, Crassus,

in this division of the empire, chose Syria for his province, in expectation of making large additions to his fortune. Without the authority of the senate, he crossed the Euphrates and advanced against that country. But he was deceived by Agbārus, an Arabian, defeated by the Parthians, and his army nearly annihilated. He then fled with a small number of his soldiers to Carræ, a town of Mesopotamia, and was prevailed on to meet Surēna, on pretence of negotiating a peace, where he was treacherously put to death. The Parthians cut off his head, and, in contempt of his avarice, poured melted gold into his mouth. The bond of union between Pompey and Cæsar, which had been greatly weakened by the death of Julia, was finally dissolved by that of Crassus. They had now recourse to arms, and their struggles for the superiority terminated in the final extinction of Roman liberty.

Cretenses, ium, the inhabitants of Creta, æ, vel, Crete, es, f. a large island in the Mediterranean Sea, opposite to Mare Ægeum, (*Archipelago*.) From its principal city, it is now called *Candia*. Cres, Cretis, m. et Cressa, æ, f. a native of Crete or *Candia*. Cretis, Idis, of Crete or *Candia*, with relation to a female, or to a noun feminine.

Curiosolitæ, arum, and Curiosolites, um, a people of Gallia Celtica, among *Armoricas Civitates*, whose country was afterwards called *Bretagne*

D.

Daci, ōrum, the inhabitants of Dacia a country corresponding to the modern Wallachia, Transylvania, Moldavia, and that part of Hungary which lies to the east of the Tibiscus or *Teiss*; B. VI. Ch. 25.

Danubius, i, the *Danube*, the largest river in Europe, rises in the black forest in Germany, (according to Strabo and Pliny, in the mountain Abnōba,) runs in an easterly direction, through Austria, Germany, Hungary, part of Turkey in Europe, and discharges itself into Pontus Euxinus, (the *Black Sea*.) The ancients gave the name of Ister to the eastern part of this river, after its junction with the Savus, (*Save*.) Though of great breadth and depth in many places, it is not generally navigable on account of the cataracts. Strabo, Diodōrus Sicūlus, Tacitus, and Pliny, have given descriptions of this river in many respects different, and all

exceedingly inaccurate. With the whole course of the Danube the Greeks and Romans were very imperfectly acquainted. Their knowledge of the countries to the north of this large river, was almost wholly obtained by vague report from unlettered barbarians, and, of course, very incorrect.

In the decline of the Roman empire, it became better known to that people, in consequence of almost all the barbarous nations, who assailed that state, commencing hostilities by ravaging the country on the banks of the Danube. But learning had sunk with the state, and no minute or accurate account of this river is found in classic authors.

Decumāna (porta), the rear gate of the Roman camp, (See *Castra*) so called because the tens of the maniples were stationed there.

Decurio, ōnis, m. (from *decem*, ten,) an officer of the cavalry among the Romans, who commanded ten men. Each *Turma*, or troop of horse, had three *Decuriōnes*, and each *Decurio* chose a subaltern, who was, on that account, called *Optio*.

Delectus, ūs, (from *deligo*, to choose,) a military term to denote the levying or enrolment of soldiers. The consuls, after they entered on their office, appointed a day, on which all who were of the military age (from 17 to 46,) should be present in the capitol. On the day appointed, the consuls seated in their curule chairs, assisted by the military or legionary tribunes, held a levy, unless hindered by the tribunes of the commons. It was determined by lot in what order the tribes should be called. The consuls ordered such as they pleased to be cited out of each tribe; and every one was obliged to answer to his name under a severe penalty. They were careful to choose those first who had what were thought lucky names; as, *Valerius, Sabinus, Statorius*, &c. Their names were written down on tables, hence, *Scribere milites*, to enlist, to levy, or to raise soldiers.

Diablintes, ium, et Diablītæ, et Dianlītæ, arum, a people of *Gallia Celtica*, on the river *Meduana*, (*Maine*.) Their chief town was *Neodūnum*, afterwards *Diablintes*, now *Jublens*.

Dictator, ōris, m. a Dictator, an extraordinary Magistrate at Rome, who possessed absolute authority over not only the lives and fortunes of his fellow citizens, but even over the laws themselves. A free government could admit of such an officer being appointed only on important and alarming conjunctures. We find from Roman history that the first Dictator was chosen during the wars with the Latins, (499 B. C.) and that his appointment was a consequence of the plebeians refusing to enlist, and of the consuls

being unable to protect the state. Unless when threatened with imminent danger, either from domestic sedition or foreign wars, the consuls held the highest office, and the laws set bounds to their powers; but the Dictator knew no restriction. Twenty-four Lic-tors preceded him, and, whilst he remained in office, the functions of the other magistrates, with the exception of that of Tribunes of the people, were suspended. He proclaimed war, levied forces, and marched against the enemy; or made peace or disbanded them whenever he pleased. Execution followed his decision, and from his judgment lay no appeal. At the expiration of his office, which could not exceed six months, he might be called to an account for his conduct; but few instances of it occur in the annals of Rome. Bravery does not extirpate credulity, nor does greatness of mind obliterate the fictions of ignorance. Though a nation of intrepid warriors, the Romans were credulous and superstitious. Hence to avert a plague, to remove some dreadful calamity, or to stop the progress of an invading enemy, they sometimes named a Dictator to drive a nail into the temple of Jupiter, which trivial and absurd ceremony they thought possessed these virtues. They sometimes too appointed a Dictator to hold the comitia, or to celebrate public festivals, and once to choose Senators. But for these purposes, except on particular occasions, the state had seldom recourse to the election of that magistrate.

Dies, *ei, m. & f.* a day, or that space of time which elapses from the first appearance of light in the morning, till the return of darkness at night. It is more generally used to denote the time the sun is visible, or above the horizon, which strictly speaking constitutes a solar day. The term has frequently a more extended signification, and includes the night. This forms the Astronomical day, and has also been called the Natural or Civil day. It exceeds the Siderial day, or a complete revolution of the earth on its axis, by three minutes and fifty-six seconds. Different nations begin the day at different times. Among the Romans the natural day began when the sun first appeared above the horizon, which was called the first hour, and ended with that luminary disappearing, which was the twelfth hour. This mode of dividing that space of time during which the sun is visible into twelve parts, though still followed in Turkey, must have been attended with great inconvenience. The hours thus varied with the length of the day and those of the night were subject to the same alteration. Besides, the hours of these two portions of time could be equal only twice a year, viz: at the Equinoxes, (See *Hora*.) The civil day

began at midnight, when the third watch commenced. With us, and most of the nations of Europe, the day is reckoned from midnight to midnight. The Jews began their day at sun-setting, and like the Romans divided it into twelve hours; and the night with them also consisted of twelve hours. It may not be improper to observe that astronomers generally compute from noon to noon, reckoning in a numeral succession from one to twenty-four hours, and not by two twelves agreeably to common usage.

Dis, itis, the god of riches, Pluto.

Divico, ōnis, a nobleman of great influence among the Helvetii, who commanded the army in the war against Cassius, and was at the head of the embassy sent by that state to Cæsar, after three-fourths of their forces had crossed the Arar, (*Saone*,) and he had attacked and killed a great part of the other fourth.

Divitiacus, i, a nobleman of the Ædui, who had great influence with Cæsar, in consequence of his steady attachment to the Romans.

Druïdes, um, v. *Druïdæ*, arum, (a term of doubtful etymology), Druids, the priests of the ancient Britons, Gauls, and Germans. Besides supreme authority in all matters of religion, their power extended to all public and private differences, and what is of much greater consequence, to making, explaining, and executing the laws. This exorbitant jurisdiction was necessarily attended with every mark of power. They were exempted from taxes and military service, and their persons were held sacred and inviolable. Among the Gauls there were only two classes of any note, the Druids and Equites, of which that of the Druids was the more illustrious. Their authority in many instances, surpassing that of the nobles, it is not surprising that they were, in general, sons of the first families. The worship and sacrifices of these priests were performed in deep groves, chiefly under an oak, which was their favorite tree. It was reckoned unlawful to commit any of their doctrines to writing; hence, many of their peculiar tenets are now unknown. It is generally supposed they believed in the immortality of the soul, and also the metempsychosis. Of natural philosophy, astronomy, arithmetic, and botany, it cannot be doubted their knowledge was very considerable. To the study of rhetoric they paid great attention, and to the charms of their eloquence, much of the admiration and power which they enjoyed, may be justly ascribed. Britain was, according to Cæsar, the great school of the Druids, whose chief settlement was Anglesey, called *Mona* by Tacitus. The natives of Gaul and Germany, who wished to be thoroughly versant in the mysteries of

Druidism, resorted to this island to complete their studies. At what time the Druids were wholly suppressed in Britain, is uncertain. But from the introduction of Christianity, their power and influence began to decline. It is worthy of remark, that some of their superstitious doctrines, and modes of predicting future events, are not, at this day, entirely forgotten in many parts of the island.

Dubis, is, m. the *Doux*, a river of Gallia, (*France*), which originates in a small lake near mount Jura, and after a southwest course of sixty leagues, falls into the Arar, (*Saone*), near to Caillönnum, (*Chalons*.)

Dumnōrix, īgis, one of the Ædui, and brother of Divitiācus. He persuaded the noblemen of Gallia, (*France*), not to go with Cæsar into Britain, withdrew privately from the Roman camp, and was killed by the soldiers who were sent in pursuit of him, in consequence of his obstinacy in refusing to return. His character will be found in B. G. I. 18.

Durocortōrum, i, n. the capital of the Remi, now called *Rheims*, on the *Vesle*, one of the branches of the river *Axōna*, (*Aisne*.)

E.

EBURŌNES, um, (*Eburōnes*, in Greek), a people of Gallia Belgica, whose territories lay on both sides of the river Mosa, (*Mæse*, or *Meuse*), at its junction with the Sabis, (*Sambre*.) On their being dispossessed, they were succeeded by the Tungri. They were under the vassalage of the Treviri. Cæsar attempted to extirpate this nation; but this barbarous design, even from his own account, he was unable to carry into full effect.

Eburovīces, um, a people of Gallia, (*France*), on the left bank of the Sequāna, (*Seine*.) The Lexovii were between them and the sea. Their chief city was at first called Mediolānum, and afterwards Eburovīces, now *Evreux*.

Elusātes, ium, a people of Aquitania, who lived on the river Atur, (*Adour*), whose principal city was Elusa, æ, f. (*Euse*.)

Equites, (from *equus* and *eo*), cavalry. Of these the number belonging to each legion was 300, called *justus equitatus*, or *ala*. They were divided into ten *turmæ*, or troops of thirty each; and each *turma* into three *decuriæ*, or bodies of ten men. The office of the Equites at first was to serve in the army. They were æ

lected both from the patricians and plebians; they were required, when chosen, to be 18 years of age, and to possess a fortune of 400 sester tia, (\$15,472.) See Gr. App. V.

Eratosthēnes, is, a native of Cyrēne, (Cyrenæus,) the scholar of Callimachus, and of Aristo of Chios, and the second who was intrusted with the Alexandrian library, devoted his time to criticism and philosophy. He was eminent as a poet and mathematician, but more distinguished as an astronomer and geographer. He died in the year 194 B. C. in the 82d year of his age. B. VI. Ch. 24.

Essui, ōrum, supposed to be also called **Saii, ōrum**, a people of Gallia, whose territories lay on the Olēna, (*Orne*,) adjoining to the Diablintes and Aulerci Eburōnes.

Esubii, ōrum. This word occurs only in B. G. III. 7, where the readings are very different. Some copies have Esubios, or Eusubios, and others Lexuvios. The Greek has Uellos, to which Dr. Clarke, in a note, seems to give the preference, although he has retained Eusubios in the text.

Evocāti, (from *evoco*, to call out,) veteran soldiers, who had served out their time and received their discharge, but who were sometimes again *called out* into public service. This class were highly respected, and were exempted from the drudgery of military service to which the other soldiers were subjected.

Excubiæ, arum, watches either by day or night. **Vigiliæ**, watches by night only. These were relieved at the end of every three hours; hence the night, from sunset till sunrise, was divided into four watches, called the *first, second, third, and fourth*. See Gr. App. I.

Exercitus, ūs, (from *exerceo*, to exercise,) an army, a body of men trained to, or *exercised* in military service. (*Agmen*, from *ago*, an army on the march, or in marching order. *Acies*, an army drawn up in a *line*, or in battle array.) A consular army consisted of two Roman legions, (See *Legio*,) with the proper number of cavalry, and two legions of the allies with their cavalry, making in all about 20,000 men, or in the time of Polybius, 18,600.

F.

Fabius, i, (Caius,) one of Cæsar's lieutenants.

Fabius, i, (Quintus Fabius Maximus) a Roman consul who defeated the Avernî and Rutēni.

Funditores, um, (from *funda*, a sling.) Slingers, a class of warriors usually joined with the *Velites*, but not properly a part of them. They were armed with slings and stones, or bullets of lead, which from practice they threw with great precision and with so much force that neither buckler nor head-piece could resist their impetuosity. They were generally obtained from the Balearic Isles, Achaia, Crete, Arabia, &c., the Balearians being considered the best. See *Velites*.

G.

GALBA, æ, the name of a branch of the Sulpicii, v. Sulpitii, or, according to others, the surname of the founder of that tribe.

Galba, æ, the king of the Suessiones at the time Cæsar invaded Gaul. On account of his knowledge and love of justice, he was appointed commander-in-chief of the forces raised by the Belgian states, against the power of Rome, in the second year of the Gallic war.

Galba, æ, (Sergius) was the son of C. Galba, and grandson of Servius, or Sergius Galba, a celebrated orator and the first distinguished character of that family. He held the rank of lieutenant in Cæsar's army during the Gallic war, and afterwards joined the conspiracy, which the Republican party formed against the life of that ambitious and unprincipled general.

Galea, a helmet, a defensive piece of armor, made of brass or iron, which came down to the shoulders but left the face uncovered.

Gallia,* æ, now *France*, (See the map,) was an extensive and populous country of Europe, bounded on the north by the British Channel, on the east by the Rhine, Mount Jura and the Alps; on the south by the Mediterranean and Spain; and on the west by the Atlantic Ocean. In the time of Cæsar it was divided into three parts; Gallia Belgica, or the country of the BELGÆ (now *Belgium*) occupying the northern part; Gallia Celtica, or the country of the CELTÆ, or Celts, by far the largest, and occupying the middle portion; and AQUITANIA, lying between the Garumna (*Garonne*), and the Pyrenees,—much smaller than either of the others. Adjoining Gaul on the east, and separated from it by Mount Jura,

* Cæsar does not use this term always in precisely the same sense. In B. I. Ch. 1, it means the whole of Gaul not then subject to the Romans; and in the same chapter it is used to denote the central division, or that possessed by the Celts. It is used in the same restricted sense, B. III. Ch. 2.

lay **HELVETIA**, (now part of *Switzerland*,) extending from Mount Jura to the Rhine, on the east; and from Lake Lemannus (*Geneva*) and the Rhone on the south, to the Rhine on the north. On the south and eastern border of Gallia lay what was called **PROVINCIA**, the Roman Province. (See *Provincia*.) Each of these great divisions contained within them numerous nations or tribes, all living under their respective kings or chiefs, all of which were finally brought under subjection to the Romans. The whole of this extensive country was called by the Romans *Gallia Transalpina*, Gaul beyond the Alps, to distinguish it from the northern part of Italy, which they called *Gallia Cisalpina*.

In the 27th year before the Christian æra, and twenty years after the conquest of Gaul was completed by C. Julius Cæsar, Augustus Cæsar made a new division of the whole, including *Provincia Romana* and *Helvetia*, into four grand divisions, in which more attention was paid to equality in the extent of the provinces than to the nations that inhabited them. *Aquitania* was extended northward and eastward to the Liger, (*Loire*,) *Gallia Belgica* on its eastern border was extended southward, taking in part of *Gallia Celtica*, and the whole country of the *Helvetii*. These four divisions were *Gallia Belgica*, *Gallia Celtica*, *Aquitania*, and *Gallia Narbonensis* (formerly *Provincia*, or *Provincia Romana*). These four divisions were again subdivided into seventeen provinces in all. And it is this division which is exhibited in the maps of ancient geography commonly in use. In the map accompanying this work, the division of the country in the time of Cæsar, and the names by which these divisions were then known, have been preferred as more suitable for such a work as this.

The whole country of Gaul from the time of its conquest by Cæsar, 47 years B. C., remained subject to the Romans, and a part of their vast empire for five hundred and fifty years. On the final dismemberment of that empire, Gaul being conquered by the Franks, (or Freemen,) a confederacy of warlike nations bordering on the Rhine, was from them called France about the beginning of the sixth century.

Galli, ōrum, the Gauls, or the inhabitants of Gaul. **Gallus**, i, a Gaul; one of the inhabitants of Gaul.

Gallus, i, (Marcus Trebius.) a prefect or Tribune of the soldiers, sent by P. Crassus, to forage among the *Curiosolitæ*.

Garites, um, a people of *Aquitania*, to the north of the *Ausci*.

Garumna, æ, m. the *Garonne*, a river of France, which rises in the valley of Arran, to the south of St. Bernard, runs with rapidity N. N. E. to Tolŭsa, (*Toulouse*;) afterwards N. N. W. to Guienne, and falls into Oceānus Cantabricus, vel, Mare Aquitanicum, (the *Bay of Biscay*.) The general course of this river, which extends to about 250 miles, is northwest. After its junction with the Duranius, (*Dordogne*;) below Burdegalia, (*Bordeaux*;) it assumes the name of *Gironde*. According to Julius Cæsar's division of Gaul, the Garonne was the boundary of Aquitania, and separated that district from Gallia Celtica. It is navigable to Toulouse, and communicates with the Mediterranean by means of the Royal Canal, about 180 miles long, made through Languedoc by Louis XIV.

Genēva, æ, f. *Geneva*, a town at the western extremity of Lacus Lemānnus, (the *Lake of Geneva*;) on the south bank of the Rhodānus, (*Rhone*.) From Geneva towards Mount Jura, Cæsar raised a mole or rampart of earth, nineteen miles in length.

In modern times, Geneva is a considerable city, nearly two miles in circumference, and contains thirty thousand inhabitants. Besides being neatly built, it is strongly fortified, and remarkable for its beautiful situation, fine walks, and delightful prospects. Calvin spent the latter part of his life at Geneva, and his followers have, ever since, held the government of the city.

Germania, æ, f. *Germany*, a large country of Europe, bounded on the south by the Danubius, (*Danube*;) on the east by the Vistula, (*Vistula*;) on the north by Codanus Sinus, vel, Mare Suevicum, (the *Baltic Sea*;) and on the west by the Rhenus, (*Rhine*;) and Oceānus Germanicus, (the *German Sea*.)

Germānus, i, pl. i, ōrum, the people of Germany; Germans.

Getŭli, ōrum, (sing. *Getulus*, i,) the inhabitants of Getulia, or Gætulia, æ, f. *Biledulgerid*, a large country of Africa, to the south of Mauritania and Numidia. It formed part of the kingdom of Massinissa. Sallust, from books written in the Punic language which belonged to Hiempsal, gives the following character of the Getŭli and Libyes:—"Africa was at first possessed by the Getulians and Libyans, a savage and untutored people, who lived on the flesh of wild beasts, or grass of the field, like cattle; subject to no established customs, laws or government, a race of wanderers, who had no settled habitation, and who lay down to rest wherever night overtook them."—*Sal. Bel. Jug.* 18.

Gladius, i, a sword. The Roman sword was short, straight, and heavy, both for cutting and thrusting. It was worn on the right

side, so as in drawing not to interfere with the shield. The long sword of the cavalry was curved, and was worn on the left side. Gordūni, ōrum, a people of the northern part of Gallia Belgica, subject to the Nervii, whose territories lay along the sea-coast, to the north of the Morīni.

Graiocēli, ōrum, an ancient nation of Gaul, whose territories seem to have been adjacent to those of the Centrōnes and Caturiges, a people who lived among the Alps.

Grudii, ōrum, a neighboring nation to the Gordūni. Their country was bounded on the north by the mouths of the Scaldis, (*Scheldt*.)

H.

Harūdes, um, a people of Germania, (*Germany*,) on the north bank of the Danubius, (*Danube*,) towards the source of that river.

Hastāti, ōrum, the name given to the first rank of the Roman legion (See *Legio*.)

Helvetia, æ, f. *Switzerland*, a country of a triangular form, bounded on the north by the river Rhenus, (*Rhine*,) and Lacus Brigantinus, (*Lake of Constance*,) which separate it from Vindelicia and Germania, *Germany*; on the south by the Rhodānus, (*Rhone*,) and Lacus Lemānus, (the *Lake of Geneva*,) which divides it from Provincia Romāna; and on the west by Mount Jura which protected them from the Gauls. Hence it is manifest that Helvetia was of less extent than Switzerland. Cæsar (B. G. I. 1,) seems to consider the Helvetii as Gauls. In Lib. I. cap 24, he says, *Helvetii—phalange factā*, by which is to be understood simply, that they fought in close order, not that they drew up their troops precisely in the form of the Macedonian Phalanx, so celebrated in ancient history.

Helvetii, ōrum, the people of Helvetia; the Helvetians.

Hercynia, æ, f. a very extensive forest of Germany, the breadth of which, according to Cæsar, was nine days journey, and its length exceeded sixty. It extended from the territories of the Helvetii, Namnētes, and Raurāci, along the Danubius, (*Danube*,) to the country of the Daci and Anartes; then turning to the north, it spread over many large tracts of land, and is said to have contained many different animals, unknown in other countries, of which Cæsar describes two or three kinds. Since the other forests of Germany were only branches of the Hercynian, some writers have considered it as covering nearly the whole of that

extensive territory. As the country became more inhabited, the grounds were gradually cleared, and few vestiges of the ancient forest remain in modern times.

Hiberna, ōrum, winter quarters. The wars of the Romans were prosecuted chiefly in the summer. When the weather and the state of the country became unfavorable to military operations the troops were withdrawn from the field, and led into winter quarters, (*hiberna*.) These were strongly fortified and furnished with every accommodation, like a city, containing storehouses, (*armaria*.) workshops, (*fabricæ*.) an infirmary, (*valetudinarium*.) &c. Hence, from them many towns in Europe, and particularly in England, are supposed to have had their origin. This appears to be indicated by the terminations *cester*, or *chester*, from *castra*.

Hibernia, æ, f. *Ireland*, a considerable island in Mare Atlanticum, (the *Atlantic Ocean*.) It is washed on the east by Oceānus Veriginus, (*St. George's Channel*.) which separates it from England; on the north by Mare Hibernicum, (*Irish Sea*.) which divides it from Scotland; and on all other parts by Mare Atlanticum, (the *Atlantic Ocean*.) of which *St. George's Channel*, and the *Irish Sea*, form but very small parts.

Hiberni, ōrum, the inhabitants of Hibernia.

Hispania, æ, f. *Spain*, a large country of Europe, bounded on the south by Fretum Gaditanum, or Herculeum, (the *Strait of Gibraltar*;) on the east by the Mediterranean, which was known among the Romans by the appellation of *Nostrum Mare*, and among the Greeks, of *Mare Internum*; on the north by the Pyrenæi Montes, (*Pyrenees*.) which separate it from Gallia, (*France*.) and Oceānus Cantabricus, (the *Bay of Biscay*;) on the west by Lusitania, (*Portugal*, included in Hispania Ulterior,) and Mare Atlanticum, (the *Atlantic Ocean*.) which the Greeks called *Mare Externum*. Its greatest length, from east to west, is 600 miles, and its greatest breadth 550. The superficial contents of this country are about 148,000 square miles. Spain, including Portugal, was, by the Romans, divided into two parts, Hispania Citerior, (*Nearer Spain*.) and Hispania Ulterior, (*Farther Spain*;) hence, *duæ Hispaniæ*, the two Spains, or *Hispaniæ*, Spains. The former, or northern, comprehending an extent of country equal to three-fourths of modern Spain, the latter, or southern, the rest of the country. These two divisions were sometimes governed by proconsuls, but more commonly by prætors.

In the reign of Augustus, Hispania Citerior was, from Tarrāco, its principal city, called *Tarraconensis*, and Hispania Ulterior

was divided into *Lusitania* and *Bætica*. The former appellation was derived from the Lusitani, the most powerful of the nations who inhabited that country, and the latter, from Bætis, the *Guadalquivir*, a very large river, which watered that province.

Hispani, *ōrum*, the people of Hispania.

Hora, *æ*, f. an hour. Among the Romans it was the twelfth part of the day. The first hour commenced with the rising of the sun, and the twelfth ended with his setting. It is manifest that the portion of time denominated an hour by them, was constantly changing, and was of equal length to our hour only at the equinoxes. At these two periods of the year, and at them only, their first hour corresponded to our 7 o'clock in the morning; the second to eight, third to 9, fourth to 10, and fifth to 11; but their sixth hour or noon (*meridies*) coincided exactly with our 12 o'clock noon, or mid-day throughout the whole year. Their 7th then answered to our 1 in the afternoon, 8th to 2, 9th to 3, 10th to 4, 11th to 5, and 12th to 6. At the summer solstice, or longest day, the sun rises at Rome a few minutes past 4 o'clock, and sets the same number of minutes before 8, consequently their hour is, at that time, nearly $\frac{1}{4}$ longer than ours, and at the winter solstice it will be as much shorter.

I.

Iccius, *i*, m. one of the ambassadors whom the Rhemi sent to Cæsar in the second year of the Gallic war.

Iccius, *i*, (*sc. portus*,) a harbor in the country of the Morini, in Gallia Belgica, which, according to some, was *Boulogne*, and, according to others, *Vissant*, or *Calais*. Ptolemy mentions it as a promontory, although it cannot be doubted that there was likewise a cognominal harbor. From his description, this seems to be the place which he had in view. It could not be *Calais*. Cæsar set out from Iccius Portus, when he sailed the second time for Britain.

Idus, *uum*, f. the Ides, one of the divisions of the Roman month. In March, July, and October, the Ides were on the 15th, and in the other months, on the 13th. Like the Kalends, and Nones, the Ides were reckoned backwards. (See Gr. App. I.)

Illyricum, (*Croatia*, *Bosnia*, and *Slavonia*,) a country opposite to Italy, bordering on the Adriatic. It was bounded on the south by Macedonia; on the east by Mæsia and Pannonia; on the north by

Noricum; and on the west by Histia and Mare Adriaticum, vel. Supërum, (the *Gulf of Venice*.)

Imanuentius, i, m. a Briton, the father of Mandubratius, and king of the Trinobantes. He was killed by Cassivellaunus.

Impedimenta, òrum, baggage; (from *impedio*, to hinder.) The heavier baggage of the Romans, such as tents, mills, &c. was carried on beasts of burden; sometimes, though more seldom, on baggage wagons, (*carri*.) Every thing else was carried by the soldiers themselves, each of whom usually carried provisions for fifteen days, usually corn, sometimes dressed food, a saw, a basket, a mattock or axe, a reaper's hook and leathern thong, a chain, a pot, usually three or four stakes, sometimes more, for the *vallum*, amounting in all, exclusive of armor, to 60 pounds; and under this load they commonly marched 20 miles a day, sometimes more.

Indutiomarus, i, a chief man among the Treviri, father-in-law to Cingetorix, who attacked Labienus, but was repulsed, and slain.

Italia, æ, f. *Italy*, a large and celebrated country of Europe, bounded on the south by Fretum Siculum, (the *Strait of Messina*,) which separates it from Sicily; on the northeast by Mare Adriaticum, or Supërum, (the *Gulf of Venice*,) which divides it from Græcia, (*Greece*,) now part of *Turkey in Europe*. The Alps, (*Alps*,) form the boundary between Italy and Germany on the north; and on the southwest it is washed by that part of the Mediterranean, formerly called Mare Tyrrhenum, Tuscum, or Infërum, now the *Tuscan Sea*. The Appeninus, (*Appenines*,) forms a ridge of mountains which extends from the Alps to Rhegium, (*Reggio*,) the whole length of the country. The sources of all the rivers in Italy are found in these mountains. Roma, (*Rome*,) for many years the seat of universal empire, was the capital of Italy. From it, the inhabitants of Italy were frequently called Romani, a name originally given only to the natives of that city and its territory, which was long very small.

Itali, òrum, the people of Italia; Italians.

Itius Portus, a harbor in the country of the Morini, from which Cæsar sailed on his second expedition against Britain. See Iccius.

J.

JUGUM, i, a yoke. This consisted of two spears or pieces of wood set upright in the ground, a little space apart, over which a third was laid across the top, the whole resembling the Greek II.

Under this frame the soldiers of conquered armies were often obliged to pass naked, (*nudi*,) *i. e.* without their armor, which was previously laid down.

Jumenta, ōrum, beasts of burden, (horses, mules, asses, &c.) used by the Romans for carrying their heavier baggage. (See *Impedimenta*.)

Junius, i, (Quintus, i,) a Spaniard who was frequently sent by Cæsar to converse with Ambiorix.

Jura, æ, m. a chain of mountains which, extending from the Rhodanus, (*Rhone*,) to the Rhenus, (*Rhine*,) separated Helvetia, (*Switzerland*,) from that part of Gallia Celtica which the Sequani possessed, now called *Franche Comte*. Vosëgus, (*Vaue*,) is a branch, or an extension of Mount Jura.

Justus equitatus, the complement of cavalry attached to a Legion; three hundred in number, exclusive of the horsemen of the allies

K.

KALENDÆ, or Calendæ, arum, f. the Kalends, the name given by the Romans to the first day of every month. A priest was appointed to give notice to the people of the change of the moon, or when the new moon was first visible. This term appears to be derived from the Greek verb *καλέω*, *I call*. (See Gr. App. I.)

L.

LABERIUS, (Quintus, L. Durus,) a tribune of the soldiers in Cæsar's army. He was killed in Britain, B. G. V. 15.

Labienus, i, (Titus, i,) one of Cæsar's lieutenants in the Gallic war. In the beginning of the Civil war he deserted to Pompey, escaped from the battle of Pharsalia, and was killed in that of Munda.

Latobrigi, ōrum, a people who appear to have been neighbors of the Helvetii Rauraci and Tulingi, but of whom little is known with certainty.

Legatus, i, m. a lieutenant-general, who was both appointed by, and acted immediately under, the consul, or Commander-in-chief. The number of these officers varied in proportion to the greatness or importance of the war. Each legion had at least one, often two. When separated from the main army, sent into win-

ter quarters, &c. the lieutenant-general, being the deputy of the commander, had the honor to be the highest officer.

At their first institution, the Legati were counsellors to the governors of provinces, and decided all causes of minor importance; but held no military rank. Hence the word primarily denoted an Ambassador. Their admission into the army naturally resulted from that place of intimacy and confidence. Under the emperors the term became a common appellation for all invested with the highest military command in foreign countries.

Legio, ōnis, f. a legion, or body of soldiers consisting of different numbers at different times. In the early part of the reign of Romulus, the legion contained 3,000 foot, and 300 horse, which he, on the increase of the citizens by the admission of the Sabines, raised to 4,000. To that number 1,000 was added during the war which Hannibal carried on in Italia, (*Italy*,) about 216 years B. C. but a reduction of 500 had taken place before the time Polybius wrote his history. Livy states that the legion consisted of 5,000 foot, and Vegetius, of 6,000 foot. It cannot be doubted that these historians recorded the exact number, which constituted a complete legion in their respective times. The legion consisted of ten cohorts, each cohort of three maniples, and each manipule of two centuries; and in the order of battle the troops were drawn up in three lines, first the *Hastāti*; second, the *Principes*; and third, the *Triarii*. Those who formed the first line were called *Hastāti*, from their fighting with *Hasla*, a long spear, which was afterwards laid aside on account of its being inconvenient. They were the flower of the Roman youth. The second line consisted of the same number of maniples, but of men more advanced in life, and of greater military experience, who were called *Principes*, probably from their being at one time the *first* line. Their arms were heavy. The *Triarii* made up the third line, and seem to have been a body of reserve. They were frequently, from *Pilum*, a javelin, called *Pilāni*, and the *Hastāti* and *Principes*, *Antepilāni*, from being stationed before them. The *Velites* generally skirmished before the lines, sometimes between them, and appear to have been what the moderns call Irregulars. They had light armor, hence called *expediti*, *levis armaturæ*, &c. The archers and slingers were attached to this body. According to that historian, twenty *Velites* seem to have belonged to each manipule. They were, in battle, not formed into cohorts, or maniples, but fought in such parties and in such places as the commander judged most advantageous.

In the early ages of the Roman state, their army in battle order was drawn up, like the Macedonian phalanx, in a continued line. This fact rests on the authority of Livy. The disposition into three lines, and arranging in maniples at some distance from each other seems an improvement of later times. When the *Hastāti* yielded to the superior force or bravery of the enemy, they fell back to the *Principes*, who filled up the spaces between the maniples, and with them they renewed the charge. If both were forced to give way, the *Triarii* came up, and a third attack was made on the enemy. Hence, *ad triarios ventum est*, it is come to the last push; matters are in the utmost danger. The cavalry fought on the wings, but their exact form or position is not certainly known. It probably did not differ very much from the practice of the moderns. If after the whole force was brought into action the enemy still prevailed, they of necessity submitted to a defeat.

All the cohorts of the legion were manifestly on an equal footing in the army of Cæsar, and no preference seems to have been either acknowledged or claimed. The only vestige of the ancient division was the officers retaining their former appellations, as *Primus hastātus*, *Primus pilus*, &c. Cæsar frequently kept the third line as a body of reserve.

Lemānus (Lacus), the *Lake of Geneva*, is a most beautiful expanse of water, in the form of a crescent, the convex side of which is upwards of fifty-four miles long. Its hollow side is towards Switzerland, and its greatest breadth measures about twelve miles. The Rhodānus, (*Rhone*), descending from the Alps, traverses the whole length of the lake, and renders the water at its entrance turbid, on account of the quantity of earth and mud brought down from these steep mountains. Like the other waters and lakes of Switzerland, for nearly an hour in the evening, after the sun is hid behind Mount Jura, it shines with a splendor resembling burnished gold, by the reflection of the solar rays from the Glaciers.

Leponti, ōrum, a people of the Alps, near the source of the Rhodānus, (*Rhone*), on the south of that river.

Levāci, ōrum, a people in the northern part of Gallia Belgica, on the Scaldis, (*Scheldt*), between the Nervii and Grudii. The Centrones, Grudii, Levāci, Pleumosii, and Gordūni. were vassals of the Nervii. B. G. V. 39.

Leuci, ōrum, a Belgic nation who lived between the Mosa, (*Meuse*), and the Mosella, (*Moselle*), near the source of that river.

Lexovii, ðrum, a people of Gallia Celtica, whose country was bounded on the north by the Sequana, (*Seine*), and on the west by Fretum Gallicum, or, Britannicum, (the *English Channel*.)

Liger, ãris, or Ligãris, is, m. the *Loire*, a large river of Gaul, which takes its rise in the country of the Helvii, runs N. N. W. and after a course of 200 miles, falls into Oceanus Cantabricus, (*Bay of Biscay*.) According to the division of Gaul made by Augustus, the Loire was the northern boundary of Aquitania.

Lingones, um, a people of Gaul whose territories included Mount Vosegus, (*Vauge*), consequently the sources of the rivers Mosa, (*Meuse*), and Matrõna, (*Marne*.) Their chief town was Andomatunum, or Andomatunum, afterwards Lingones, now *Langres*.

Liscus, i, one of the Supreme magistrates of the Ædui, who along with Divitiacus and other chiefs of that nation, was in Cæsar's camp in the Gallic war, and informed him of the conduct and plans of Dumnorix.

Lituus, i, a clarion, bent a little at the end like an augur's staff. It was used for the cavalry. The *tuba* was straight and employed by the infantry. The *cornu* was bent almost round. The *buccina* was commonly used for changing the watches.

Lorica, æ, a coat of mail, generally made of leather, covered with plates of iron in the form of scales, or iron rings twisted within one another like chains. It is also used to denote a battlement, or defence of towers and walls, constructed of stone or of hurdles.

Lucinius, i, (Quintus, i,) a centurion of the first rank, who was killed in attempting to rescue his son when surrounded by some of the troops of Ambiorix, after that king had treacherously persuaded Aurunculeius Cotta and Q. Titurius Sabinus, lieutenants, with the army which they commanded, consisting of one legion and five cohorts, to leave their winter-quarters among the Eburones.

Lugotõrix, igitis, one of the four kings of Kantium, (*Kent*;) some copies read Cingetõrix (B. G. V. 22).

Lutetia, æ, f. Lutetia the capital of the Parisii, (*Paris*, now the capital of France,) was originally a fortress on a small island in the Sequana, (*Seine*.) There are two other islands in the Seine at Paris covered with buildings, and connected with each other and the town, by means of bridges. Paris, situated in a plain on both sides of the Seine, is of a circular form, and upwards of eleven miles in circumference. It contains many stately edifices, and the finest collections of medals, statues, and paintings, in the

world. Every thing excellent in Rome, and in the other cities of Italy, has been conveyed to Paris to enrich these collections and to adorn the city.

M.

MAGETOBRIA, æ, f. a city of Gallia, (*France*,) at which Ariovistus defeated the combined forces of the Gauls. This victory put the country under his dominion.

Mandubratius, i, one of the nation of Trinobantes, who, on his father's being killed by Cassivellaunus, fled from Britain to Cæsar then in Gaul, who took him and the state under his protection.

Manilius, (Lucius, i,) a proconsul, who was obliged to fly from Aquitania, with the loss of all his baggage.

Manilius, i, (Tuscūlus,) one of the conspirators against Cassius Longinus, Proprætor of Farther Spain.

Manipūlus, i, (See *Legio*.)

Marcomāni, or Marcomanni, ōrum, a people of Germania, (*Germany*,) whose territories were bounded on the west by the Rhenus, (*Rhine*,) and on the south by the Danubius, (*Danube*,) corresponding to part of the modern *Circle of Swabia*. They afterwards expelled the Boii, and took possession of their country, now called *Bohemia*.

Mare Nostrum, the *Mediterranean Sea*, to which the Romans gave this name, from its bounding their native country, Italia, (*Italy*,) on three sides. By the Greeks it was called *Mare Internum*; and the *Atlantic Ocean*, *Mare Externum*. In Scripture, this collection of water is denominated the *Great Sea*, which, though of small extent, when compared with the Pacific Ocean, &c. is the largest inland sea in the world. The modern appellation is manifestly derived from its situation, being wholly surrounded by land, except the narrow strait of Gibraltar, which connects it with the Atlantic Ocean.

The length of the Mediterranean is about 2,300 miles, and its breadth varies from 900 to 300 miles. Tides are scarcely known in this sea, except in the *Gulf of Venice*, and on the coast of *Tripoli*. There is a constant influx into the Mediterranean, both from the Atlantic and Pontus Euxinus, (the *Black Sea*.) That part of it which is east of the Archipelago, or of the island Candia, is called the Levant.

The principal islands in the Mediterranean, are the Baleares,

(*Majorca and Minorca*,) *Sardinia*, (*Sardinia*,) *Corsica*, (*Corsica*,) *Sicilia*, (*Sicily*,) separated from *Italia*, (*Italy*,) by *Fretum Siculum*, (the *Strait of Messina*,) *Melita*, (*Malta*,) and *Creta*, (*Candia*,) In the *Levant*, besides some other islands of less extent, are *Rhodos*, (*Rhodes*,) and *Cyprus*, (*Cyprus*,)

Matrōna, æ, f. the *Marne*, a river of *Gallia*, (*France*,) which formed part of the ancient boundary between *Gallia Belgica* and *Gallia Celtica*. It takes its rise at *Sangres*, runs northwest to *Chalons*, then westward, passes by *Meaux*, becomes navigable at *Vitry*, and at *Charenton*, a little above *Paris*, falls into the *Sequana*, (*Seine*,) after a course of about ninety-two leagues.

Mediomatrici, um, vel. i, ōrum, a people of *Gallia Belgica*, between the *Mosella*, (*Moselle*,) and the *Rhenus*, (*Rhine*,) The *Treviri* were their neighbors on the north. Their chief town was *Divodūrum*, afterwards *Mediomatrici*, now *Metz*. At one period they were a powerful nation, and possessed a very extensive country. But the conquest of *Gallia*, (*France*,) by the Romans, destroyed their power, and confined them to a narrow territory.

Meldi, ōrum, a people whose country was included between the rivers *Matrōna*, (*Marne*,) and *Sequana*, (*Seine*,) The modern town, *Meaux*, is of some note, and contains 6,000 inhabitants. The *Meldi* mentioned B. V. 5, were a Belgic tribe living on the *Scaldis* (*Scheldt*,)

Menapii, ōrum, a people of *Gallia Belgica*, whose territory was separated from *Insula Batavorum*, (*Holland*,) by the *Mosa*, (*Meuse*,) The *Toxandri* were their neighbors on the south.

Mensis, is, m. a month; a term originally employed to denote that portion of time which elapses between two successive changes of the moon. (See Gr. App. I.)

Messala, æ, (*Marcus*,) a noble Roman who was consul with *Marcus Puppius Piso*, in the 60th year B. C.

Mettius, i, (*Marcus*, i,) a man allied to *Ariovistus* by the rights of hospitality, whom *Cæsar* joined in commission with *C. Valerius Procillus*, on an embassy to that king. As soon as they entered his camp, without suffering them to speak, *Ariovistus* commanded both to be put in irons. He thrice drew lots to determine whether they should be burned alive upon the spot, or reserved for another time. The lots being always favorable, their lives were preserved. After the defeat of *Ariovistus*, *Cæsar* himself in the pursuit fell in with *Procillus*, and *Mettius* was likewise recovered and brought back to the Roman camp.

Minucius, i, (Lucius M. Basilus,) one of Cæsar's officers. To C. Fabius, and L. Minucius Basilus, he gave the joint command of two legions, which were stationed among the Rhemi.

Mona, æ, f. the *Isle of Man*; an island in the Irish Sea, nearly equidistant from England, Scotland, and Ireland. It is thirty miles long, and eight broad. The soil is fertile, the air salubrious, and the inhabitants live in general to a great age. The sovereignty of this island formerly belonged to the Dukes of Athol; but it was sold in 1765 to the crown. Tacitus and others call Anglesy, Mona, but Cæsar is more correct.

Morini, òrum, a people of Gallia Belgica, whose country lay along the coast opposite to Cantium, (*Kent*.)

Moritasgus, i, the king of the Senõnes, at Cæsar's arrival in Gallia, (*France*.)

Mosa, æ, f. the *Mase*, or *Meuse*, a river of Gallia, (*France*,) rising a little to the west of Mount Vosegus, (*Vauge*,) runs north, passes a number of celebrated towns, receives, at Namur, the Sabis, (*Sambre*,) joins the Vahãlis, (*Wahal*, or, *Waal*,) below the island of Bommel, and falls into the German Sea. The course of this river, which extends to 160 leagues, is north.

Munatius, i, (Lucius M. Plancus,) one of Cæsar's lieutenants, who, with Caius Trebonius, had the command of three legions which were settled in Belgium, during the winter.

Muscùlus, a species of moveable shed or pent-house on wheels, shaped like an arched wagon, usually sent before the large towers to prepare the way for their advance, by cutting down trees, filling up ditches, removing obstructions, and making a smooth and solid road even up to the enemy's walls.

N.

NAMEIUS, i, a nobleman of the Helvetii, who, with Verudoctius, was at the head of the embassy which that nation sent to Cæsar, to request permission to march through the Roman province.

Namnètes, or, Nannètes, um, a people of Gallia Celtica, who lived on the north bank of the Ligëris, (*Loire*,) where it falls into the sea.

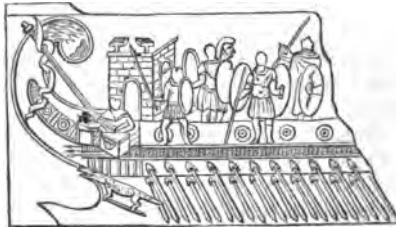
Nantuates, um, a people, whose country lay on the south of Lacus Lemãnus, (*the Lake of Geneva*.)

Narbo, ònis. f. *Narbonne*, a town of Provincia, to the south of the river Atax, (*the Aude*,) near the sea-coast, which afterwards gave name to that division of Gallia, (*France*,) called Narbonensis.

Nasua, æ, the brother of **Cimberius**, who commanded the 100 Cantons of the Suevi, who had encamped on the bank of the **Rhenus**, (*Rhine*,) with the design of crossing that river.

Naves, ium, (sing. *navis*,) ships. The kind of ships used by the Romans were chiefly two, viz: *Naves Longæ*, ships of war, and *Naves Onerariæ*, ships of burden. The *Naves longæ* were so called because they were of a longer shape than the others. They were commonly impelled by oars, and were distinguished by a helmet at the mast head. They were also ranked as *birèmes*, *tri-rèmes*, *quadrèmes*, and *quinqüirèmes*, according as they had two, three, four, or five rows or tiers of oars. According to the generally received opinion, these rows or tiers ran from the prow to the stern, as exhibited in the following wood cuts, taken from antiques, the first of which has one row and the second two. Over these were erected decks on which sometimes towers were constructed, from which the enemy might be more conveniently and successfully assailed.

NAVES LONGÆ.



The *Naves Onerariæ*, or ships of burden, were broader and rounder than the vessels of war. They were impelled by sails

and distinguished by a basket, (*corbis*,) suspended from the mast head; whence they were sometimes called *corbitæ*.

Naves Actuarie were ships contrived for lightness and expedition. They had but one bank of oars, or at most two, on each side. They were of different kinds, distinguished by different names; as, *Celoces*, *Lembi*, *Phasëli*, &c., but the most remarkable were the *Naves Liburnæ*, a kind of light galleys used by the Liburni.

Nemetes, um, a people of Gallia Belgica, probably a tribe of the Germans, on the west bank of the river Rhenus, (*Rhine*,) between the Triböci and Vangiones. Their principal city was Nomiomagus, (*Spire*.)

Nervii, örüm, a powerful and warlike nation of Gallia Belgica, whose country lay on both sides of the Scaldis, (*Scheldt*, near the source of that river, afterwards *Hainault*, and *Nord*. They revolted and attacked the Roman troops under Cæsar; but were totally routed. Their mode of defence against the attacks of cavalry was simple and effectual. The different readings B. G. Lib. II. 17, are numerous, yet the idea conveyed by all is not very materially different. In the place where the Nervii wished to raise a barrier, they, probably at a considerable distance from each other, half cut two rows of young trees, so that they continued to grow, bent them longitudinally, and gave their branches a lateral direction. The middle space between these rows was planted or filled up with briars and thorns, which intermixing with the trees that formed the outside of the fence, rendered the whole so close and impervious, that it not only stopped the progress, but even the view of the invaders.

After *ramis* the common text has *enatis*, which Oudendorp and others reject as a mere gloss, unnecessary to the sense. It is also wanting in the best MSS.

Nonæ, arum, f. the Nones, the second division of the Roman month; so called, it is supposed, because from that day to the Ides nine days intervened. In the months of March, May, July, and October, the Nones fell on the seventh, and in the other months on the fifth. (See Gr. App. I.)

Noreia, æ, f. a city of Noricum, the capital of the Taurisci. B. I. 5.

Noricum, i, n. or Noricus ager, a large country of Germany, between Italia, (*Italy*,) and the Danubius, (*Danube*). It comprehended the greater part of Austria, all Salzburg, Stiria, and Carinthia. Their chief city was Noreia, which was besieged by the

Boii, in the inroad which they had made upon Noricum, before they entered into alliance with the Helvetii.

Norici, ōrum, the people of Noricum.

Noviodūnum, i, n. (B. G. II. 15,) a town of the Suessiōnes, (*Soissons*, or *Noyons*.) Another of the Œdui, (B. G. VII. 55,) now *Nevers*, on the banks of the Ligēris, (*Loire*). And a third belonged to the Bituriges, (B. G. VII. 14,) now *Neuvy* or, *Neufry*, about twenty miles west from *Nevers*.

Numidia, æ, f. *Algiers*, a country of Africa, bounded on the north by the Mediterranean; on the west by Mauritania, (*Morocco* and *Fez*); on the south by Gætulia; and on the east by Africa Propria, (*Tunis*.)

Numīdæ, arum, and, Nomādes, um, the inhabitants of Numidia, described by Sallust, in the Jugurthan war, as faithless, unsteady, and fond of revolutions in the state.

O.

OCELUM, i, n. *Ouz*, or *Exilles*, a town on the frontiers of Gallia Cisalpina, Citerior, or Togata, in Alpes Graiæ.

Octodūrus, i, (Octodōrus, in Greek,) *Martigny*, a town, or village, of the Verāgri, (*Vicus Veragrōrum*, Cæsar, B. G. III. 1,) on the *Drance*, near its junction with the Rhodānus, (*Rhone*), at a considerable distance above the entrance of the latter into Lacus Lemānus, (the *Lake of Geneva*.)

Orcynia, æ, f. a name given by Eratosthenes, and some other Greeks, to Hercynia Silva; which see.

Orgetōrix, igis, was, according to Cæsar, the richest and most noble of the Helvetii. Prompted by a love of power, he formed a conspiracy among the nobles, and persuaded the people to quit their country. When his ambitious views were discovered by the state, he was obliged to answer to the charges preferred against him. Orgetōrix, by means of his vassals and debtors, rescued himself, from the hands of his judges, and escaped. But whilst the state was endeavoring to support its authority by force, he died, as was suspected, by his own hands.

Osismii, ōrum, a people of Gallia Celtica, one of the nations which went under the general name of *Civitates Armoricae*. Their country afterwards formed part of the province of *Bretagne*. It is now called *Finisterre*.

P.

PADUS, i, m. the *Po*, the largest river of Italy, anciently called *Eridānus*. The northern branches of the *Po*, descending from the Alps, render it largest in the warmest months of summer, by the melting of the snow towards the summit of these lofty mountains. It disembogues into *Mare Adriaticum*, or *Hadriaticum*, (the *Gulf of Venice*;) by seven mouths, of which two were formed by nature, the other five by art.

Pæmāni, ōrum, a people of Gallia Belgica, on the east bank of the *Mosa*, (*Meuse*.) They had the *Cæræsi* on the south, the *Trevīri* on the east, and *Silva Arduenna* on the north.

Paludamentum, i, the military robe or cloak of the Roman commander; sometimes also worn by the chief officers. It was of a scarlet color, bordered with purple. The elevation of this upon a spear above the *Prætorium*, or general's tent, was often the signal given for commencing battle.

Parisii, ōrum, the inhabitants of *Lutetia*, from whom it was afterwards called *Parisii*, now *Paris*, the capital of France. (See *Lutetia*.)

Passus, ūs, a pace, (two steps,) was reckoned nearly equal to five feet. (See *Gr. App. VI. 5*.) Of these 125 made a stadium, and 1000 made a mile; hence, *mille passuum*, a mile.

Pedius, i, (*Quintus*) a grandson of one of *Julius Cæsar's* sisters, was one of his lieutenant-generals in the Gallic war, and appointed in his will co-heir with *Octavius*, who had *Pedius* for his colleague in his first consulship. He passed a law, from him called *Lex Pedia*, declaring the death of *Julius Cæsar* to have been murder, and subjecting the assassin to capital punishment.

Peligni, ōrum, a people of Italy, whose country lay between the sources of the rivers *Sagrus*, (*Sangro*;) and *Aternus*, (*Pescara*;) both of which fall into the *Gulf of Venice*.

Petrosidius, i, (*Lucius*, i,) a standard bearer of the army which, under the command of *Q. Titurius Sabinus* and *Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta*, wintered among the *Eburōnes*. These troops were, in consequence of a stratagem of *Ambiōrix*, attacked by him on disadvantageous ground two miles from the camp, and almost wholly cut off. *Petrosidius* having, with a few of his men, returned to the camp, threw his standard within the rampart, and was killed fighting with great bravery before the fortifications.

Pictōnes, um, a people of Gallia Celtica, on the south bank of the Ligēris, (*Loire*,) where it falls into the sea.

Pilani. (See *Legio*.)

Pirustæ, arum, a people of Illyricum, on the east coast of Mare Adriaticum, (*the Gulf of Venice*.)

Piso, ōnis, (Lucius Calpurnius, i,) Cæsar's father-in-law, who was consul with A. Gabinus Paulus, in the year of the city 696. In their consulship, Cicero was banished from Rome, and Clodius was supported by Piso, in procuring that disgraceful sentence, (B. G. I. 6.)

Piso, ōnis, (Lucius, i,) the grandfather of Piso above mentioned, was a lieutenant of Cassius, both of whom fell in an engagement with the Helvetii, (B. G. I. 12.)

Piso, ōnis, surnamed from his country, Aquitanus, a nobleman of Aquitania, whose father had been supreme magistrate in that country, and called *Friend* by the Romans, (B. G. IV. 12.)

Plancus, i, (L. Munatius, i,) a lieutenant in Cæsar's army, to whom he gave the joint command with C. Trebonius, of three legions cantoned in Gallia Belgica. After the death of Julius Cæsar, L. Munatius Plancus joined Antony and Lepidus. With the latter he was consul. He is said to have founded Lugdunum, (*Lyons*.)

Pleumosii, ōrum, a people of Gallia Belgica, supposed to have lived on the Scaldis, (*Scheldt*,) near the place where the city *Tournay* now stands.

Pluteus, i, a kind of moveable gallery on wheels, in form resembling the Musculus, (which see,) but used chiefly to protect the archers stationed in it, in order to clear the walls with their arrows, and so facilitate the approach of storming parties and the erection of scaling ladders.

Pompeius, i, (Cneius,) a Roman who was well skilled in the language of the Gauls, and acted as interpreter to Quintus Titurius. After the credulity of that lieutenant had placed himself and his men at the mercy of Ambiorix, he sent Cneius Pompeius to the king of the Eburōnes, begging him to spare their lives. (See *Titurius*.)

Præconinus, i, a lieutenant who was himself killed, and his army defeated at Apollonia.

Præfectus, i, an officer who commanded the allies, and who in the extent of his command resembled the legionary tribune. The commander of the cavalry of a legion was called *præfectus alæ*.

Prætor, ōris, m. a Prætor; (from *Præ* and *eo*,) literally, one who goes before. In the early ages of the Roman State, this term is

supposed by some to have been a general appellation of all the Roman Magistrates, afterwards of the general of the army; even the Emperors were ambitious to include it among their other titles. But the word commonly denoted a Roman judge who administered justice both among his fellow-citizens, and also among the foreigners who resided in Rome. In dignity the Prætor ranked next to the Consul. He had power to alter laws, repeal them, and enact new at pleasure.

Prætoria cohors, Prætorian cohort, a select band of troops forming the general's body guard.

Preciāni, ōrum, a people of Aquitania, who are supposed to have lived at the foot of the Pyrenæi Montes, (*Pyrenees*,) near Mare Cantabricum, (the *Bay of Biscay*.)

Primopilus, i, (sometimes primus pilus,) the chief centurion of the legion. This name belonged to the first centurion of the first maniple of the Triarii. He was entrusted with the eagle or main standard of the legion; in pay he ranked among the equites, and had a place in the council of war with the consul and tribunes.

Provincia Romāna, the Roman Province; that part of Transalpine Gaul in the possession of the Romans previous to the conquests of Cæsar. It extended along the shore of the Mediterranean, from the Pyrenees to the Alps, and was bounded on its northwest side by the Mount Cebenna, (or *Cevennes*,) and on the north, eastward, by the Ambani, Sequāni, and Helvetii. In the new division of Gaul afterwards made by Augustus, its boundaries remained as before, but as all Gaul was now become a Roman Province it ceased to be distinguished by that name, and was called Narbonensis, from Narbo its principal city. (See *Narbo*.)

Pulſio, ōnis, (Titus, i,) a Roman centurion of distinguished valor, who, to decide a dispute with L. Varēnus respecting superiority of courage, rushed forth from the camp, when attacked by the Nervii, and displayed great bravery without the fortifications. Nor was his rival for military fame, inferior to him either in bravery or generosity; B. V. Ch. 44. (See *Varenus*.)

R.

RAUBACI, ōrum, a people of Gallia Celtica. on the northern extremity of Mount Jura. The Rhenus, (*Rhine*,) was their boundary on the east.

Remi, ōrum, a people of Gallia Belgica, whose country lay to the north of the Matrōna, (*Marne*). Their chief town was Durocor-tōrum. now *Rheims*.

Where do you see
lll

Rhedōnes, um, a people of Gallia Celtica. The Rhedōnes were one of those nations reckoned among the *Civitates Armoricae*. Their country is now called *Bretagne*.

Rhenus, i, m. the *Rhine*, a celebrated river of Europe, which takes its rise in Mount Adūla, (*St. Gothard*.) in the country of the Grissons, passes Lacus Brigantinus, (*Lake of Constance*,) and continues to run nearly west about 75 miles, when it reaches Basti. On leaving this city, it takes a northerly direction and becomes the boundary between France, or the Netherlands, and Germany, till it divides into two branches, which, with the German Sea, formed, what was anciently called, Insula Batavorum, (*Holland*, or the *United Provinces*.) After a course of 600 miles, and receiving several rivers on both banks, the Rhine discharges itself into that part of Mare Atlanticum, (the *Atlantic Ocean*,) called Oceānus Germanicus, (the *German Sea*.)

Rhodānus, i. m. the *Rhone*, a large and rapid river of Europe, which has its source in Mount la Fourche, near St. Gothard, in the canton of Uri, not more than two leagues south from that of the Rhenus, (*Rhine*,) passes Lacus Lemānus, (the *Lake of Geneva*.) five leagues below which it disappears between two rocks for a considerable way, rises again, flows with great rapidity in a southern direction, and discharges itself by three mouths into that part of the Mediterranean formerly called Gallicus Sinus, (the *Gulf of Lyons*.) The course of the Rhone is about 400 miles, during which it falls 5,400 feet. In Strabo's time it was navigable a good way up; but its mouths are now so full of rocks brought down from the mountain by its impetuous current, that no ship can enter them. The Rhone is largest in summer, and is at its greatest height soon after the longest day. This is most probably occasioned by the heat of the sun melting part of the snow on the Alps during the summer months.

Roma, æ, f. *Rome*, one of the most celebrated cities of antiquity, stood on the banks of the Tiber, about fifteen miles from the sea. Romūlus, from whom the name is derived, laid the foundation of this city on Mons Palatinus, 15th April, 753 B. C. From a very small beginning it gradually increased, until its circumference, according to Pliny, was not less than twenty miles. After the lapse of many years, Rome became the capital of Italia. (*Italy*,) and, at the commencement of the Christian Era, the known world was in subjection to that gigantic power. It was divided into twenty-four regions or wards, had seven great, and thirteen smaller aqueducts, thirty-seven gates, and six hundred and forty-four tow

ers on the walls. To ascertain its population when in the height of power, is perhaps impossible; but it could not fall much below four millions.

Roscius, i, (Lucius, i,) a lieutenant, to whom Cæsar gave the command of the third legion, which he was to march into the territories of the Essui.

Rufus, i, (P. Sulpicius, i,) one of Cæsar's lieutenants, to whom he gave the charge of the port in Gallia, (*France*), from which he sailed for Britannia, (*Britain*), and a garrison sufficient to protect it during his absence.

Rutēni, ōrum, a people of Aquitania, on the river Tarnis, (*Tarne*.)

Rutilus, i, (M. Sempronius, i,) an officer of Cæsar, who had, with T. Labiēnus, the joint command of the two legions which that general ordered to march into the territories of the Sequāni.

S.

Sabinus, i, (Caius Calvisius,) an officer in Cæsar's army, whom he sent into Ætolia, in Græcia, (*Greece*), with five cohorts and a few men.

Sabinus, i, (Q. Titurius, i,) a lieutenant in Cæsar's army. He, and L. Aurunculeius Cotta, had the command of the troops which were stationed among the Menapii, and in other parts of Gallia Belgica. When in their quarters on the frontiers of the Eburones, the artful stratagem of Ambiorix, king of that tribe, to cut off these lieutenants and their two legions succeeded, through the credulity and obstinacy of Sabinus. A few of the private soldiers escaped the sword of the Gauls. (See *Cotta*.) This officer is sometimes called simply Titurius, or, Sabinus.

Sabis, is, m. the *Sambre*, a river of Gallia Belgica, which has its rise in what is now called *Picardy*, runs northeast and falls into the Mosa, (*Meuse*), near *Namur*.

Sagittarii, ōrum, archers; men who fought with bows and arrows, attached to the *velites*. (See *Legio*.) The best archers were the Cretans. The Romans did not use the bow in the early times of the republic, and when introduced they had scarcely any archers except those of the auxiliary troops.

Samarobriua, æ, f. (*i. e.* the bridge of the Samāra,) *Amiens*, a town of Gallia Belgica, on the south bank of the river Samāra, (*Somme*.) It was afterwards called Ambianum, from its inhabitants; hence the present name.

Santōnes, um, a people of Gallia Celtica, to the north of the river Carantōnus, (*Charente*.) Their chief town was Mediolanum, afterwards Santones, now *Saintes*.

Scaldis, is, the *Scheld*, or the *Scheldt*, a river of Gallia Belgica, which takes its rise about fifteen miles south of Camaracum, (*Cambray*.) in the province of Picardy, runs north, and dividing into two branches, falls into the German Sea. Cæsar erroneously makes it a branch of the Mosa, (*Meuse*.) (B. G. VI. 33.)

Scorpiōnes, a species of military engine for throwing darts and javelins, similar to the Balista, or probably only another name for the same. (See *Balista*.)

Scutum, i. m. a shield; a part of the defensive armor of the Roman infantry, which they wore on their left arms to protect their bodies against the arrows, darts, and other missile weapons thrown by the enemy. It consisted of thin pieces of wood joined by plates of iron, and covered with thick skin or hide. The most common form was oval, extending to four feet in length and two and a half in breadth. When a soldier had not his shield he was said to fight *nudo corpore*.

Sedūni, ōrum, a nation of Helvetia, (*Switzerland*.) on the north bank of the Rhodānus, (*Rhone*.) above Lacus Lemānus, (the *Lake of Geneva*.)

Sedusii, ōrum, a nation of Germany, on the northeast bank of the Rhēnus, (*Rhine*.) Their country was watered by the Mœnus, (*Maine*.)

Segōnax, æis, one of the four kings who reigned in Cantium, (*Kent*.) at the time Cæsar invaded Britain.

Segontiaci, ōrum, a British nation on the south of the river Tamēsis, (*Thames*.) They appear to have been subject to Cassivellaunus, at the time Cæsar attempted to add this island to the Roman empire. (B. V. Ch. 21.)

Segusiani, ōrum, a people of Gallia Celtica, to the west of the Rhodānus, (*Rhone*.) Their country was traversed by the Ligēris, (*Loire*.) towards the source of that river.

Senōnes, um, a warlike nation of Gallia Celtica, who lived on the Sequāna, (*Seine*.) about 70 miles above Paris.

Septimius, i, (Lucius, ð,) a tribune of the soldiers, sent along with Achilles, by Ptolemæus king of Egypt, to murder Pompey, in whose army he had formerly been a centurion.

Sequāna, æ, the *Seine*, a river of Gallia, (*France*.) has its source near Nevers in Bourgogne, runs in a northwest direction, and falls into that part of the Atlantic called Fretum Britannicum, (the *British Channel*.) at Havre de Grace. The course of this beautiful and picturesque river extends to 250 miles. Paris, the capital of France, originally a fort on a small island in the Seine, above 120 miles from the sea, now stands on both sides of this river, over which there are, in that city, 12 bridges.

Sequāna, æ, f. a district of Gallia, (*France*.) bounded on the east by Mons Jura, (*Mount Jura*.) which separated it from the country of the Helvetii; on the north by Mount Vosegus, (*Vauge*.) which divided it from that of the Leuci; on the west by the country of the Ædui and Lingōnes; and on the south by that of the Ambarri and Allobrōges.

- Sequāni ōrum**, (sing. Sequānus, i,) the people of Sequāna. This nation headed one of the factions of the Gallic states, and the Ædui the other.
- Sesuvii, ōrum**, (or Sesovii,) one of the Armoric states in Gaul, the situation of which is not known.
- Sextius, i**, (Publius S. Bacūlus,) a centurion of the first rank in Cæsar's army, in the Gallic wars.
- Sextius, i**, (Titus, i,) one of the three lieutenants whom Cæsar sent to augment his army, in the sixth year of the war in Gallia, (*France*.)
- Sibutzates, um**, a people of Aquitania, whose country lay along the Atur, (*Adour*.) Of their history nothing is known.
- Sigambri, ōrum**, a German nation, who lived on the east bank of the Rhine, to the south of the river Rura, (*Roir*.)
- Silanus, i**, (Marcus, i,) one of Cæsar's lieutenants, whom he ordered to levy troops for the war in Gallia, (*France*.)
- Silius, i**, (Titus, i,) an officer whom P. Crassus sent to the Venēti, to procure grain and forage with Velanius. But the Venēti, seized them in expectation of regaining their hostages by this measure.
- Sotiates, ium**, a people of Aquitania, whose country extended along the Garumna, (*Garonne*.) Their territories formed part of what was afterwards called Novempopulana, bounded by the Garonne, Pyrenees, and Bay of Biscay.
- Suessiōnes, Suessōnes, um**, a people of Gallia Belgica, whose country was bounded on the south by the Matrōna, (*Marne*.) Although a brave and powerful nation, they were obliged to submit to the arms of Cæsar.
- Suevi, ōrum**, a nation of Germania, (*Germany*,) who inhabited a large tract of country, Suevia, æ, f. lying between the Albis, *Elbe*, and the Vistūla, (*Vistula*,) on the northern side of Silva, Hercynia. They made many inroads on the Roman territories.
- Sulpitius, i**, (Publius, i,) one of Cæsar's lieutenants. Q. Tullius, Cicero, and P. Sulpitius, were stationed among the Ædui, at Cabillo, v. Cabillōnum, (*Chalons*,) and Matisco, (*Mascon*,) on the Arar, (*Saone*.) These two officers were entrusted with the care of provisions.

T.

- TAMESIS**, or Thamesis, is, m. the *Thames*, one of the largest rivers of England, rises in Cotswold hills in the western extremity of Gloucestershire, runs eastward, and after passing through London, falls into the German Sea. With respect to commerce, this is the first river in the world. It is navigable about 130 miles, and the tide flows up as far as Richmond in Surrey, which taking the course of the river, is 70 miles.
- Tarbelli, ōrum**, a people of Aquitania, whose country extended along the sea-coast, from the Pyrenæi Montes, (*Pyrenees*,) to the territories of the Cocosates.
- Tarusates, ium**, a people of Aquitania. The Tarbelli were between them and the Bay of Biscay.

Tasgetius, i, a nobleman of the nation of the Carnutes, whose forefathers had possessed the sovereignty of that state.

Taximagulus, i, one of the four kings who reigned over Cantium. (*Kent*.) They seem to have all been under the power of Cassivellaunus.

Tectosages, um, and **Tectosægi**, ðrum, a very valiant people of Gallia, a branch of the Volcæ, near the Pyrenees. (See *Volcæ*.)

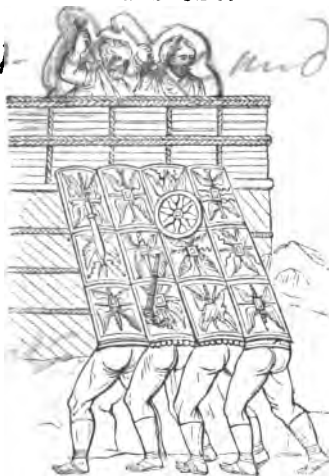
Teuchterî, ðrum, a people of Germany, on the river Rhenus, (*Rhine*), south of the Sigambri.

Terrasidius, i, (Titus, i,) one of Cæsar's lieutenants, whom he sent into the country of the Esubii.

Testudo, inis, f. I. A wooden tower used by the Romans for protecting the soldiers when employed in undermining the walls of a town, or in battering them with the ram, (See *Aries*.) It was erected of wood, and covered with hides, earth, or any other kind of substance which is with difficulty set on fire.

II. When the soldiers of a company advanced to an assault, they frequently stood close together, and formed a shade or screen of their shields, to protect their bodies against the missile weapons, thrown by the enemy from the walls. This defence they also called *Testudo*, from the resemblance which the locked shields had to the shell or covering of the tortoise, (See the following wood cut,) but it must not be confounded with the tower or mantelet just described.

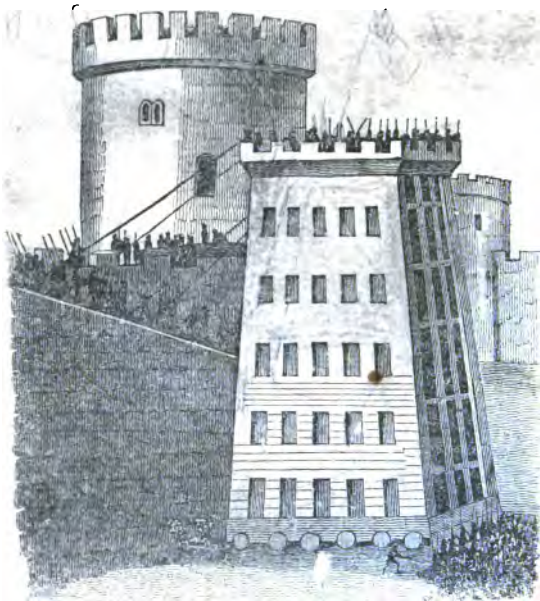
TESTUDO.



Tigurinus Pagus, one of the four cantons or districts, into which Helvetia (*Switzerland*), is divided according to Cæsar, compre-

- ~~TOURAINI~~ ~~TURRIS~~
- hending the modern cantons *Zurich, Schwitz, Schaffn.*
the lands of the *Abbey of St. Gal.*
- Tigurini**, ōrum, the people of Pagus Tigurinus.
- Titus**, i, a common prænomen among the Romans.
- Titurius**, i, (Quintus T. Sabinus,) one of Cæsar's lieutenants, often called simply, Titurius, killed by Ambiorix. (See *Aurunculeius*.)
- Tolōsa**, æ, *Thoulouse*, or *Toulouse*, a town of Aquitania, beautifully situated on the north bank of Garumna. Tolōsa was one of the most flourishing cities of Gaul, afterwards the residence of a Roman colony, and, at a later period, the metropolis of the Visigoths.
- Tolosates**, ium, the inhabitants of Tolōsa.
- Trebius**, i, (Marcus T. Gallius,) an officer sent by Cæsar to the *Curiosolitæ*, to procure provisions.
- Treviri**, ōrum, or (sing. *Trevir*, Iri,) a nation of Gallia Belgica, between the Mosella, (*Moselle*,) and Silva Arduenna. Their chief city, Augusta Trevirōrum, now *Triers*, or *Treves*, stands on the east bank of the Moselle, over which it has a large bridge.
- Tribūni**, ōrum, (sing. *Tribunus*, i,) militum, Tribunes of the soldiers; officers in the Roman army, who had the command of a division of a legion. To take care of the works and camp, to communicate the watchword to the guards, and to give judgment in certain cases, formed the duty of the military tribunes. Romulus first appointed the tribunes, to whom he gave that name from their being only three in number, one out of each tribe. But afterwards, each legion had six tribunes. The right of nomination belonged first to the kings, then to the consuls, or dictators, and, at a later period, to the people.
- Trinobantes**, um, a nation of ancient Britain, inhabiting the counties now called *Essex* and *Middlesex*. Cassivellaunus was their king at the time Cæsar invaded this island.
- Tulingi**, ōrum, a people of Germany, between the rivers Danubius, (*Danube*,) and Rhenus, (*Rhine*.)
- Turōnes**, um, or, i, ōrum, a people of Gallia Celtica, on the banks of the river *Loire*, about 140 miles from the sea. Their name is perpetuated by the modern appellation of the country, *Tourain* and their city *Tours*, anciently Turōnes.
- Turris**, is, a tower. The towers used in the Roman military war were of two kinds, the fixed and the moveable. The fixed ones were erected on the *agger*, or mound, and were raised sufficiently high to overlook and command the enemy's rampart from them showers of arrows, darts, and other missiles thrown by means of various engines. The moveable towers (wood cut, next page,) were pushed forward on rollers or fixed below. To prevent them from being set on fire they were covered with raw hides and pieces of coarse woollen cloth of immense size, sometimes forty or fifty feet or higher than the walls, or even the towers of the city brought up against the walls, a place was seldom a great way out long. Sometimes they were provided with a stage or platform, which being let down reached from the top of the wall and formed a species of bridge by which the assailants took possession of the walls.

TURRIS.



U.

UBII, ōrum, a people of Germany, whose territories were on the Rhine opposite to the Sigambri.

VELLI, ōrum, a people of Gallia Celtica, on the northwest of what is now called *Normandy*. Their country was bounded on three sides by the sea. Their chief town was Cornallum, (*Gouril*.) Off the coast of the Unelli lay the islands of Cæsarea, (*Jersey*,) Sarnia, (*Guernsey*,) and Reduna, (*Alderney*,) which have long been in possession of the British.

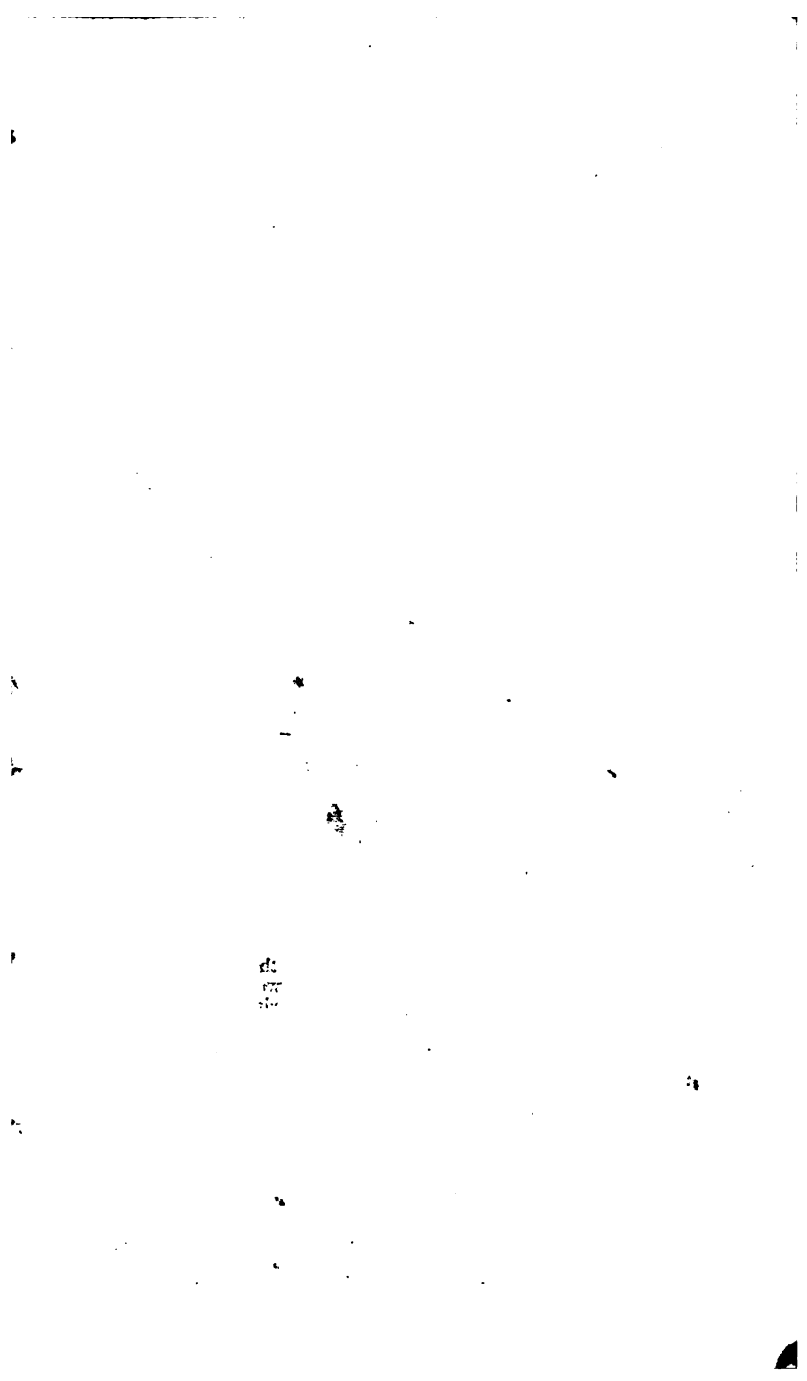
USIPÊTES, um, or Usipii, ōrum, a people of Germany, on the right bank of the Rhenus, (*Rhine*.)

V.

WALSIS, is, m. *Wahal*, or, *Waal*, the left branch of the Rhenus. It joins the Mosa, (*Meuse*,) at the island of Voorn, and flows into the German sea below the Breil.

CAIUS V. CABURUS, a chief man among the Gauls in the time of Julius Cæsar, whose original name appears to have been Cabûrus.

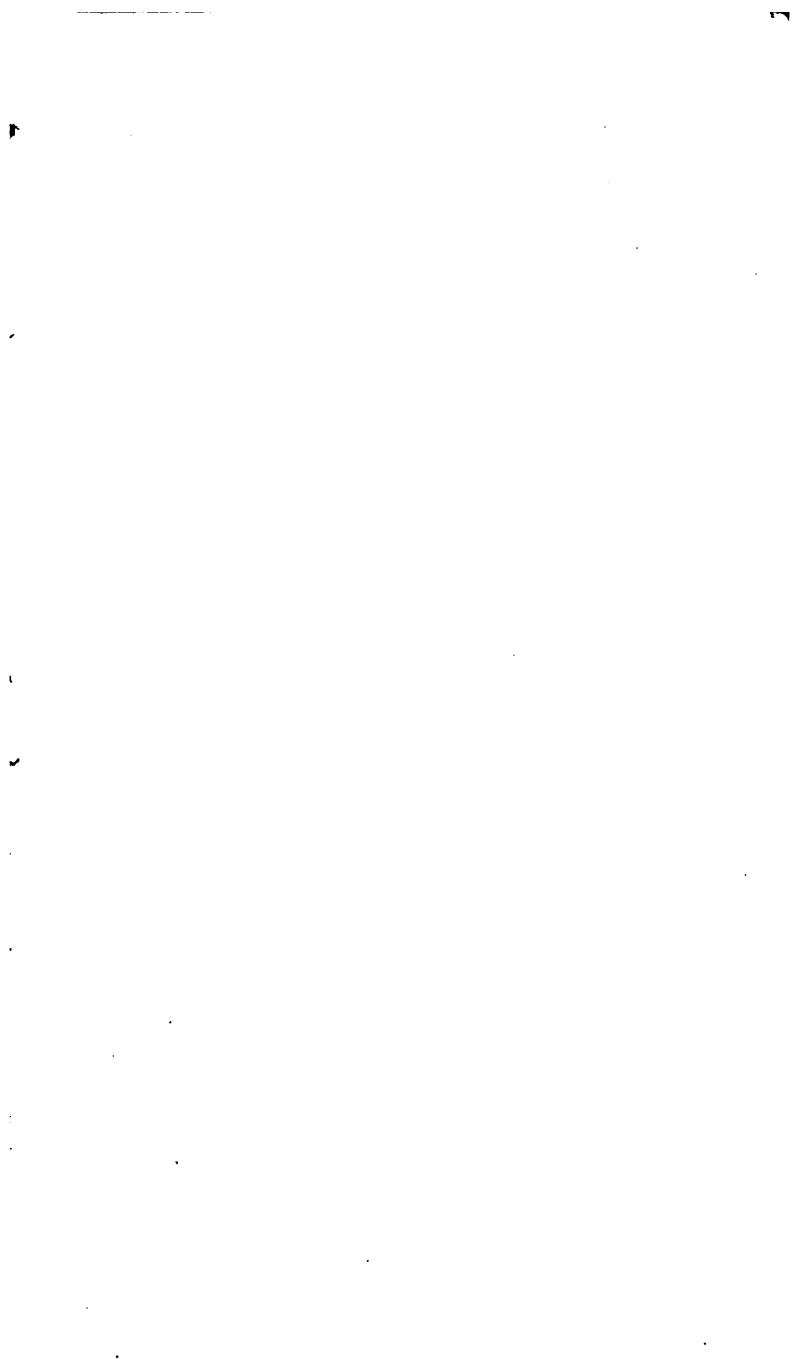




23

2

1



THE NEW YORK PUBLIC LIBRARY
REFERENCE DEPARTMENT

**This book is under no circumstances to be
taken from the Building**

[illegible]

